



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

*Price One Shilling.*

A GRAMMAR  
OF THE  
ENGLISH TONGUE,  
Spoken and Written,  
FOR SELF-TEACHING AND FOR SCHOOLS.

---

By HYDE CLARKE.

---

SERIES OF EDUCATIONAL WORKS.

LONDON: JOHN WEALE, 1852.



600071493U

*In progress, by the same Writer,*

**A NEW DICTIONARY**

**OF**

**THE ENGLISH TONGUE**

**INCLUDING**

**ABOVE 100,000 WORDS,**

**BEING 25,000 MORE THAN IN ANY EXISTING WORK,**

**AND INCLUDING**

**10,000 ADDITIONAL MEANINGS OF OLD WORDS,**

*Forming with the Grammar One Volume.*

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60  
61  
62  
63  
64  
65  
66  
67  
68  
69  
70  
71  
72  
73  
74  
75  
76  
77  
78  
79  
80  
81  
82  
83  
84  
85  
86  
87  
88  
89  
90  
91  
92  
93  
94  
95  
96  
97  
98  
99  
100  
101  
102  
103  
104  
105  
106  
107  
108  
109  
110  
111  
112  
113  
114  
115  
116  
117  
118  
119  
120  
121  
122  
123  
124  
125  
126  
127  
128  
129  
130  
131  
132  
133  
134  
135  
136  
137  
138  
139  
140  
141  
142  
143  
144  
145  
146  
147  
148  
149  
150  
151  
152  
153  
154  
155  
156  
157  
158  
159  
160  
161  
162  
163  
164  
165  
166  
167  
168  
169  
170  
171  
172  
173  
174  
175  
176  
177  
178  
179  
180  
181  
182  
183  
184  
185  
186  
187  
188  
189  
190  
191  
192  
193  
194  
195  
196  
197  
198  
199  
200  
201  
202  
203  
204  
205  
206  
207  
208  
209  
210  
211  
212  
213  
214  
215  
216  
217  
218  
219  
220  
221  
222  
223  
224  
225  
226  
227  
228  
229  
230  
231  
232  
233  
234  
235  
236  
237  
238  
239  
240  
241  
242  
243  
244  
245  
246  
247  
248  
249  
250  
251  
252  
253  
254  
255  
256  
257  
258  
259  
260  
261  
262  
263  
264  
265  
266  
267  
268  
269  
270  
271  
272  
273  
274  
275  
276  
277  
278  
279  
280  
281  
282  
283  
284  
285  
286  
287  
288  
289  
290  
291  
292  
293  
294  
295  
296  
297  
298  
299  
300  
301  
302  
303  
304  
305  
306  
307  
308  
309  
310  
311  
312  
313  
314  
315  
316  
317  
318  
319  
320  
321  
322  
323  
324  
325  
326  
327  
328  
329  
330  
331  
332  
333  
334  
335  
336  
337  
338  
339  
340  
341  
342  
343  
344  
345  
346  
347  
348  
349  
350  
351  
352  
353  
354  
355  
356  
357  
358  
359  
360  
361  
362  
363  
364  
365  
366  
367  
368  
369  
370  
371  
372  
373  
374  
375  
376  
377  
378  
379  
380  
381  
382  
383  
384  
385  
386  
387  
388  
389  
390  
391  
392  
393  
394  
395  
396  
397  
398  
399  
400  
401  
402  
403  
404  
405  
406  
407  
408  
409  
410  
411  
412  
413  
414  
415  
416  
417  
418  
419  
420  
421  
422  
423  
424  
425  
426  
427  
428  
429  
430  
431  
432  
433  
434  
435  
436  
437  
438  
439  
440  
441  
442  
443  
444  
445  
446  
447  
448  
449  
450  
451  
452  
453  
454  
455  
456  
457  
458  
459  
460  
461  
462  
463  
464  
465  
466  
467  
468  
469  
470  
471  
472  
473  
474  
475  
476  
477  
478  
479  
480  
481  
482  
483  
484  
485  
486  
487  
488  
489  
490  
491  
492  
493  
494  
495  
496  
497  
498  
499  
500  
501  
502  
503  
504  
505  
506  
507  
508  
509  
510  
511  
512  
513  
514  
515  
516  
517  
518  
519  
520  
521  
522  
523  
524  
525  
526  
527  
528  
529  
530  
531  
532  
533  
534  
535  
536  
537  
538  
539  
540  
541  
542  
543  
544  
545  
546  
547  
548  
549  
550  
551  
552  
553  
554  
555  
556  
557  
558  
559  
560  
561  
562  
563  
564  
565  
566  
567  
568  
569  
570  
571  
572  
573  
574  
575  
576  
577  
578  
579  
580  
581  
582  
583  
584  
585  
586  
587  
588  
589  
590  
591  
592  
593  
594  
595  
596  
597  
598  
599  
600  
601  
602  
603  
604  
605  
606  
607  
608  
609  
610  
611  
612  
613  
614  
615  
616  
617  
618  
619  
620  
621  
622  
623  
624  
625  
626  
627  
628  
629  
630  
631  
632  
633  
634  
635  
636  
637  
638  
639  
640  
641  
642  
643  
644  
645  
646  
647  
648  
649  
650  
651  
652  
653  
654  
655  
656  
657  
658  
659  
660  
661  
662  
663  
664  
665  
666  
667  
668  
669  
670  
671  
672  
673  
674  
675  
676  
677  
678  
679  
680  
681  
682  
683  
684  
685  
686  
687  
688  
689  
690  
691  
692  
693  
694  
695  
696  
697  
698  
699  
700  
701  
702  
703  
704  
705  
706  
707  
708  
709  
710  
711  
712  
713  
714  
715  
716  
717  
718  
719  
720  
721  
722  
723  
724  
725  
726  
727  
728  
729  
730  
731  
732  
733  
734  
735  
736  
737  
738  
739  
740  
741  
742  
743  
744  
745  
746  
747  
748  
749  
750  
751  
752  
753  
754  
755  
756  
757  
758  
759  
760  
761  
762  
763  
764  
765  
766  
767  
768  
769  
770  
771  
772  
773  
774  
775  
776  
777  
778  
779  
780  
781  
782  
783  
784  
785  
786  
787  
788  
789  
790  
791  
792  
793  
794  
795  
796  
797  
798  
799  
800  
801  
802  
803  
804  
805  
806  
807  
808  
809  
810  
811  
812  
813  
814  
815  
816  
817  
818  
819  
820  
821  
822  
823  
824  
825  
826  
827  
828  
829  
830  
831  
832  
833  
834  
835  
836  
837  
838  
839  
840  
841  
842  
843  
844  
845  
846  
847  
848  
849  
850  
851  
852  
853  
854  
855  
856  
857  
858  
859  
860  
861  
862  
863  
864  
865  
866  
867  
868  
869  
870  
871  
872  
873  
874  
875  
876  
877  
878  
879  
880  
881  
882  
883  
884  
885  
886  
887  
888  
889  
890  
891  
892  
893  
894  
895  
896  
897  
898  
899  
900  
901  
902  
903  
904  
905  
906  
907  
908  
909  
910  
911  
912  
913  
914  
915  
916  
917  
918  
919  
920  
921  
922  
923  
924  
925  
926  
927  
928  
929  
930  
931  
932  
933  
934  
935  
936  
937  
938  
939  
940  
941  
942  
943  
944  
945  
946  
947  
948  
949  
950  
951  
952  
953  
954  
955  
956  
957  
958  
959  
960  
961  
962  
963  
964  
965  
966  
967  
968  
969  
970  
971  
972  
973  
974  
975  
976  
977  
978  
979  
980  
981  
982  
983  
984  
985  
986  
987  
988  
989  
990  
991  
992  
993  
994  
995  
996  
997  
998  
999  
1000



A  
GRAMMAR  
OF THE  
ENGLISH TONGUE,

Spoken and Written;

FOR SELF-TEACHING AND FOR SCHOOLS.

---

BY HYDE CLARKE.



London:  
JOHN WEALE, 59, HIGH HOLBORN.

---

MDCCLIII.

302. C. 13.



## PREFACE.

---

THERE are few tasks more thankless and more open to blame than writing on English Grammar, which is as yet unsettled, and must be so while philology is in its childhood, and so little light has been thrown on the philology of the English tongue. Every one, too, has his own way of thinking on English Grammar; and for the one he has taken, the writer of this book asks the kindly feeling of his readers. He has thought it right to look rather to the spoken than the written tongue, and to seek his standard among that body of the Southern English, with whom English has always been a living tongue, and from among whom our greatest writers and speakers have arisen. To bring forward anything new is to unsettle what has already been done, and is commonly to be shunned, while what is new is not always true; but the writer has, nevertheless, chosen to go on in the fresh path which Horne Tooke and Latham have so well followed, rather than to think that even what they have carried out is all that can be done.

As this is a work which will go into the hands of children, and of working men among others, the writer has, so far as he can, put everything in common English, and shunned Latinisms, so that he may be the more readily understood.

This, too, is one of a set of grammars, and it has been thought right to bring within it the comparative philology of the several tongues, which otherwise would have had to be given with each grammar.

In drawing up this book and the Dictionary which is to follow it, the writer has made use of the collections begun by him two-and-twenty years ago, but he has greatly availed himself of the works of others, and among them those of the following writers:—Ælfric, Ben Jonson, Dr. Wallis, Hickes, Junius, Coles, Skinner, James Harris, Dr. Johnson, Dilworth, Bishop Lowth, Dr. Ash, Bailey, Barretti, Horne Tooke, Priestley, Sheridan, Lindley Murray, Walker, Ruddiman, Noah Webster, Cobbett, Bosworth, David Booth, Alexander Crombie, B. Thorpe, Dr. Latham, Joseph E. Worcester, Goold Brown, Grimm, Bopp, Adelung, Vater, and Raske.





# GRAMMAR

OF

## THE ENGLISH TONGUE.

---

**SPEECHKNOWLEDGE**, or **Philology**, is one of the branches of **Folkknowledge**, or **Ethnology**. **Folkknowledge** shows us the several stocks to which mankind belong; **Speechknowledge**, their several ways of speech and the laws which these follow. These branches of learning have only lately sprung up, and are still in their youth. It is, however, now well enough known that all mankind belong to several great stocks or families of races, as the Indo-European, the Chinese, the Syro-Arabian, the Americo-Indian; and each of these is again further divided. Thus, under the Indo-European come the Germanic, the Slavonic, the Celtic, and other great families. The Germanic stock again includes or brings together the English, High Dutch, and Scandinavian. The Celtic stock includes the Welsh, Irish, Manx, and Breton.

Commonly, the classification for **Speechknowledge** is the same as for **Folkknowledge**; but it does not follow that those who speak the same tongue belong to the same stock. Thus, there are Welsh and Irish who speak English, and Bretons who speak French. The groundwork of the classification, however, being taken from the stock or race to which the tongue belongs, it is needful to say something of **Folkknowledge**, so far as it throws light upon the subject we have in hand.

The leading great stocks in Europe are the following:—

INDO-EUROPEAN; as English, Welsh, Irish, French, Russians, Gipsys.  
 UGRO-TARTARIAN or FINNISH; as Magyars, Fins, Laps, Basques.  
 TURKISH; as Turks.  
 SYRO-ARABIAN; as Jews.

The Indo-European is the greatest of these, and the mightiest in the world, although more souls belong to the Chinese stock. The Indo-Europeans reach from Burmah through Western Asia, spreading over Europe and further throughout North and South America; and the European branches are thus divided:—

GERMANIC:	Anglo-Suevian.. English, Americo-English. <i>Old Saxons, Burgundians, Goths, Vandals, Jutes, Longbeards, Danes.</i> Frisians of Friesland, Heligoland, and Jutland. Netherlanders, Hollanders, and Flemings. Low Dutch.....Low Dutch, or Germans. High Dutch ....High Dutch, or Germans. German Swiss Scandinavians ..Danes and Norwegians. Swedes. Icelanders.
CELTIC:	Welsh .....Welsh of Wales. <i>Old Cornish.</i> Bretons of Brittany. Irish .....Irish of Ireland. Irish or Erse of the Scotch Highlands. Manx of the Isle of Man.

MIXED CELTIC ROMAN:	Italian .....	Italians.
	French .....	French, Canadians, French Swiss, Savoyards.
	Iberian .....	Spaniards, Americo-Spaniards, Portuguese, Brazilians, Sicilians, Sardinians.
	Wallach .....	Wallachians
	Hellenic .....	Greeks
HELLENIC:	Albanian .....	Albanians
	Armenian .....	Armenians
SLAVONIC:	Chekh .....	Chechs or Bohemians Slovaks of Hungary. Poles.
	Russ .....	Russians Slavonians. Croats.
	Lithuanic .....	Lithuanians.

The leading living tongues belonging to the Germanic stock are the English, Frisian, Netherlandish or Flemish (sometimes called Dutch), High Dutch (sometimes called German), Danish, Swedish, and Icelandic. These again may be thus classified:—

ANGLO-SAXON	English
	Frisian.
LOW DUTCH	Flemish or Netherlandish. Low Dutch or Platt Dutch.
HIGH DUTCH	High Dutch.
NORSE	Danish or Norwegian. Swedish. Icelandic.

These islands seem to have been first settled by the great Euskardian or Iberian stock, belonging to the Ugro-Tartarian, and which once spread over Western Europe, and of which all that is left are the Basques in Spain, unless the Fins of several kinds are likewise to be reckoned, and unless in the west of Ireland some Iberian blood still lingers under the name of Spanish, as the common belief there is. The Iberians were slaughtered or driven out of Britain by the Celts; but in the time of the Romans, the Silures, in South Wales, still had a Spanish look, as Tacitus tells us. The Celts were yielding before inroads of the Belgians in Britain and Ireland, when the Romans made themselves masters of the islands, and for a time stayed the downfall of the Celts. In the fifth century after Christ, however, the Roman might tottered, the Germani rushed on the Roman empire and swept all before them. In these islands the Celts threw off the Roman yoke, but not long to hold the sway; for the Northern Germani, of English kin, came over the North Sea and began to settle on the eastern shore, slowly spreading themselves till all the islands fell under their yoke.

In the Roman time the Saxons and Frisians who were on the west side of Jutland, made their first inroads, and hence the Celts called all the Germanic comers Saxons, as the Welsh, Irish, and Highlanders do to this day. The Frisians, Saxons, and Jutes seem to have been among the first who made good their landing, and set up the commonwealths of Kent, of the Southtrick or Surrey, of the East, Middle, South, and West Saxons, and of Wight. The English, however, passing from their seat in the east of Jutland to the west, soon took the leadership, and the names of the other Germani were lost in theirs, giving to the land, folk, speech, and laws, the name of English. The English, Waringa, and Frisians, were very near akin, their speech much alike, and their laws the same, so that they readily mingled together in these islands, as they did in Russia. The old or first Danes seem to have been near akin to the English, as were the Jutes, Vandals, and Bructwara; and all of these had more or less share in the first settlement. Under the name of English, all England, to the north of the Thames, and up to the Highlands of Wales and Scotland, was filled by them, the leading commonwealths being those of the North and South Folk of East English, of Lindsey, of the Wicci, of the Middle English or Mercians, of Bernicia and Deiri in Northumberland, of Cumberland, and Lothian.

It seems very likely that English sea-kings were among the first who seated themselves on the shores of South Wales, Anglesea, Scotland, and Ireland; their settlements, like those in England, being afterwards taken by the Northmen or Scandinavians.

NOTE.—The Frisians, who speak much like the West Somerseters, still hold themselves as our kinsmen, and the likeness of the two tongues is well shown in their common saying:—

Good butter and good cheese,  
Is good English and good Freese.

Some of Shakespeare's plays have been put into Frisian almost word for word.

Mr. Halbertsma, in Bosworth's Anglo-Saxon Wordbook, gives the following song of the Countess of Blessington in English and in Land-Frisian:—

What art thou, life?	Hwat bist dou, libben?
A weary strife	Ien wirch stribben
Of pain, care, and sorrow;	Fen pine, need (1) in soarch;
Long hours of grief,	Lange oeren fen smerte
And joys how brief!	In nochten ho koart!
That vanish the morrow.	Det fordwine (2) de moarns.
Death, what are thou,	Déad, hwat bist dou,
To whom all bow,	Ta hwaem allen buwgje,
From sceptred king to slave?	Fen de scepterde kening ta de slawe?
The last, best friend,	De lêstte, bêste fréon,
Our cares to end,	Om uws soargen to einjen,
Thy empire's in the grave.	Dyn gebiet (3) is yngt grâf.
When all have fled	We: neer se allen binne fied
Thou giv'st a bed,	Jouwst do ien béd,
Wherein we calmly sleep;	Wær wy kalm yn slêpe;
The wounds all healed,	De wounen alle hele,
The dim eyes sealed,	De digerige éagen segele,
That long did wake and weep!	Dy lang diene wekje in gepje.

(1) Need. (2) Dwindle. (3) From bid to command.

It is much to be wished the Frisian tongue were better known here.

NOTE.—The Anglo-Suevians were as much akin as the Southrons, Northumbrians, Lowlanders, Ulstermen, and New Englanders now are; and the old settlements were made as the new ones are. The leading folk, or the folk to which the leaders belonged, gave name to the settlement. Thus, Kent is said to have been settled by the Jutes, though there is no ground for believing that there were no other English and that Jutes only held Kent, inasmuch as Hengist and Horsa are claimed as Frisians. Thus, Middlesex is named after the Saxons, though there must have been as many other English as Saxons. Thus, Russia is named after the Russians or Russian Warings, though Nestor witnesses that their brethren, the Old English, were like sharers in the work. The Imperial Guard of the Emperors of Byzantium was called Waranglian or Baraggol, though of later years the warriors were mostly English. Thus, Ulster is said to have been planted by the Scotch Lowlanders, and California by the Americans. Although we read of commonwealths in England, named after Jutes Saxons, and English, we must not think that these differed in kindred, speech, or laws, or that they are to be understood as anything else but English, any more than we are to think that Belfast is peopled with Scotch Lowlanders only, San Francisco with New Englanders, and Sydney with English, differing in nationality and in tongue.

Wherever the English settled, the British Celts were slaughtered, and English blood and speech held the mastery, as they do indeed to this day. While, however, our forefathers were making a new England here, a shadow came over Germania. The best of the Germanic folk, the English, Warings, Franks, Vandals, Goths, Burgundians, and Longbeards, had left their homes to fasten on the Roman empire; in the south the lower tribes only were left, from whom have sprung the High Dutch or Germans of this day; on the east the Slavonians rushed forward; from the north the Scandinavians, who became known as Northmen and Danes. Stopped on the shores of the Elbe by the hosts of the Frankish kings, the Northmen sent their ships over the North Sea to these shores, and the English, who had sunk under the yoke of monkery, yielded before them, and thus for a long time the Northmen held sway here. Hence it happens that among the East English, and to the north of Trent as far as the Highlands and north-east shores of Scotland, Danish blood and English are much mixed together, and the speech has likewise a mingling of Scandinavian.

In the year 1066, William the Norman, having made good his claim to the kingdom, brought in a great many Normans and Flemings, and likewise some French, and thus French words and sayings were mingled with the English tongue; but in time the Normans and French died off, so that it is hard now to find a man even of Norman name, and harder still one of Norman blood, although French words still have a great share in the English tongue.

It will be seen that the English, that is, those of that blood dwelling in England, the Lowlands of Scotland and Ulster, and in their settlements in America or New England, and in New Holland, are the offspring of the English kindred stocks, the English, Warings, Hunsings, Frisians, Flemings, Vandals, Jutes, Saxons, Bructwars, Old Danes, and Northmen, unmingled either with British, Celtic, or French blood. Not so, however, their speech; although the root and groundwork of it are English with hardly a word of Welsh or Irish, yet it is greatly overlaid with French and Latin; and so far does this go, that often a Latin or French word has driven out the English one.

On the new birth of learning, Latin and Greek were so much followed, that the home tongues were lost sight of. Latin words were not only poured into French and Spanish, but into English, Flemish, Low Dutch, and High Dutch, to their great harm; and everything was twisted and set to a Latin or Greek standard, utterly thoughtless how far such might be right, and utterly careless whether English or Flemish had a standard of its own. In

the fifteenth, sixteenth, seventeenth, and eighteenth centuries, Latinism had full sway over the English tongue, nor has it wholly lost it in this. In the last century, the Hollanders and High Dutch freed their tongues from Latinisms by bringing back or making words of home stock. Among ourselves our speech would have been utterly lost had it not been that under the Latin sway, as under the Norman sway, and under the Danish sway, the great body of the English, holding to their own speech, kept it alive against the men of learning.

The history of the English tongue is to be looked at on two sides: on one side we must follow up English by itself; on the other, its foreign foes.

From the very birth of its learning, English had to struggle with the foreigner; for the Roman and Celtic churchmen and teachers wrote in Latin, and warped English to a Latin mould. Already, too, in those days High Dutch had begun to work evil, for English churchmen going over to the Rhineland and to Paris, were led to imitate some of the High Dutch biblical writings. The Danish kings, too, were followed by Norse scalds, who wrought as much evil to English learning, as some time after did the French troubadours. Much of what is called Anglo-Saxon is a medley of High Dutch, Scandinavian, and Latin, and is no more to be looked upon as pure English than the writings of the Anglo-Norman time. We cannot, therefore, take written English-Saxon as a good standard, or as the only standard. Another hindrance to it is, that many words spoken in the Anglo-Saxon times still live in the English tongue, which were never written down.

What more than anything kept English alive before the Anglo-Norman time, was the many open meetings in which the common business was carried on. Each township was a commonwealth in itself, made its own laws, and held in its hands life and death. In the hundred motes the men of neighbouring townships met once a month; and further, from time to time, folk-motes of the shires and commonwealths were held. Our fathers had no lawyers and no lawbooks; everything was done openly, and by word of mouth, until the churchmen set down land sales in writing and in books, got grants of lands from the weak monk-kings, and took seats in the hundred and shire-motes.

In the Anglo-Norman time, the day of the scalds was at an end, and that of the troubadours began. The courtiers spoke French, and the learned Latin, while written Anglo-Saxon, or more truly speaking Norse-English, died off. The folk-motes had been strangled by the wiles of the Norman churchmen and lawyers, but the town-guilds were still alive, and after a time they had a great share in bringing English again into use as a written tongue. Slowly English, which, for all that French knights and Italian monks had done, had never died in the great towns, nor in the small hamlets, became the common tongue in the new parliament, which was set up instead of the folk-motes, and in the juries and law courts, for which the townships and hundreds had to give way. While Anglo-Normanism died away, sturdy English rose up. So, too, the might of the Roman bishop was shaken; monks began to preach in English, Wickliff and other priests to write. Thus, when printing came to give a new birth to learning, England had already shaken off the yoke of the foreigner, and our mother-tongue once more held sway throughout the isle.

It is now, however, needful to speak of something else which, in the meanwhile, had wrought greatly on the English tongue. In its old shape, as spoken by our forefathers when they first came here, and which is commonly called English Saxon, it was not the same as now, for nouns and verbs made their changes of meaning by changes of the endings of the words, and not by prepositions or auxiliary or helping words; thus, *eye*, *eye's*—*eyes*, *eyes'*—made in English Saxon *eage*, *eagan*; and in the plural, *eagan* (nominative), *eag-um* (dative), *eag-ene* (genitive). What was the beginning of the great change, no one can tell, though it is one of the most wonderful within the bounds of knowledge, for it has happened not only between Anglo-Saxon and English, but between most old and new tongues, as Hellenic Greek and Romaic, Old Persian and New Persian, Old Frisian and New Frisian, without any working of one on another, or indeed any common ground of operation being as yet found out, though the end is alike to all.

Hence we find the English tongue under these shapes:—1. Old English or English Saxon. 2. Danish English. 3. Norman English. 4. New English. The latter again is spoken in several ways, called dialects; as Southern or London, nicknamed Cockney; West Saxon or Somerset; Exmoor; Wilts; East English or Norfolk; Derbyshire; Lancashire; Cheshire; Northumbrian; Yorkshire; Craven; Scotch of the West Lowlands, East Lowlands, and Aberdeen; Orkney; Welsh; Highland; Irish; American; Polynesian; Negro; Chinese. The Southern, American or New England,

and West Saxon dialects are the most English; the Welsh, Highland, and some of the Irish dialects have a Celtic leaning; and many of the other dialects named are mingled with Scandinavian.

The southern dialects having been long spoken by a great body of the English, from among whom the great English writers and thinkers have sprung, have been those which have taken the lead, and from them has been made the English tongue as written, and as commonly acknowledged. It is south of Trent we find the birth-towns of Shakspeare, Spenser, Milton, Dryden, Pope, Byron, De Foe, Fielding, Bacon, Locke, and Newton; it is in their southern tongue the masterworks have been written, and the great statesmen of the land have spoken. It is in this tongue we must seek the living law of the English speech, the *lex et norma loquendi*. We cannot seek it in Anglo-Saxon writings; there we find foreign words, dead and long lost shapes, seldom more than the seeds of the new tongue, with many words wanting. We cannot seek it in Lowland or in Northumbrian; for though sometimes we may find English words elsewhere lost, yet we likewise find that English words have given way to Danish. We cannot seek the living law of English speech in the works of our writers, however great, knowing, as we do, that whatever the might of their thoughts, their words were often sought from heathen springs, not always from "the well of English undefiled."

If, too, we bear in mind what has too commonly been forgotten, that grammar is not only the law of writing,\* but the law of speaking, and that great as is the spell of our writers, and most in these days of newspapers, greater is that of speakers in all times over the enlightened freemen of England and the United States, we shall see that grammar should rather look to the living for its models than to the dead. The shape of man keeps the same for thousands of years; the Negro, the Arab, or the Nubian, as drawn on the pyramids, is he of this day; but the speech of man is ever shifting; and writers, however skilful, however great, however mighty, will be left behind, while the swelling tide bears on. It has been shown how much English has shifted from its Anglo-Saxon shape, but even in our day there are those alive who have heard many ways of speaking among us; and so throughout Europe. Thus, in France there are those who have heard the vowel *a* called by the old men *aw*, which is now made *ah*. To lay down a settled law for speech is hard at any time, but it becomes still more so if we look to written and not to living authorities.

If we are to take the written tongue as our model, we must then see by whom it is written. In our list of writers we find Lowlanders, Scotchmen, Irishmen, Hollanders, Dutchmen, Jews, and Parsees, some of whose works beam with the brightest gifts of mind, but, however freely written, show some blot which jars on our English ear. We can, indeed, hardly take up even a London or New York newspaper without finding, side by side with thorough English, writings in which that *shibboleth* of *shall* and *will* marks out to us the handling of one to our speech unborn. If, indeed, our tongue could be taught in schools in a few months by books and masters, as well as from the mother's lips and by the work of years, if ours were a tongue narrowed like the French by set academic laws, or laid down by act of parliament or congress, it would be easily learned, and we could as freely take every writer as a sound master as we can take every man to be a working citizen. But looking at English as it is, we must seek its laws among those to whom it is a living birthright.

\* The higher kinds of writing, the poem and the play, come rather under the law of the spoken than of the written tongue, so that the spoken tongue is by far the weightier.

## CONTENTS.

---

**Ethnology**, 1; **Philology of the English Tongue**, 3.

**COMPARATIVE PHILOLOGY**—Tables for converting English into Anglo-Saxon, Frisian, Flemish, Low Dutch, High Dutch or German, Danish, Swedish, and Icelandic, 8; Ditto for Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, and French, 16.

**ORTHŒPEY and ORTHOGRAPHY**, 31; **Accent**, 46.

**Parts of Speech**, 56; **Articles**, 57.

**Names Substantive**, 57; **Proper Names**, 59.

**Names Adjective**, 68.

**Adverbs**, 71.

**Pronouns**, 73.

**VERBS**, 78; **Formation of ditto**, 78; **Participles**, 81; **Conjugation**, 83.

**LIST of COMMON ENGLISH VERBS**, with their derivations, 99.

**Prepositions**, 122; **Conjunctions**, 124; **Interjections**, 125.

**Syntax**, 126.

**Composition**, 133; **Stops and Points**, 133; **Emphasis**, 136.

**RHyme or PROSODY**—**Formation of Old English Poetry**, **Alliteration**, 138;  
    **Head Rhyming**, 143; **Blank Rhyming, or Verse**, 146; **End Rhyming**,  
    148.

**Figures of Speech and Thought**, 150.

# GRAMMAR

OF

## THE ENGLISH TONGUE.

---

**SPEECHKNOWLEDGE**, or **Philology**, is one of the branches of **Folkknowledge**, or **Ethnology**. **Folkknowledge** shows us the several stocks to which mankind belong; **Speechknowledge**, their several ways of speech and the laws which these follow. These branches of learning have only lately sprung up, and are still in their youth. It is, however, now well enough known that all mankind belong to several great stocks or families of races, as the Indo-European, the Chinese, the Syro-Arabian, the Americo-Indian; and each of these is again further divided. Thus, under the Indo-European come the Germanic, the Slavonic, the Celtic, and other great families. The Germanic stock again includes or brings together the English, High Dutch, and Scandinavian. The Celtic stock includes the Welsh, Irish, Manx, and Breton.

Commonly, the classification for **Speechknowledge** is the same as for **Folkknowledge**; but it does not follow that those who speak the same tongue belong to the same stock. Thus, there are Welsh and Irish who speak English, and Bretons who speak French. The groundwork of the classification, however, being taken from the stock or race to which the tongue belongs, it is needful to say something of **Folkknowledge**, so far as it throws light upon the subject we have in hand.

The leading great stocks in Europe are the following:—

INDO-EUROPEAN; as English, Welsh, Irish, French, Russians, Gipseys.  
 UGRO-TARTARIAN or FINNISH; as Magyars, Fins, Laps, Basques.  
 TURKISH; as Turks.  
 SYRO-ARABIAN; as Jews.

The Indo-European is the greatest of these, and the mightiest in the world, although more souls belong to the Chinese stock. The Indo-Europeans reach from Burmah through Western Asia, spreading over Europe and further throughout North and South America; and the European branches are thus divided:—

GERMANIC:	Anglo-Suevian... English, Americo-English. <i>Old Saxons, Burgundians, Goths, Vandals, Jutes,</i> <i>Longbeards, Danes.</i> Frisians of Friesland, Heligoland, and Jutland. Netherlanders, Hollanders, and Flemings. Low Dutch ..... Low Dutch, or Germana. High Dutch .... High Dutch, or Germana. German Swiss. Scandinavians .. Danes and Norwegians. Swedes. Icelanders.
CELTIC:	Welsh ..... Welsh of Wales. <i>Old Cornish.</i> Bretons of Brittany. Irish ..... Irish of Ireland. Irish or Erse of the Scotch Highlands. Manx of the Isle of Man.



CHANGES INTO ENGLISH OF WORDS FROM ANGLO-SAXON; FRISIAN; FLEMISH; LOW DUTCH, LOW GERMAN OR FLAT DUTCH;  
HIGH DUTCH OR HIGH GERMAN; DANISH; SWEDISH; AND ICELANDIC.

English.	Anglo-Saxon.	Frisian.	Flemish.	Low Dutch.	High Dutch.	Danish.	Swedish.	Icelandic.
A	<i>Æ, E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E, A</i>	<i>A, E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>Ä</i>	<i>EA</i>
day, way	dag, weg	dei, wei	weg	dag, weg	weg	vej	dag, väg	vegur
father	fader	fader		vader				
A, prefix	<i>A</i>		<i>Mute</i>	<i>Mute</i>				
above	abutan		boven	baven				
Äi	<i>Æ, Ege</i>	<i>Ag, Ei</i>	<i>Age, Ege</i>	<i>Age, Ege</i>	<i>Age, Ege</i>	<i>Ag, Ei</i>	<i>Ag</i>	<i>Ag, Ege</i>
rain, hail	regn, hagel	ren, hæl	regen, hagel	regnen, hagel	regnen, hagel	regnen, hagl	regn, hagel	regn, hagl
nail, nail	negel, nagel	næl, næl	nagel, zell	negel, zell	nagel, segel	nagel, segl	nagla, segul	nagla, segl
maid	mæden	mæden	maged	mald	maged	mæg	mio	mær
hair	<i>Æ</i>	<i>Ee</i>	<i>Ag</i>	<i>Ag</i>	<i>Ag</i>	<i>Ag</i>	<i>Ag</i>	<i>Ag</i>
An	hær	beer	haar	haar	haar	haar	haar	haar
daughter	<i>O</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>Oo, O</i>
B	<i>F</i>	<i>B, F</i>	<i>F</i>	<i>B, F</i>	<i>F</i>	<i>F</i>	<i>B</i>	<i>F, B</i>
table, book	tafel, boec	tafel, boek	tafel, boek	tafel, boek	tafel, buch	tafel, bog	tabell, bok	tafla, bok
Br	<i>Br</i>	<i>B—r</i>	<i>B—r</i>	<i>B—r</i>	<i>B—r</i>	<i>B—r</i>	<i>B—r</i>	<i>Br</i>
breast	breost	breost	borste	borst	birate	borste	börste	briost
O	<i>O</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>
calf, cold	cealf, ceald	kald	kalf, koud	kalf, kold	kalf, kalt	kalf, kold	kalf, kall	
Oh	<i>C, O</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K, Oh</i>	<i>K, Äi</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K, Kj</i>
chin, chaff	cinn, ceaf	kin	kin, kaf	kinn, kat	kinn, kaf			kinn
child, birch	cild, birce	byrk	kind, berke	harke	kind, birke	kind, birk	kind, bjork	kinn
chapman	ceapman		koopman	koopman	kaufmann	kiöfmand		björk
church	circ	<i>K</i>	kerk	koopman	kerche	kirke	kyrkja	kirka
Ch, toh	<i>Ce</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>Ch, cê</i>	<i>G, Gt, Kt</i>	<i>K, Ch</i>	<i>Kt, K</i>
watch, teich	wacca, feccan		dekkon	weak	wacht, dach	vagt, takke	räckt	vakt, thakla
thatch	thaccan			duk	decken	tag	tak	thak



INTO ENGLISH OF WORDS FROM ANGLO-SAXON; FRISIAN; FLEMISH; LOW DUTCH, LOW GERMAN OR FLAT DUTCH;  
HIGH DUTCH OR HIGH GERMAN; DANISH; SWEDISH; AND ICELANDIC.

	Anglo-Saxon.	Frisian.	Flemish.	Low Dutch.	High Dutch.	Danish.	Swedish.	Icelandic.
dag, weg feder	<i>E, E</i> dag, weg feder	<i>E, A</i> weg	<i>E, A</i> weg	<i>A, E</i> dag, weg vader	<i>E</i> weg	<i>E</i> vej	<i>Å</i> dag, weg	<i>EA</i> vegur
<i>A, prefix</i> above	<i>A</i> aboven	<i>Mute</i> boven	<i>Mute</i> boven	<i>Mute</i> baven				
<i>Al</i> rain, hail nael, sail maid	<i>E, Ege</i> regn, hagel nagel, segel meden	<i>Age, Ege</i> regen, hagel nagel, segel maagd	<i>Age, Ege</i> regen, hagel nagel, segel maagd	<i>Age, Ege</i> regen, hagel nagel, segel maagd	<i>Age, Ege</i> regen, hagel nagel, segel maagd	<i>Ag, Eij</i> regen, hagel nagel, segel moe	<i>Ag</i> regn, hagel nagel, segel mo	<i>Ag, Ege</i> regn, hagel nagel, segel maer
hair	<i>B</i> haar	<i>Ag</i> haar	<i>Ag</i> haar	<i>Ag</i> haar	<i>Ag</i> haar	<i>Ag</i> haar	<i>Ag</i> haar	<i>Ag</i> haar
daughter	<i>O</i> dochter	<i>O</i> dochter, dogter	<i>O</i> dochter, dogter	<i>O</i> dogter	<i>O</i> tochter	<i>O</i> dotter	<i>O</i> doter	<i>Oo, O</i> dochter
table, book	<i>F</i> tafel, boec	<i>B, F</i> tafia, boek	<i>F</i> tafel, boek	<i>B, F</i> tafel, boek	<i>F</i> tafel, buch	<i>F</i> tafel, bog	<i>B</i> tabell, bok	<i>F, B</i> tafia, bok
breast	<i>Br</i> breost	<i>B-r</i> borste	<i>B-r</i> borste	<i>B-r</i> borst	<i>B-r</i> büste	<i>B-r</i> borste	<i>B-r</i> börste	<i>Br</i> bröst
call, cold	<i>Ce</i> cealf, ceald	<i>K</i> kald	<i>K</i> kalf, koud	<i>K</i> kalf, kold	<i>K</i> kalf, kalt	<i>K</i> kalf, kold	<i>K</i> kalf, kall	<i>K</i> bröst
chin, chaff	<i>C, Ce</i> cinn, ceaf	<i>K</i> kin	<i>K</i> kin, koud	<i>K</i> kin, kat	<i>K, Ch</i> kind, kaff	<i>K, Ki</i> kind, birk	<i>K</i> kind, bjork	<i>K, Kj</i> kinn bjork
child, birch	<i>Ce</i> cild, birce	<i>K</i> byrk	<i>K</i> kind, berke	<i>K</i> burke	<i>Ch</i> kind, birke	<i>K</i> kind, birk	<i>K</i> kind, bjork	<i>Ki, K</i> kirkja
chapman	<i>Ce</i> ceapman	<i>K</i> koopman	<i>K</i> koopman	<i>K</i> koopman	<i>Ch, c</i> kirche	<i>G, Gt, Kt</i> kirte	<i>K, Ch</i> kyrckia	<i>Ki, K</i> vakt, thakla
church	<i>Ce</i> circe	<i>K</i> kerk	<i>K</i> kerk	<i>K</i> kerk	<i>Ch, c</i> kirche	<i>G, Gt, Kt</i> kirte	<i>K, Ch</i> kyrckia	<i>Ki, K</i> vakt, thakla
Ch, toh	<i>Ce</i> wacca, foccan	<i>K</i> dekken	<i>K</i> dekken	<i>K</i> dekken	<i>Ch, c</i> wacht, dach	<i>G, Gt, Kt</i> vagt, takke	<i>K, Ch</i> vacht, tak	<i>Ki, K</i> vakt, thakla
watch, fetch	<i>Ce</i> theccan	<i>K</i> dekken	<i>K</i> dekken	<i>K</i> dekken	<i>Ch, c</i> wacht, dach	<i>G, Gt, Kt</i> vagt, takke	<i>K, Ch</i> vacht, tak	<i>Ki, K</i> vakt, thakla

### COMPARATIVE PHILOLOGY.

English.	Anglo-Saxon.	Frisian.	Flemish.	Low Dutch.	High Dutch.	Danish.	Swedish.	Icelandic.
lock, back, pluck loc, bec, pluccian bek	<i>C, Cc</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K, Kk</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>Ch, Ck</i>	<i>Kke</i>	<i>K, Ck</i>	<i>K, Ck</i>
flood, blood, red	<i>D</i>	<i>D</i>	<i>D</i>	<i>D</i>	<i>T, Th</i>	<i>D, T</i>	<i>D, T</i>	<i>D, Dr</i>
dry, day		flood, blood, dippe del	viçed, blood, dopen, dag	flood, blood, dippe, dag	futh, blut, roth taufen, tupfen	flood, blood, rood dypper	flood, blood, rood dõpa	flood, blood, randr
food	<i>D</i>		<i>Fd</i>	<i>D</i>	<i>Pt</i>	<i>D</i>	<i>D</i>	<i>D</i>
head	headf	hand	hoofd		haupt	hoved	hofrud	hofrud
midge, hedge	<i>Gg, Cg</i>	<i>Gg</i>	<i>G</i>	<i>G, Cg</i>	<i>Cke</i>	<i>G, Kk</i>	<i>Gg</i>	my, hagi
Dolle	<i>Del, Dl</i>	<i>Del</i>	<i>Ddel</i>	<i>Del</i>	<i>Trel</i>	<i>Ddel, Del</i>	<i>Dh, Lp</i>	<i>Dull</i>
middle, saddle		middle, sadel	middel, sadel	sadel	mittel, sattel	middel, sadel	midja, sadel	sodull
enough	<i>Ge</i>	<i>Ge</i>	<i>Ge</i>	<i>Ge</i>	<i>Ge</i>	<i>Mute</i>	<i>Mute</i>	<i>G, Mute</i>
egg	<i>R</i>	genoach	genoeg	genug	genug	nok	nog	gnogtr, nog
me, the	<i>E final</i>	<i>E, A</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>Ae, E</i>	<i>A</i>	
	<i>E final for lengthening</i>				<i>-Ch</i>	<i>Y</i>	inda, ägg	-K
					mich, dich	my		milk, dlk
	<i>E</i>		<i>Oo</i>	<i>Oo</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>Mute</i>	<i>Mute</i>	<i>Mute</i>
	<i>Eo, Ea</i>	<i>Au, Ea</i>	<i>E, Au, Aa, Oo</i>	<i>Aa, Oo</i>	<i>Ee, Ae, Ah, Ah</i>	<i>Joe, C</i>	<i>V, O, Jo</i>	<i>Au</i>
earth, heart	eorthe, heorte	ierd, hert	aard, hert	eerde, hart	erde, herz	hjerde, joerd	hierta, jörd	raudr
year, head, bean	gear, heafod, bean, gear	hand, bean ear	jaar, hoofd, boon oor	jaar, bone oor	jahr, haupt, bohne oltr	ar, hoved, bonne ore	ar, hufvud, böna öra	
deep, knee	<i>Eo, E</i>	<i>Ie, Yi, E</i>	<i>Aa, Ie, Oe</i>	<i>Ee, Aa, O</i>	<i>Ie, A, Ah, V</i>	<i>Aa, I, O, Y</i>	<i>J, A</i>	<i>J, Y, R</i>
deep, sleep, cneow	deop, slep, cneow	diep, sleep	diep, slaap, knie	deep, slaap, knie	tief, schlaf, knie	diep, knae	diup, knae	diup, knie
scap, eel, bee	scap, eel, bee	scap, eel	schiaap, aal, bie	deep, slaap, knie	schief, ahl, biene	schief, ahl, biene	diup, knae	diup, knie
sweet	sweet	sweet	zoet	soet	suis	schaep, aal, bi	sväid	sestr

CHANGES INTO ENGLISH OF WORDS FROM ANGLO-SAXON; FRISIAN; FLEMISH; LOW DUTCH, LOW GERMAN OR FLAT DUTCH;  
HIGH DUTCH OR HIGH GERMAN; DANISH; SWEDISH; AND ICELANDIC.

English.	Anglo-Saxon.	Frisian.	Flemish.	Low Dutch.	High Dutch.	Danish.	Swedish.	Icelandic.
A	<i>Æ, E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E, A</i>	<i>A, E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>Å</i>	<i>EA</i>
day, way	dag, weg	weg	weg	dag, weg	weg	vej	dag, väg	vegur
father	fader	fader		vader				
A, prefix	A		<i>Mute</i>	<i>Mute</i>				
above	abufan	boven		baven				
AI	<i>Æ, Ege</i>	<i>Age, Ege</i>	<i>Age, Ege</i>	<i>Age, Ege</i>	<i>Age, Ege</i>	<i>Ag, Eij</i>	<i>Ag</i>	<i>Ag, Ege</i>
rain, hail	regn, hegel	regen, hagel	regen, hagel	regen, hagel	regen, hagel	regen, hagel	regn, hagel	regn, hagel
nail, sail	nægl, segel	nagel, zeil	nagel, zeil	segel	nagel, segel	nagel, sejl	nagla, segel	nagla, segl
maid	meden	maagd	maagd	maad	magd	moe	mo	maer
	<i>Æ</i>	<i>Æ</i>	<i>Æ</i>	<i>Æ</i>	<i>Æ</i>	<i>Æ</i>	<i>Æ</i>	<i>Æ</i>
hair	hear	haar	haar	haar	haar	haar	haar	haar
An	<i>O</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>Oo, O</i>
daughter	dohtor	dochter, dogter	dochter, dogter	dogter	tochter	dotter	doter	dochter
B	<i>F</i>	<i>B, F</i>	<i>F</i>	<i>B, F</i>	<i>F</i>	<i>F</i>	<i>B</i>	<i>F, B</i>
table, book	tafel, boc	tafel, boek	tafel, boek	tafel, boek	tafel, buch	tafel, bog	tabell, bok	tafla, bok
Br	<i>Br</i>	<i>B-r</i>	<i>B-r</i>	<i>B-r</i>	<i>B-r</i>	<i>B-r</i>	<i>B-r</i>	<i>Br</i>
breast	breost	borste	borste	borst	bürste	borste	börsta	brjóst
	<i>C</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>
calf, cold	cealf, ceald	kalf, koud	kalf, koud	kalf, kold	kalf, kalt	kalf, kold	kalf, kall	
Oh	<i>C, Ce</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K, Ch</i>	<i>K, Ki</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K, Kj</i>
chin, chaff	cinn, ceaf	kin, kaf	kin, kaf	kin, kat	kin, kaff		kin	kin
child, birch	cild, birce	kind, berke	kind, berke	barke	kind, birke	kind, birke	kind, björk	björk
chapman	ceapman	koopman	koopman	koopman	kaufmann	kiöbmand	kyrkja	kyrkja
church	circ	kerk	kerk		kirche	kirke	kyrkja	kyrkja
	<i>Ce</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>Ch, ck</i>	<i>G, Ch, Kt</i>	<i>K, Ch</i>	<i>Kt, K</i>
Ch, toh	wacca, foccan	dekken	dekken	weak	wacht, dach	vagt, takke	vächt	vakt, thokla
watch, fetch	theccan			dak	decken	tag	tag	thak
thatch								

English.	Anglo-Saxon.	Frisian.	Flemish.	Low Dutch.	High Dutch.	Danish.	Swedish.	Icelandic.
<i>Clk</i>	<i>C, Cc</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K, Kt</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>Ch, Ck</i>	<i>Kte</i>	<i>K, Ck</i>	<i>K, Ck</i>
lock, back, pluck loc, bec, pluccian bek			lok, plukken	bek, plinkten	locke, pfinken	lukke, plukke	bak, plocka	loka, bak, plocka
<i>D</i>	<i>D</i>	<i>D</i>	<i>D</i>	<i>D</i>	<i>T, Tk</i>	<i>D, T</i>	<i>D, T</i>	<i>D, Dr</i>
flood, blood, red	fiod, blod, red	flood, blood, dippe	viocd blood, red	lood flood, blood, rood	futh, blut, roth	fiod, blod, rood	fiod, blod, roed	fiod, blood, raund
dry, day	dippan, dag	del	dopen, dag	dippe, dag	taufen, tufen	dypper	döpa	
flood					<i>Se</i>			
<i>D</i>	<i>D</i>	<i>D</i>	<i>Fd</i>	<i>D</i>	<i>Pt</i>	<i>D</i>	<i>D</i>	<i>D</i>
head	head	hand	hoofd		haupt	hoved	hufvud	hofvud
<i>Dge</i>	<i>Gg, Cg</i>	<i>Gg</i>	<i>G</i>	<i>G, Gg</i>	<i>Cke</i>	<i>G, Kt</i>	<i>Gg</i>	
ridge, hedge	migge, hegge		mug, haag	mugge, hagen	mucke, hecke	myg, kekke	mygg, hag	my, hagi
<i>Delle</i>	<i>Del, Dd</i>	<i>Del</i>	<i>Didel</i>	<i>Del</i>	<i>Tdel</i>	<i>Didel, Del</i>	<i>Dj, Lj</i>	<i>Dull</i>
middle, saddle	middle, sadl		middel, zadel	sadel	mittel, sattel	middel, sadel	midja, sadel	soðull
<i>E</i>	<i>Ge</i>	<i>Ge</i>	<i>Ge</i>	<i>Ge</i>	<i>Ge</i>	<i>Mute</i>	<i>Mute</i>	<i>G, Mute</i>
enough	genoh	genoech	genoeg	genug	genug	nok	nog	gnogr, nog
<i>E</i>	<i>Æ</i>	<i>Æ, A</i>	<i>Æ</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>Æ, E</i>	<i>Æ</i>	
band, egg	æg, ande		eind, eyer	eind, ey	ende, ey	ende, eg	ände, ägg	
<i>co</i>	<i>E</i>				<i>-Ch</i>	<i>Y</i>		<i>-K</i>
<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>				mich, dich	my		mik, dik
<i>E final, for</i>								
<i>lengthening</i>								
<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>		<i>Mute</i>	<i>Mute</i>	<i>Mute</i>	<i>Mute</i>	<i>Mute</i>	<i>Mute</i>
red	red		<i>Oo</i>	<i>Oo</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>Öo</i>	<i>Ö</i>	<i>Äu</i>
<i>Ea</i>	<i>Ea, Ea</i>	<i>Au, Ea</i>	<i>E, Au, Aa, Oo</i>	<i>Au, Oo</i>	<i>E, Au, Oh, Ah</i>	<i>Joe, C</i>	<i>V, Ö, Jo</i>	<i>Ja, Jo</i>
earth, heart	corthe, heorte	ierd, hert	aard, bert	eerde, hart	erde, herz	hierte, heerd	hierta, fjord	hiarta
year, head, bean	gear, head, bean	jer, hand, bean	jaar, hoofd, boon	jaar, bons	jaar, haupt, bohne	oor, hoved, bonne	ar, hufvud, böna	ar, hofvud
<i>Ea</i>	<i>Ea</i>	<i>Æ</i>	<i>Æ</i>	<i>Æ</i>	<i>Oh</i>	<i>ore</i>	<i>öra</i>	<i>eyra</i>
<i>Ee</i>	<i>Ee, Ee</i>	<i>Æ</i>	<i>Æ</i>	<i>Æ</i>	<i>Æ</i>	<i>Æ</i>	<i>Æ</i>	<i>J, Y, Æ</i>
deep, sleep, knee	deop, slep, kneow	dyip, slepe	tief, schlaap, knie	diep, slaap, knie	tief, schlaap, knie	dyb, knae	djup, knas	dyup, knie
<i>Ee</i>	<i>Ee</i>	<i>Ee</i>	<i>Ee</i>	<i>Ee</i>	<i>Ee</i>	<i>Ee</i>	<i>Ee</i>	<i>Ee</i>
death, eat, bee	scap, al, beo	iel	schlaap, aal, bie	aal, sal	schlaf, aal, biene	schlaep, aal, bi	äl, bi	by
<i>Ee</i>	<i>Ee</i>	<i>Ee</i>	<i>Ee</i>	<i>Ee</i>	<i>Ee</i>	<i>Ee</i>	<i>Ee</i>	<i>Ee</i>
swet	swet	swet	soet	soet	sus	söd	swid	swet

CHANGES INTO ENGLISH OF WORDS FROM ANGLO-SAXON; FRISIAN; FLEMISH; LOW DUTCH, LOW GERMAN OR FLAT DUTCH;  
HIGH DUTCH OR HIGH GERMAN; DANISH; SWEDISH; AND ICELANDIC.

English.	Anglo-Saxon.	Frisian.	Flemish.	Low Dutch.	High Dutch.	Danish.	Swedish.	Icelandic.
A	<i>Æ, E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E, A</i>	<i>A, E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>Ä</i>	<i>E, A</i>
day, way	dag, weg	dei, wei	weg	dag, weg	weg	vej	dag, väg	vegur
father	fæder	fæder		vader				
A, prefix	<i>A</i>		<i>Mute</i>	<i>Mute</i>				
above	abufan		boven	baven				
Æi	<i>Æ, Ege</i>	<i>Ag, Ei</i>	<i>Age, Ege</i>	<i>Age, Ege</i>	<i>Age, Ege</i>	<i>Ag, Ej</i>	<i>Ag</i>	<i>Ag, Eg</i>
rain, hail	regn, hæg	ren, heil	regen, hæg	regen, hæg	regen, hæg	regen, hæg	regn, hæg	regn, hæg
nail, sail	næg, segel	neil, seil	nagel, zeil	segel	nagel, segel	nagel, seil	nägla, segel	nægla, segl
maid	mæden	megeth	meagd	maid	magd	moe	mo	maer
Æ	<i>Æ</i>	<i>Ee</i>	<i>Aa</i>	<i>Aa</i>	<i>Aa</i>	<i>Aa</i>	<i>Ao</i>	<i>Aa</i>
hair	hær	heer	haar	haar	haar	haar	haar	haar
daughter	<i>O</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>Oo, O</i>
B	<i>F</i>	<i>B, F</i>	<i>F</i>	<i>B, F</i>	<i>F</i>	<i>F</i>	<i>B</i>	<i>F, B</i>
table, book	taef, boe	tefa, boek	tafel, boek	tafel, boek	tafel, buch	tafel, bog	tabell, bok	tafa, bok
Br	<i>Br</i>		<i>B-r</i>	<i>B-r</i>	<i>B-r</i>	<i>B-r</i>	<i>B-r</i>	<i>Br</i>
breast	broest		borste	borst	bürste	borste	börste	bröst
C	<i>Ca</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>
calf, cold	cealf, ceald	kald	kalf, koud	kalf, kold	kalf, kalt	kalf, kold	kalf, kall	
Ch	<i>C, Ce</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K, Ch</i>	<i>K, Ks</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K, Kj</i>
chaff	cin, ceaf	kin	kin, kaf	kin, kat	kin, kaf		kin	kin
child, birch	clid, birce	byrk	kind, berke	birke	kind, birke	kind, birke	kind, björk	björk
chapman	ceapman		koopman	koopman	kaufmann			
church	circ		kerk		kirche	kirke	kyrka	kirja
Ch, toh	<i>Ce</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>Ch, cæ</i>	<i>G, Gt, Kt</i>	<i>K, Ck</i>	<i>Kt, K</i>
watch, fetch	wæcca, feccean		dekken	waak	wacht, dach	vagt, takke	väkt	vakt, tækla
thatch	theccan			dak	decken	tag	tak	thak

English.	Anglo-Saxon.	Frisian.	Flemish.	Low Dutch.	High Dutch.	Danish.	Swedish.	Icelandic.
<i>Ok</i>	<i>C, Cc</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>K, Kt</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>Ch, Ct</i>	<i>Kte</i>	<i>K, Ct</i>	<i>K, Ct</i>
lock, back, pluck loc, becc, pluccian bek			lok, plukken	bak, plukken	locke, pflücken	lukke, plukke	bak, plocka	loka, bak, plocka
<i>D</i>	<i>D</i>	<i>D</i>	<i>D</i>	<i>D</i>	<i>T, Th</i>	<i>D, Th</i>	<i>D, Th</i>	<i>D, Dr</i>
flood, blood, red	flood, blood, red	flood, blood, red	flood, blood, red	flood, blood, red	flood, blood, red	flood, blood, red	flood, blood, red	flood, blood, red
dyip, day	clippian, dag	doopen, dag	dopen, dag	dippe, dag	taufen, tufen	dypper	dýpa	randr
<i>flod</i>					<i>Se</i>			
					fluss			
<i>D</i>	<i>D</i>	<i>Rd</i>	<i>Rd</i>	<i>D</i>	<i>Py</i>	<i>D</i>	<i>D</i>	<i>D</i>
head	head	hoofd	hoofd		haupt	hoved	hufvud	hofvud
<i>Dge</i>	<i>Gg, Gy</i>	<i>G</i>	<i>G</i>	<i>G, Gg</i>	<i>Cke</i>	<i>G, Kt</i>	<i>Gg</i>	
midge, hedge	midge, begge	mug, haag	mug, haag	mugge, hagen	mucke, hecke	myg, kekke	mygg, bag	my, bagl
<i>Ddle</i>	<i>Del, Dl</i>	<i>Ddel</i>	<i>Ddel</i>	<i>Del</i>	<i>Thel</i>	<i>Ddel, Del</i>	<i>Dh, Ig</i>	<i>Dull</i>
middle, saddle	middle, sadl	middel, zadl	middel, zadl	sadel	mittel, sattel	middel, sadel	midja, sadel	sodull
<i>E</i>	<i>Ge</i>	<i>Ge</i>	<i>Ge</i>	<i>Ge</i>	<i>Ge</i>	<i>Mute</i>	<i>Mute</i>	<i>G, Mute</i>
enough	genoh	genoeg	genoeg	genug	genug	nok	nog	gnogr, nog
<i>E</i>	<i>R, A</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>As, E</i>	<i>A</i>	
egg	egg, ande	eind, eyer	eind, eyer	ei	ende, ey	ende, eg	ände, ägg	
<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>-Ch</i>	<i>Y</i>		<i>-K</i>
egg, egg					mich, dlich	my		mlk, dik
<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>Mute</i>	<i>Mute</i>	<i>Mute</i>	<i>Mute</i>
<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>Öo</i>	<i>Ö</i>	<i>Au</i>
<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	roth	rood	röed	randr
<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E, Au, Oh, Ah</i>	<i>Joe, C</i>	<i>V, Ö, Jo</i>	<i>Ja, Jo</i>
red	corthe, heorte	aard, hert	aard, hert	cerde, hart	erde, herz	hjerde, joerd	hjerda, jörd	hjerda
<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	jahr, haupt, bohne oor, hoved, bonne ar, hufvud, böms ar, hufvud	jahr, haupt, bohne oor, hoved, bonne ar, hufvud, böms ar, hufvud	eyra	eyra
<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>Io, A, Ah, V</i>	<i>Io, A, I, O, Y</i>	<i>J, A</i>	<i>J, Y, A</i>
year, year	deep, deep, cneow	diep, slaap, knie	diep, slaap, knie	deep, slaap, knie	schaf, aal, blome	schaf, aal, blome	djup, knae	djup, knae
<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	soet	soet	äi, bi	by
<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>E</i>	soet	soet	sväid	soetr



Anglo-Saxon.	Frisian.	Flemish.	Low Dutch.	High Dutch.	Danish.	Swedish.	Icelandic.
<i>El, En, Er</i> weter, navel scoulder	<i>La, En, Er</i> weter, navel scoulder	<i>El, En, Er</i> water, navel scoulder	<i>El, En, Er</i> water, navel scoulder	<i>El, En, Er</i> wasser, nabel schoulder	<i>Fl, En, Er</i> vater, navle skulder	<i>El, En, Er, Ra</i> vater, nade akuldr	<i>L, N, R</i> vann, nable skiolldr
<i>F</i> fisc, coalf, half wif, theof, fader, full	<i>F</i> fisc, coalf, half wif, theof, fader, full	<i>V</i> visch, kalf, half wif, dief, vader, vol	<i>V P</i> fisch, kalf, half wief, deef, vader, full	<i>F B</i> fisch, kalb, halv weib, dieb, vader, voll	<i>F Fv, V</i> fisk, kalv, halv viv, tyr, fader	<i>F Fv, B</i> fisk, kalf, half tjuff, fader	<i>F Fr</i> fiskr, halfr vif, thloft fader
<i>F</i> staf	<i>F</i> staf	<i>F</i> staf	<i>F</i> staf	<i>B</i> stab	<i>B</i> stab, stav	<i>B</i> stab	<i>Fr</i> staf
<i>Fr</i> after	<i>Fr</i> after	<i>Gt</i> agter	<i>Gt</i> agter	<i>Ch</i> achter	<i>Gt</i> agter, efter	<i>Fr</i> efter	<i>Pt</i> eptir
<i>G</i> teohlian, wagian	<i>G</i> bewegen	<i>G</i> bewegen	<i>G</i> wegen	<i>H</i> ziehen	<i>G</i> bevege	<i>G</i> toga, waga	<i>G</i> toga, vaga
<i>H, G</i> heah, gast ploga	<i>Ch, G</i> hoech, gast pleog	<i>G</i> hoog, geest pleog	<i>G</i> hoog, goest	<i>G, Ch</i> hoch, geist pfug	<i>G, J</i> høj, geist plong	<i>G</i> hög, plog	<i>G, Jr</i> hog, plogr
<i>Ht</i> right, daughter	<i>Ch</i> riecht	<i>Ch, Ch</i> recht, dogter	<i>Ch, Gt</i> recht, dogter	<i>Ch</i> recht, tochter	<i>Tt</i> ret, dotter	<i>Tt, Ch, Gt</i> rett, dotter	<i>Tt, Tt</i> retr, dootter
<i>G</i> lengc	<i>Gt, Gd</i> lengte	<i>Gt, Gd</i> lengte	<i>Gt, Gd</i> lengte	<i>Gt</i> lange	<i>Gt</i> langt	<i>Gd</i> längd	<i>Gt</i> längd
<i>I</i> white, swine milk	<i>I</i> hwit meloc	<i>Y, U, E</i> wit, zwijn melk	<i>I</i> wit, swien melk	<i>Ei</i> weiss, schwein milch	<i>Ii, E</i> hvid, svin melk	<i>J, Jo</i> hvit, svjn mjolk	<i>Io, I</i> hvitr, svin mjolk
<i>Ea</i> heah	<i>Oe</i> hoech	<i>Oo</i> hoog	<i>Oo</i> hoog	<i>O</i> hoch	<i>O</i> høj	<i>O</i> hög	<i>O</i> hog
<i>C</i> wuce, braccan boe	<i>K</i> week, braaken boek	<i>K</i> week, braaken boek	<i>K</i> weke, brekke boek	<i>Ch</i> woch, brechen luch	<i>G, Kt</i> ugen, brækker bog	<i>Ch, K</i> weika, bräcka bok	<i>K</i> vika bok
<i>C</i> taccan	<i>K</i> brekke boek	<i>K</i> week, braaken boek	<i>K</i> weke, brekke boek	<i>Ch</i> woch, brechen luch	<i>Gt</i> tage	<i>G</i> taga, mistag	<i>G</i> taga
<i>Cn</i> cuife, kneow	<i>Kn</i> kne	<i>Kn</i> kne	<i>Kn</i> kneet, knief	<i>Kn</i> knie	<i>Kn</i> kniv, knæ	<i>Kn</i> knif, knæ	<i>Hn, Kn</i> hnfr, knie

English.	Anglo-Saxon.	Frisian.	Flemish.	Low Dutch.	High Dutch.	Danish.	Swedish.	Icelandic.
<i>L</i> head, head, lot	<i>Hl</i> blac, blaeford, blot blot	<i>L, Hl</i> <i>L</i> pal, stol	<i>L</i> lot	<i>L</i> lott	<i>L</i> leib, los	<i>L</i> lod	<i>L</i> lott	<i>L</i> pall, solir
<i>L, Ll</i> pole, stool	<i>L</i> pol, stol	<i>L</i> pal, stol	<i>El</i> paal, stool	<i>L</i> paal, stool	<i>Hl</i> pfahl, stuhl	<i>L</i> pel, stol	<i>L</i> paale, stol	<i>Llr</i> pall, solir
<i>Ld</i> child, shoulder	<i>Ld</i> cild, sculdor	<i>Ld, Ud</i> kind, schouder	<i>Nd, Ud</i> kind, schouder	<i>Ld</i> schulder	<i>Nd, Ld</i> kind, schulter	<i>Ld</i> akulder	<i>Ld</i> skuldra	<i>Lld</i> akollur
<i>Le</i> able, girdle	<i>El</i> taf, gyrdel	<i>El, La</i> tafa, taffa	<i>El</i> tafel, gordel	<i>El</i> tafel, gordel	<i>El</i> tafel, gurtel	<i>El</i> tafel, gordel	<i>El</i> tabel, gürdel	<i>La</i> tafa
<i>Ll, see Low</i> sell, full, hill	<i>Ll</i> sellan, full, hill	<i>Ll</i> sella, full	<i>Gel, L</i> vol, heuvel	<i>Ll</i> seilen, full, hull	<i>Gel, Ll</i> voll, trügel	<i>Lg, Ld</i> seilger, fuld	<i>Lj, Ll</i> selja, full	<i>Lj, Llr, Ll</i> selja, full, hell
<i>Low</i> galloway, tallow	<i>Lh, Lhg, Lg</i> galg, talh, talh	<i>Lg</i> galg, talg	<i>Lg</i> galg, talg	<i>Lg</i> galg, talg	<i>Lg</i> galgen, talg	<i>Lg</i> galge, talg	<i>Lj, Lg</i> galge, talg	<i>Lg</i> galge, tolg
<i>M</i> name, ram	<i>M</i> nama, ram	<i>M</i> naam, ram	<i>M</i> naam, ram	<i>Mm</i> name, ramm	<i>Hm, Mm</i> name, nahme	<i>Vn, N</i> navn, ram	<i>Mn</i> namn	<i>Fn</i> nafn
<i>Mb</i> lamb, thumb	<i>Mb, M</i> lamb, thuma	<i>M</i> lam, duin	<i>M</i> lam, duin	<i>Mm</i> lamm, duum	<i>M</i> lamm, daumen	<i>M</i> lam, tomme	<i>Mb</i> lamb, tunne	<i>Mb</i> lamb
<i>Mp</i> henep, damp	<i>Mp, Np</i> henep	<i>Nep</i> henep, damp	<i>Nep</i> henep, damp	<i>Mp</i> hemp	<i>Mpf, Nf</i> hanf, dampf	<i>Mp</i> hamp, damp	<i>Mp, Mb</i> hampa, dämb	<i>Mp</i> hampa
<i>N</i> nut	<i>N</i> nwt	<i>N</i> noot	<i>N</i> noot	<i>N</i> nut	<i>N</i> nuss	<i>N</i> nod	<i>N</i> not	<i>Hn</i> hanna
<i>Nt</i> hen, sunn, chine	<i>N, Nn</i> hen, sunn, chine	<i>N</i> hen, zoon, kin	<i>N</i> hen, zoon, kin	<i>N</i> ben, sone, kinn	<i>Hn, Nd</i> hahn, honne	<i>N, Nd</i> hana, son, kind	<i>N, Nd</i> håna, son, kind	<i>N, Nn</i> hanna, son, kinn
<i>Nt, Nn</i> sun, suna	<i>Nt, Nn</i> sunna, mona	<i>N</i> zoon, man	<i>N</i> zoon, man	<i>N</i> sunne, man	<i>N</i> sonne, mond	<i>N</i> sol, maane	<i>N</i> sol, måna	<i>Nn</i> sunna, manr
<i>Nk</i> drincan, thiancan	<i>Nc</i> drincan, thiancan	<i>Nk</i> drinken, tanken	<i>Nk</i> drinken, tanken	<i>Nk</i> drinken, danken	<i>Nk</i> drinken, danken	<i>Nk</i> dricken, takker	<i>Nk</i> dricka, tacka	<i>Nk</i> dricka, tacka
<i>Nt, Nn</i> stan, ban	<i>A</i> stan, ban	<i>Ec</i> steen, been	<i>Ec</i> steen, been	<i>Ec</i> steen	<i>Ec</i> stein, bein	<i>A, Ec</i> steen, bech	<i>A, Ec</i> sten, ben	<i>Ec</i> steinn, bein
<i>O</i> word	<i>U, V</i> sunu, wyru	<i>U</i> sun	<i>U</i> sun	<i>O</i> sona, worm, word	<i>Ok</i> sohn, wort	<i>O</i> son, orn	<i>O</i> son, orn	<i>O</i> sonr, orntr

English.	Anglo-Saxon.	Frisian.	Flemish.	Low Dutch.	High Dutch.	Danish.	Sweedish.	Icelandic.
<i>El, En, Er</i> water, navel shoulder	<i>Ela, En, Er</i> water, navel scoulder	<i>La, En, Er</i> wiel, nautla scoulder	<i>El, En, Er</i> water, navel schouder	<i>El, En, Er</i> water, navel schouder	<i>El, En, Er</i> wasser, nabel schulter	<i>Fl, En, Er</i> vater, navle skulder	<i>El, En, Er, Ra</i> vatter, naffe akuldr	<i>L, N, R</i> vatn, nable akiölldr
<i>F</i> fish, calf, half wife, thief father, full	<i>F</i> fisc, coalf, half wif, theof fader, full	<i>F</i> fisk wif, tinf feder, ful	<i>V</i> visch, kalf, half wyf, dief vader, vol	<i>V P</i> fisch, kalf, half wief, deer vader, full	<i>F B</i> fisch, kalf, half web, dieb vater, voll	<i>F Fv, V</i> fisk, kalf, half viv, tyr fader	<i>F, Fv, B</i> fisk, kalf, half tjuff fader	<i>F, Fv</i> fiskr, half vif, thiofr fader
<i>Ft</i> stag	<i>Ft</i> staf	<i>F</i> stef	<i>F</i> staf	<i>F</i> staf	<i>B</i> vater, voll	<i>B</i> fader	<i>B</i> fader	<i>Fv</i> staf
<i>Ft</i> after	<i>Ft</i> after	<i>Ft</i> after	<i>Gt</i> agter	<i>Gt</i> staf	<i>Ch</i> stab	<i>Gt</i> staf	<i>Ft</i> staf	<i>Pt</i> staf
<i>G</i> tug, wag	<i>Hh, G</i> teohhian, wagian	<i>Ft</i> after	<i>G</i> bewegen	<i>G</i> wegen	<i>Ch</i> achter	<i>Gt</i> agter, efter	<i>Ft</i> after	<i>Pt</i> epidr
<i>Gh</i> high, ghost plough	<i>H, G</i> heah, gast plog	<i>Ch, G</i> hoech, gast	<i>G</i> hoog, geest ploeg	<i>G</i> hoog, goest	<i>G, Ch</i> hoch, geist pfug	<i>G, J</i> høj ploug	<i>G</i> tog, wagg	<i>G, gr</i> tog, vagg hog plogr
<i>Ght</i> right, daughter	<i>Ht</i> riht, dohtor	<i>Ch</i> riucht	<i>Ch, Ch</i> recht, dogter	<i>Ch, Ch</i> recht, dogter	<i>Ch</i> recht, tochter	<i>Tt</i> ret, dotter	<i>Tv, Ch, Gt</i> ret, doter	<i>Tt, Tv</i> retr, dooter
<i>Gth</i> length	<i>G</i> leng	<i>Gt</i> lengte	<i>Gt, Gd</i> lengte	<i>Gt</i> lange	<i>Gt</i> länge	<i>Gt</i> langt	<i>Gd</i> längd	<i>I, I</i> hvitr, svin molk
<i>I</i> white, swine milk	<i>Ed</i> hwite, swin meole, milc	<i>I</i> hvit meloc	<i>Y, Ij, E</i> wit, zwijn melk	<i>I</i> wit, swien melk	<i>Ei</i> weiss, schwein milch	<i>Ii, B</i> hvid, sviln mælk	<i>J, Jo</i> hvit, svjn mjolk	<i>I, I</i> hvitr, svin molk
<i>igh</i> break	<i>Ea</i> heah	<i>Oe</i> hoech	<i>Oo</i> hoog	<i>Oo</i> hoog	<i>O</i> hoch	<i>O</i> høj	<i>O</i> hög	<i>O</i> hog
<i>K</i> weak, book	<i>C</i> wucc, breacan boe	<i>K</i> brekke boek	<i>K</i> week, braeken boek	<i>K</i> weke, brukke book	<i>Ch</i> woch, brechen buch	<i>G, Kt</i> ugen, brækker bog	<i>Ch, K</i> weika, bricka bok	<i>K</i> vika bok
<i>K</i> mistake	<i>C</i> tascan	<i>K</i> brekke boek	<i>K</i> week, braeken boek	<i>K</i> weke, brukke book	<i>Ch</i> woch, brechen buch	<i>Gt</i> tage	<i>G</i> taga, mistag	<i>G</i> taka
<i>Kn</i> knee	<i>Cn</i> cnife, cneow	<i>Kn</i> knie	<i>Kn</i> knie	<i>Kn</i> knee, knief	<i>Kn</i> knie	<i>Kn</i> kniv, knas	<i>Kn</i> knif, knas	<i>Hn, Kn</i> hnfr, knie

English.	Anglo-Saxon.	Frisian.	Flemish.	Low Dutch.	High Dutch.	Dutch.	Swedish.	Icelandic.
<i>L</i>	<i>Hl</i>	<i>L, Hl</i>	<i>L</i>	<i>L</i>	<i>L</i>	<i>L</i>	<i>L</i>	<i>L</i>
leaf, broad, lot	blaf, blaeford, blot blot	lot	lot	lott	leib, los	lod	lott	
<i>L, Ll</i>	<i>L</i>	<i>L</i>	<i>El</i>	<i>L</i>	<i>Hl</i>	<i>L</i>	<i>L</i>	<i>Lhr</i>
pole, stool	pol, stol	pal, stol	paal, stoel	paal, stoel	pfahl, stuhl	paal, stol	paale, stol	paal, stollr
<i>Ld</i>	<i>Ld</i>	<i>Ld</i>	<i>Nd, Ud</i>	<i>Ld</i>	<i>Nd, Ll</i>	<i>Ld</i>	<i>Ld</i>	<i>Lld</i>
child, shoulder	cild, sculdor	sculder	kind, schouder	schneider	kind, schultor	skulder	skuldra	skuldur
<i>Le</i>	<i>El</i>	<i>El, La</i>	<i>El</i>	<i>El</i>	<i>El</i>	<i>El</i>	<i>El</i>	<i>La</i>
able, girdle	taef, gyrdel	taef, gerdel	tafel, gordel	tafel, gordel	tafel, gurtel	tafel, gordel	tabell, gürdel	tafa
<i>Ll, see Low</i>	<i>Ll</i>	<i>Ll</i>	<i>Gel, L</i>	<i>Ll</i>	<i>Gel, Ll</i>	<i>Lg, Ll</i>	<i>Lg, Ll</i>	<i>Lg, Lhr, Ll</i>
sell, full, hill	sellan, full, hill	sellu, full	vol, heuvel	sellon, full, hull	voll, hügel	seelger, feld	sellu, full	sellu, fullr, höll
<i>Low</i>	<i>Lh, Lig, Lg</i>	<i>Lg</i>	<i>Lg</i>	<i>Lg</i>	<i>Lg</i>	<i>Lg</i>	<i>Lg, Lg</i>	<i>Lg</i>
gallows, tallow	gaig, talh, salh	galga	galg, talg	galg, talg	galgen, talg	galge, talg	galge, talg	galgt, tolg
<i>M</i>	<i>M</i>	<i>M</i>	<i>M</i>	<i>Mm</i>	<i>Hm, Mm</i>	<i>Vn, N</i>	<i>Mn</i>	<i>Fn</i>
name, ram	nama, ram	nama, ram	naam, ram	name, ramun	name, ramme	navn, ram	nämn	nafn
<i>Mb</i>	<i>Mb, M</i>	<i>M</i>	<i>M</i>	<i>Mm</i>	<i>M</i>	<i>M</i>	<i>Mb</i>	<i>Mb</i>
lamb, thumb	lamb, thuma	lam, thuma	lam, duim	lamm, duum	lamm, daumen	lam, tomme	lamb, tumme	lamb
<i>Mp</i>	<i>Mp, Np</i>		<i>Nep</i>	<i>Mp</i>	<i>Mpf, Nf</i>	<i>Mp</i>	<i>Mp, Mb</i>	<i>Mp</i>
hemp, damp	henep		hennepe, damp	hemp	hanf, dampf	hamp, damp	hampa, dämb	
<i>N</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>Hn</i>
nut	hnut	nuwt	noet	nut	nuss	nod	not	
<i>N, Nn</i>	<i>N, Nn</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>Hn, Nd</i>	<i>N, Nd</i>	<i>N, Nd</i>	<i>N, Nn</i>
hen, sun, cinne	heyn, sun, kin	hen, zoon, kin	hen, zoon, kin	hen, sone, kinn	hahn, honne	hans, son, kind	håns, son, kind	hansa, sonr, kinn
<i>N, Nn</i>	<i>N, Nn</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>N</i>	<i>Nn</i>
sunna, mona	sunna, mona	sun	zon, man	sunne, man	sohn, kinn	sol, maane	sol, måna	sunna maar
<i>Nc</i>	<i>Nc</i>	<i>Nc</i>	<i>Nc</i>	<i>Nc</i>	<i>Nc</i>	<i>Nc</i>	<i>Nc</i>	<i>Nc</i>
drincan, thancian	thoneen	thoneen	drinken, tanken	drinken, danken	drinken, danken	dricker, takker	dricka, tacka	dricka, thacka
<i>Np</i>	<i>Np</i>	<i>Np</i>	<i>Np</i>	<i>Np</i>	<i>Np</i>	<i>Np</i>	<i>Np</i>	<i>Np</i>
stan, ban	stan, ban	sten, ban	steen, been	steen	stein, bein	steen, been	sten, bein	stein, bein
<i>O</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>O</i>
word, sunit, wyrm	word, sunit, wyrm	sun	zoon, wurm, word	son, worm, word	sohn, wurm, wort	son, orm	son, orm	sonr, ornir

Irish.	Anglo-Saxon.	Præian.	Fæmish.	Low Dutch.	High Dutch.	Danish.	Swedish.	Icelandic.
mother	<i>A</i>	<i>moder</i>	<i>Oe</i>	<i>moder</i>	<i>U</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>Oo</i>
ar, ath	<i>A</i>	<i>Ee</i>	<i>Ee</i>		<i>Ee</i>	<i>Oe</i> , <i>Ae</i>	<i>A</i> , <i>E</i>	<i>Ae</i>
ta, wa	<i>A</i>	<i>A</i>	<i>Ee</i>	<i>Ae</i>	<i>Ee</i>	<i>Oe</i> , <i>Ae</i>	<i>A</i>	<i>A</i>
skander	<i>U</i>	<i>U</i>	<i>Oe</i>	<i>U</i>	<i>U</i>	<i>U</i>	<i>U</i>	<i>U</i>
blood, foot, blood, foot, stool, wood	<i>O</i> , <i>Eo</i>	<i>Oe</i> , <i>O</i>	<i>Oe</i> , <i>Ou</i> , <i>Ae</i>	<i>Oe</i>	<i>U</i> , <i>Ua</i> , <i>U</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>O</i>	<i>O</i>
hound, house	<i>U</i> , <i>O</i>	<i>O</i> , <i>Ea</i> , <i>U</i>	<i>O</i> , <i>U</i>	<i>O</i> , <i>U</i>	<i>U</i> , <i>Au</i>	<i>U</i> , <i>Ua</i>	<i>U</i>	<i>U</i>
youth, young	<i>Au</i>	<i>Ee</i>	<i>Ie</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>Ie</i>	<i>Ie</i>	<i>Ae</i>	<i>U</i>
soul	<i>U</i>	<i>Ee</i>	<i>Ie</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>Ie</i>	<i>Ie</i>	<i>Ae</i>	<i>U</i>
owl	<i>U</i>	<i>Ee</i>	<i>Ie</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>Ie</i>	<i>Ie</i>	<i>Ae</i>	<i>U</i>
brow, snow	<i>U</i>	<i>Ee</i>	<i>Ie</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>Ie</i>	<i>Ie</i>	<i>Ae</i>	<i>U</i>
tallow, marrow	<i>U</i>	<i>Ee</i>	<i>Ie</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>Ie</i>	<i>Ie</i>	<i>Ae</i>	<i>U</i>
purse	<i>U</i>	<i>Ee</i>	<i>Ie</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>Ie</i>	<i>Ie</i>	<i>Ae</i>	<i>U</i>
pound, plough	<i>U</i>	<i>Ee</i>	<i>Ie</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>Ie</i>	<i>Ie</i>	<i>Ae</i>	<i>U</i>
ship, sleep	<i>U</i>	<i>Ee</i>	<i>Ie</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>Ie</i>	<i>Ie</i>	<i>Ae</i>	<i>U</i>
apple	<i>U</i>	<i>Ee</i>	<i>Ie</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>Ie</i>	<i>Ie</i>	<i>Ae</i>	<i>U</i>



English.	Anglo-Saxon.	Frisian.	Flemish.	Low Dutch.	High Dutch.	Danish.	Swedish.	Icelandic.
mother	moðer	muder	moeder	moder	mutter	moder	moder	moðer
car, oath	A	Ee	Ee		Ei	Ge, Aa	Ä, E	Aa
oe	A	A	Ee		eid	ceed, saare	ärr, ed	saar
too, woe	ta, wa	tane	tee, woe	taan	zehc, weh	Aa	Ä, wä	A
shoulder	Ull	Ull	Ou	Ull	Ull	Ull	tä, wä	ta
	sculder	sculder	schouder	schulder	schulter	skulder	skuldra	skollur
Oo	O, Eo	Oe, O	Oe, Ou, Aa	Oo	U, Uh, Ol	O	O	O
blood, flood, foot, stool, wood	bloed, fiod, fot, stol, woad	bloed, fiod, fot, stol	bloed, vloed, voet, stoel, hout	blood, flood, foot, stool, woden	blut, füss, fuß, stuhl, holz	blæ, fiod, footur, stol, vea	blod, fiod, fot, stol, wad	blood, fiod, fot, stollr
On	U, O	O, Eu, U	O, Uis	O, U	U, Aa	U, Uu	U	U
hound, house	hund, hus	hus, jenchit	hond, huis	hund, hus	hund, haus	hund, hus	hund, hus, ung	hundur, hus
young, young	geoguth, geong	jong	jugend, jong	jogd, junk	jugend, jung	ung		ungur
On	Au	Ee	Ie	E	Ie	Ie	Ja	
soul	saula	seale	ziel	sele	stale	stel	sjal	
Ow	-G	-G	-G	-G	-G	-G	-G	-G
fowl	fugel	fugel	vogel	fogel	fugel	fugl	fogel	fugl
Ow	-Ow, Aw, G	-Gye	-Aw, Ew	-G	Aue	-O, Y	O, V	-Oor
brow, sow	browe, suga	slugge	brauw, zeug	soge	braue, sau	bryn, so	bryn, so	saaloor
snow	snaaw		aneeuw	snee	schnee	ane	sno	
	H	Rch	-G	-G, K	-G, K	-G, V	-G	-Gr
tallow, marrow	tall, mearch	mearch	talg, merg	talg, murk	talg, mark	talg, märv	talg, märg	mergr, talg
P	P	P	B	P	B	B	B	P
purse	puso		borse		bürse	börs	bors	post
pound, plough	pund, ploeg	pund, ploeg	pond, ploeg	pund	pfund, pfug	pund, ploug	pund, plog	plund, plogr
P final	P	P	P	P	Pf	B	Pp, B	B
sleep, sleep	soyn, sleep	alepe	schip, slaap	schipp, slaap	schiff, schlaf	skib	akopp	akip
Pp	Pp	P	Pp	Pp	Pf	B	P	P
apple	appl	apel	appel	appel	apfel	sebel	apel	

English	Anglo-Saxon	Frisian	Flemish	Low Dutch	High Dutch	Danish	Swedish	Icelandic
Qu queen quack, quick	Qw cwelan, cwac	Qw quease, quik	Kw kwelen, kwik	Qw quezen, quik	Qu quälen, quick	Qw qvæler, qvinde	Qw qvälla, qvinna	Kw, Ky, Kr kvenna
R ring	Hr hring	R, Hr hring	R ring	R ring	R ring	R ring	R ring	Hr hringr
-R tear	-R tear	-R ther	N braun	N traue	N thrane	R taaro	R taor	R tar
Rd	Rd							Dd
Rk dark, mark	Rc deort, meare	Rc merc	Rk dun, merk	Rk merk	Nk, Rk dunkel, mark	Nk, Rk mark	Nk, Rk dunke, märke	Kr, Rk doktr, mark
Rw, Rr sorrow, marrow	Rh, Ry sorg, meath	Rch merch	Rg zorg, merg	Rk sorg, murk	Rk, Rg sorge, mark	Rg, Rv sorg, marv	Rg, Ry sorg, märke	Rgr, Rg morg
S sister, sea	S, Sw sweoster, see	S se	Z zuster, zee	S suster, see	Sch schwester, see	S soster, so	S, Sj syster, sjo	S, Sj syster, sjar
son	sun	sun	zoon	sone	sohn	ou	son	sonr
Sc sour	See	Sk scoor	Sch schurt	Sch schorff	Sch schorff	Sk skurv	Sk skorr	Sk akurrur
Sh mesh, sheep	Sc, X scat, scap	Sk, Sc flak	Sch, S schot, mass	Sk saken, fleesch	Sch masche, schaff	Sk fleesch, flak	Sk, Sj moek, flak	Sk, Sc fleska, flakur
Shk, flake	flasc, flax		Sch, S schuap, vleesch	fleesch				
Sk, skulder	scorta, sculder	sculder	H hend, schouder	schulder	H hend, schulter	Sj skorte, skulder	Sj skjorta, skuldra	Sk scyrta, skollur
Sj, skul, flak	-Hs, Sc absian, tusc, flaxa	flaxa	-Sch elichen, fleesch	Sk, Sch saken, fleesch	-Sche flasche	-Sk flaake	-Sk flaska	-Sk
Sd, sl	slap	slap	Sl slaap	Sl slaap	Schl schlaf			
Sg scale	Sa sanla	Sg scale	Zi ziel	Se sele	Si siele	Si stel	Sj ejdl	S sal
Ss gar	Ra garr	S garr, gres	S gras	S gras	S gras	S gras	S gras	S gras



English	Anglo-Saxon.	Frisian.	Flemish.	Low Dutch.	High Dutch.	Danish.	Swedish.	Icelandic.
stool	<i>S</i> stol	<i>S</i> stool	<i>S</i> stoel	<i>S</i> stool	<i>S</i> stuhl	<i>S</i> stol	<i>S</i> stol	<i>S</i> stoll
swine, sweet	<i>Sw</i> swin, swete	<i>Sw</i> swiet	<i>Zw, Zo</i> zwijn, zoet	<i>Sw, S</i> swien, sot	<i>Schw, Su</i> schwein, saus	<i>Sw, S</i> svin, söd	<i>Sw, So</i> svin, söd	<i>Sw</i> ta, stin, tid tönn
tooth	<i>T</i> ta, tyn, tid toth	<i>T</i> tane, tian, tid tanne	<i>T</i> tee, tien, tijd tand	<i>T</i> taan, tien, tid tan	<i>Z-</i> zehe, zehen, zeit zahn	<i>T</i> tik, tio, tid tand	<i>T</i> tik, tio, tid tand	<i>T</i> ta, stin, tid tönn
tear	<i>Th</i> tear	<i>Th</i> ther	<i>Th</i> traan	<i>Th</i> trane	<i>Thr-</i> threne	<i>Th</i> taare	<i>Th</i> taor	<i>Th</i> tar
water, foot, nut white, sweet	<i>-T</i> wæter, fot, hnut hwit, swete	<i>T</i> wæter, fot, hnut swiet, hwit	<i>-T</i> wit, zoet	<i>T</i> wæter, foot, nut wit, sot	<i>-Se</i> wæser, fues, nuss wæter, danken	<i>T, D</i> vater, feitur, nod hvid, söd	<i>-T, Th</i> vater, föt, hnyt hvit, sötr	<i>-T, Th</i> vater, föt, hnyt hvit, sötr
wit, seat, salt	<i>T</i> wit, salt	<i>T</i> sedel, salt	<i>T</i> zit, zout	<i>T</i> setel, soit	<i>Th</i> witz, sitz, saliz	<i>T, D</i> vid, sesda, salt	<i>-T, Th</i> sälta, salt	<i>-T, Th</i> set, salt
watch, fetch	<i>Cc</i> wæccn, fæccan theccan	<i>Kk</i> dekken	<i>Kk</i> dekken	<i>K</i> weak	<i>Ch, Ch</i> wacht dach	<i>G, G</i> vagt tag	<i>K, Ch</i> vick tak	<i>K</i> vakt thak
father, thorn chief, thank	<i>Th, d</i> feather, thorn theof, thanclan	<i>D, Th</i> vader, doorn dief, danken	<i>D</i> vader, doorn dief, danken	<i>D</i> vader, doorn deef, danken	<i>D, T</i> vater, dorn dief, danken	<i>T</i> fader, torne tyt, takker	<i>T, D, Dd, Ty</i> fader, törne tuf, tacka	<i>Th, D</i> fader, thorn thief, thacka
month, tooth youth	<i>Th</i> muth, both geouth	<i>Th, Nn, Ch</i> muthe, tanne jeucht	<i>Nd</i> mund, tand jugend	<i>Gd, N</i> mund, tan, jugd	<i>Nd, Hn</i> mund, zah jugend	<i>Nd</i> mund, tand	<i>Nd, N</i> mund, tand	<i>Nnr, nn</i> munur, tönn
throng, thread	<i>Thr</i> thred, thrang	<i>Thr</i> treed	<i>Dr</i> drang, draed	<i>Dr</i> dring, draed	<i>Dhr, Dr</i> drang, dhracht	<i>Th</i> trange, traad	<i>Th</i> tranga, traad	<i>Thy</i> thredr, thrang
settle	<i>Tel</i> setel	<i>Tel, Del</i> sedel	<i>Tel</i> zetel	<i>Tel</i> setel	<i>Tel, Del</i> stedel			
two	<i>Tw, Thw</i> twig, twa thweor	<i>Tw</i> twijig, twee thwers	<i>Tw</i> twijig, twee dwaer	<i>Dw</i> twieg, twene dwar	<i>Zw</i> zwelg, zwel zwerch	<i>Th</i> tve twer	<i>Th, Sw</i> svag, två tvärs	<i>Th, Sw</i> svig, tvæl tvärs
sun	<i>U</i> sunna	<i>U</i> sun	<i>O</i> zon	<i>U</i> sunne	<i>O</i> sonne	<i>O</i> sol	<i>Y</i> sol	<i>U</i> sunna

English.	Anglo-Saxon.	Frisian.	Flemish.	Low Dutch.	High Dutch.	Danish.	Swedish.	Finnish.
<i>W</i> dove, love, grave oven, evil, devil navel, knave	<i>F, V</i> dufa, lufu, graf ofena, yfela, deofol evel nawela, cnawa	<i>U, F</i> lifaaf, graf lifaaf, evel nawela	<i>F, Tv</i> duif, lieve, graef oven, euvet duivel, navel	<i>V, F</i> leere, graf oven, euvet, duvel navel, knaap	<i>B, F</i> taub, liebe, grab nabel, knabe	<i>Fv, V</i> grab due, graf teufel orn, diavel navle	<i>Fv</i> dufva, graf nagen, dief-vul nabe	<i>F</i> dufa, good oh nabe
<i>W</i> wood	<i>W</i> weod		<i>H</i> hout	<i>W</i> woden	<i>H</i> hols	<i>V</i> ved	<i>W</i> wed	
<i>W-</i> word, worry	<i>W-</i> word, worian	<i>W-</i> wara	<i>W-</i> word	<i>W-</i> woord	<i>W-</i> wort	<i>Mude</i> ord	<i>Mude</i> ord, oro	<i>Mude</i> ord
<i>Wool, week</i> worm	<i>Wul, wucos</i> wyrn	<i>Wille</i> wille	<i>Wol, weak</i> worm	<i>Wul, wake</i> worm	<i>Wolle, woch</i> wurm	<i>uld, ugen</i> orm	<i>ull</i> orm	<i>orms</i> orms
<i>W-</i> watch	<i>W-</i> wæcca	<i>W-</i> wæcca	<i>W</i> worn	<i>W</i> waak	<i>W</i> wacht	<i>V</i> vagt	<i>V</i> vækt	<i>V</i> vaki
<i>-W</i> bow, marrow	<i>-G, H</i> boga, mearh	<i>G, Ch</i> merch	<i>-G</i> loog, mern	<i>G, K</i> bagen, murek	<i>-G, K</i> bogen, mark	<i>-G, V</i> marv	<i>-G</i> bogs, mærg	<i>-G, Gr, Ggr</i> bogr, mærg
<i>Wh</i> white, whale	<i>Hw</i> hwite, hwæl	<i>Hw</i> hwit	<i>W</i> wit, wal	<i>W</i> wit, wal	<i>W</i> wies, wall	<i>Hv, H</i> hvid, hval	<i>Hv, Hj</i> hvit, hval	<i>Hv</i> hvite, hval
<i>Wheel</i>	<i>hwæl</i>		<i>wial</i>			<i>hwæl</i>		
<i>-X</i> fox, ox, flax	<i>-X</i> fox, oxa, fleax	<i>-X</i> oxa, flax	<i>-S, SS</i> voss, os, vlass	<i>-Ss</i> voss, osse, flass	<i>-Chs</i> fuch, ochs, flechs	<i>-X</i> oxe, vox	<i>-Xs</i> oxe	<i>-X</i> oxe
<i>Y-</i> yellow	<i>Ge</i> gear, gealew	<i>J, G</i> jer	<i>J, G</i> jaar, geel	<i>J</i> jaar, geel	<i>J, G</i> jahr, gelb	<i>Mude, J</i> aar, gaul	<i>Mude &amp; G, J</i> år, gull	<i>Mude, J</i> ar
<i>Y-</i> young	<i>geose, goong</i>	<i>ja, jong</i>	<i>ja, jong</i>	<i>ja, junk</i>	<i>ja, jung</i>	<i>ja, ung</i>	<i>ja, ung</i>	<i>ja, ung</i>
<i>Y-</i> yarn	<i>geoc</i>	<i>jok</i>	<i>juk</i>	<i>jok</i>	<i>joch</i>		<i>ok</i>	<i>ok</i>
<i>Y-</i> yarn	<i>G, Eo</i> deg, menlig, eow del	<i>G</i> deg, menlig, eow del	<i>G</i> dag, menlig, eow del	<i>G</i> dag, menlig, eow del	<i>G, Ch</i> tag, menig, eow del	<i>G, J</i> dag, menig, eow del	<i>G, J</i> dag, menig, eow del	<i>Gr</i> dag, menig, eow del
<i>Y-</i> yarn	<i>S</i> beal, eage	<i>S</i> beal, eage	<i>Z</i> hazel	<i>Ss</i> beal, eage	<i>S</i> beal, eage	<i>Ss</i> beal, eage	<i>Ss</i> beal, eage	<i>S</i> beal, eage
<i>Y-</i> yarn	<i>S</i> beal, eage	<i>S</i> beal, eage	<i>Z</i> hazel	<i>Ss</i> beal, eage	<i>S</i> beal, eage	<i>Ss</i> beal, eage	<i>Ss</i> beal, eage	<i>S</i> beal, eage
<i>Y-</i> yarn	<i>S</i> beal, eage	<i>S</i> beal, eage	<i>Z</i> hazel	<i>Ss</i> beal, eage	<i>S</i> beal, eage	<i>Ss</i> beal, eage	<i>Ss</i> beal, eage	<i>S</i> beal, eage

English.	Anglo-Saxon.	Frisian.	Flemish.	Low Dutch.	High Dutch.	Danish.	Swedish.	Icelandic.
St stool	<i>S</i> stol	<i>S</i> stol	<i>S</i> stoel	<i>S</i> stool	<i>S</i> stuhl	<i>S</i> stol	<i>S</i> stol	<i>S</i> stoll
Sw swine, sweet	<i>Sw</i> swin, swete	<i>Sw</i> swiet	<i>Sw, Zo</i> zwijn, zoet	<i>Sw, S</i> swien, sot	<i>Schw, Su</i> schwein, suss	<i>Sw, S</i> svin, sött	<i>Sw, So</i> svin, sött	<i>Sw</i> svin
T. too, ten, tide tooth	<i>T.</i> ta, tyn, tid toth	<i>T.</i> tane, tian, tid tanne	<i>T.</i> tee, tien, tijd tand	<i>T</i> taan, tien, tid tan	<i>Z.</i> zehe, zehen, zeit zahn	<i>T.</i> tä, tin, tid tand	<i>T.</i> tä, tin, tid tönn	<i>T.</i> ta, tin, tid tönn
tear	<i>Th</i> ther	<i>Th</i> traan	<i>Th</i> traan	<i>Th</i> traan	<i>Thr</i> threne	<i>Th</i> taare	<i>Th</i> taor	<i>Th</i> tar
-T water, foot, nut white, sweet	<i>-T</i> weter, fot, hnut hwit, swete	<i>T</i> weter, fot, nuwt swiet, hwit	<i>-T</i> water, voet, noot wit, zoet	<i>T</i> water, foot, nut wit, sot	<i>-S</i> wasser, fuss, nuss weise, suss	<i>T, D</i> vater, föstur, nod hvít, sött	<i>-T, Th</i> vater, fötur, nót hvít, sött	<i>-T, Th</i> vater, fötur, hnytt hvít, sött
-T wit, seat, salt	<i>T</i> wit, salt	<i>T</i> sedel, salt	<i>T</i> zit, zout	<i>T</i> setel, soit	<i>Th</i> wítz, sitz, saltz	<i>T, D</i> vát, söda, salt	<i>-T, Th</i> vát, söda, salt	<i>-T, Th</i> vát, söda, salt
Toh watch, fetch thatch	<i>Cc</i> waccu, feccan theccan	<i>K</i> dekken	<i>Kt</i> dekken	<i>K</i> waak dak	<i>Ch, Ch</i> wacht dach	<i>Gt, G</i> vagt tag	<i>K, Kt</i> vick tak	<i>K</i> vakt thak
Th father, thorn thief, thank	<i>Th, d</i> fæder, thorn theof, thancan	<i>D, Th</i> vader, doorn dief, danken	<i>D</i> vader, doorn dief, danken	<i>D</i> vader, doorn deef, danken	<i>D, T</i> vater, dorn dieb, danken	<i>T</i> fader, torne tyt, takker	<i>T, D, Dd, Tj</i> fader, törne tjuf, tacka	<i>Th, D</i> fader, thorn thief, thacka
Th <i>feed</i> mouth, tooth youth	<i>Th</i> muth, toth geogruh	<i>Th, Nn, Ch</i> mutha, kenne jeucht	<i>Nd</i> mund, tand jugend	<i>Gd, N</i> mund, tan, jugd	<i>Nd, Hn</i> mund, zahu jugend	<i>Nd</i> mund, tand	<i>Nd, N</i> mund, tand	<i>Nnar, nn</i> munur, thann
Thr throng, thread	<i>Thr</i> thred, thrang	<i>Thr</i> treed	<i>Dr</i> drang, draad	<i>Dr</i> dring, draad	<i>Dhr, Dr</i> drang, draht	<i>Th</i> trange, traad	<i>Th</i> tranga, troad	<i>Thp</i> threadr, threang
Tle settle	<i>Td</i> setel	<i>Td, Del</i> sedel	<i>Td</i> setel	<i>Td</i> setel	<i>Td, Del</i> sedel	<i>Th</i> tro	<i>Th, Sv</i> svag, tvit	<i>Th, Ths, Sv</i> svigt, tvoder
Tw, Thw twig, two stewart	<i>Tw, Thw</i> twig, twa thweor	<i>Tw</i> twiſc, twee dwars	<i>Dw</i> twieg, tweene dwar	<i>Dw</i> twieg, tweene dwar	<i>Zw</i> zweig, zwel sworch	<i>Th</i> tro	<i>Th, Sv</i> svag, tvit	<i>Th, Ths, Sv</i> svigt, tvoder
U sun	<i>U</i> sunna	<i>U</i> sun	<i>O</i> zon	<i>U</i> sunne	<i>O</i> sonne	<i>O</i> sol	<i>Y</i> sol	<i>U</i> sunna

English.	Anglo-Saxon.	Frisian.	Flemish.	Low Dutch.	High Dutch.	Danish.	Swedish.	Icelandic.
V dove, love, grave oven, evil, devil nave, knave	P, V dufa, lufu, graf ofen, yfel, deofol nave, knave	U, F dofe, graf ofen, yfel, deofol nave	P, Ty duif, lieve, graf oven, envel duivel, navel	V, F leeve, graf uven, ouvel, duvel nave, knaap	B, F tanb, liebe, grab nabel, knabe	Fo, V due, graf ofen, yfel, deofol nave	Fo dufa, graf ugen, dietful naffe	F dufa, groof ofn naffe
W wood	W weod	W woud	H hout	W woden	H holz	V ved	W wed	
W- wood, worry	W- word, wearian	W- word	W- word	W- word	W- wort	Mute ord	Mute ord, oro	Mute ord
W- word, weak	W- wul, wuce	W- wul, weak	W- wul, weak	W- wul, weak	W- wulle, woch	ord, ugen	ord, ugen	ord, ugen
W- word, weak	W- wyrin	W- worn	W- worn	W- worn	W- wurin	orn	orn	orn
W- watch	W- weoca	W- weoc	W- weoc	W- weoc	W- wacht	vagt	väkt	vaki
-W bow, marrow	-G, H boga, meath	G, Ch merch	-G loog, merg	G, K bagen, murk	-G, K bogen, mark	-G, V marv	-G bog, merg	-G, Gr, Ggr bogtr, mergtr
Wh white, whale	Hw hwite, hwæl	Hw hwit	W wit, wal	W wit, wal	W welas, wall	Hw, H hvid, hval	Hw, Hj hvit, hval	Hw hvittr, hval
whed	hwed	wied	wied	wied	wied	hwed	hwed	hwed
-X fox, ox, flax	-X fox, oxa, fleax	-X oza, flax	-S, SS voes, os, vlas	-S voes, oese, flase	-Chs fuchs, ochs, flachs	-X oxe, vox	-Xe oxe, vase	-X oxe, vase
Y-initial year, yellow	Ge gear, gealew	J, G jaar, geel	J, G jaar, geel	J jaar, geel	J, G jahr, gelb	Mute, J aar, guul	Mute de G, J är, gull	Mute, J ar
Y-initial year, young	ge, geong	ja, jong	ja, jong	ja, junk	ja, jung	ja, ung	ja, ung	ja, ungr
Y-initial year, young	geoc	jok	jok	jok	joch		ok	ok
-Y-initial and final day, many, you	G, Eo dag, menig, cow del	G dag, menig, gy	G dag, menig, gy	G dag, menig	G, Ch tag, mengs, each	G, J dag, mange	G, J dag, mange	Gr dagtr, manning
Y-initial year, way, yarn	we, gearn	we, gearn	we, gearn	we, gearn	weg, garn	vel, garn	vel, garn	nd, vagur
Y-initial year, eye	beag, eage	beag, eage	beag, eage	beag, eage	beag, eage	beag, oje	beag, oje	auge
Y-initial year, eye	S hasel	Z hasel	Z hasel	S hasel	S hasel	S hasel	S hasel	S hasel

TABLE OF THE CHANGES OF LETTERS FROM A WORD OF LATIN ROOT INTO ITALIAN, SPANISH, PORTUGUESE, AND FRENCH.

<i>Latin.</i>	<i>Italian.</i>	<i>Spanish.</i>	<i>Portuguese.</i>	<i>French.</i>
<b>Au</b> causa, cauda auricula	<b>O</b> cosa, coda orecchio	<b>O</b> cosa, cola oreja	<b>O</b> cosa	<b>O</b> chose oreille
<b>B</b> habere mirabile	<b>V</b> avvere maraviglia	<b>V</b> maravilla	<b>B</b> haver	<b>V</b> avoir merveille
<b>Bl</b>  C	<b>Bi</b> bianco C	<b>Bl</b>  G	<b>Br</b> branco G	<b>Bl</b> blanc <i>Mute</i>
dico, locus amicus, macer acer, vesica	loco amico vessica	digo, lugar amigo, magro bexiga	digo, lugar amigo bexiga	dis, lieu ami, maigre aigre, vessie
<b>C</b> causa, carus	<b>C</b> cosa, caro	<b>Qu</b> querido		<b>Ch</b> chose, cher
<i>C between two vowels</i>		<i>Mute</i>	<i>Mute</i>	<i>Mute</i>
oculus, focus	occhio	ojo	olho	œil, seu
facere, placere			<b>Z</b> fazer, plazer	faire, plaier
vicinus, vices	vicino	<b>Z</b> vezino, vezes		<b>S</b> voisin
<b>Ch</b> chirurgicus		<b>C</b> cirujano		<b>Ch</b> chirurgien
stomachus lachryma	<b>C, G</b> stomaco lagrima	<b>G</b> estomago lagryma	<b>G</b> estomago lagryma	<b>C</b> estomac
hierarchia		<b>Qu</b> gerarquia		
<b>Cl</b> clavis, clamare	<b>Chi</b> chiave, chiamare	<b>Ll</b> llave, llamar	<b>Ch</b> chave, chamar	<b>Cl</b> clef
ecclesia, ecloga	chiesa	<b>Gh</b> iglesia, egloga	<b>Gr</b> igreja	<b>Gh</b> église
clavis			<b>Cr</b> crave	
<b>Cr</b>		<b>Gr</b>		<b>Cr</b> crier
<b>Ct</b> factus, doctus noctes, pectus octo, strictus	<b>tt</b> fatto, dotto notte, petto otto	<b>Ch</b> hecho noches, pecho ocho, estrecho	<b>T</b> feito, douto noites, peito oitto	<b>It</b> fait nuits, poitrine huit, étroit
<b>D</b> odor, cauda judicare	<b>D</b> odore, coda giudicare	<b>L</b> olor, cola	<b>L</b> julgar	<b>D</b> odeur
judex, radix audire, laudabilis	giudice, radice	<i>Mute</i> juiz, raiz oir, loable	<i>Mute</i> juex	<i>Mute</i> juge ouir, louable
judicare	giudicare	<b>Z</b> juzgar		juger
<b>E</b> ventus, centum	<b>E</b> vento, cento	<b>Io</b> viento, ciento		<b>E</b> vent, cent
		<b>Ye</b> regus		

<i>Latin.</i>	<i>Italian.</i>	<i>Spanish.</i>	<i>Portuguese.</i>	<i>French.</i>
<b>F</b> filius, facere fendere	<b>F</b> figlio, facere	<b>H</b> hijo, hacer hender	<b>F</b> filho, fazer	<b>F</b> fils, faire fendre
<b>Fl</b> flamma	<b>Fi</b> flamma	<b>Ll</b> llamado	<b>Fl</b>  Lh	<b>Fl</b> flamme
<b>G</b> chirurgicus		<b>J</b> cirujano		<b>G</b> chirurgien
gelare, germanus		<b>H</b> helar, herman	<i>Mute</i> irmão	
gelo		<b>Y</b> yelo		gèle
<b>Gl</b> glandus	<b>Gh</b> ghlando		<b>Gr</b>	<b>G</b> gland
<b>Gn</b> lignum	<b>Gn</b> ligno	<b>Ñ</b> leño	<b>Nh</b>	<b>Gn</b>
regnum	regno	<b>Yn</b> reyno	reinho	règne
<b>H</b> hierarchia		<b>G</b> gerarquia		<b>H</b> hierarchie
homo	<i>Mute</i> uomo			homme
hedra, herba	erba	<b>Y</b> yedra, yerba		herbe
<b>J</b> juvenis	<b>Gi</b> giovanne	<b>J</b> joven		
majestas	<i>Mute</i> maesta	<b>G</b> magestad		majesté
jugulare, major jacens	<b>Ggi</b> maggiore	<b>Y</b> yugular, mayor yacente		<b>G</b> gisant
<b>L between two vowels</b> }	<b>Gl</b>	<b>J</b>	<b>Lh</b>	<b>Il</b>
filius, allium	figlio, aglio	nijo, ajo, aguja	filho, alho, agulha	fils, ail, aiguille
humiliare	umigliare	<b>Ll</b> humillar	<b>Lh</b> humilhar	<b>L</b> humilier
mulier, alienus	mogliere	<b>G</b> muger, ageno	molher	
aquila	aquila	agulla	<b>I</b> agula	aigle
nobilis, cigala	cicala	<b>R</b> cigarra	<b>R</b> nobre	noble, cigale
<b>Lt</b> multus, cultellum auscultare	<b>Lt</b> molto, coltello	<b>Ch</b> mucho, cuchillo escuchar	<b>It</b> muito	<b>Ut</b> couteau écouter
<b>L before a consonant</b> }				<b>U</b>
palpebra cultellum	palpebra	palpebra		paupière, couteau
<b>M</b> homo, nomen femina	<b>M</b> uomo, nome	<b>Mbr</b> hombre, nombre hembra	<b>M</b> homen	<b>Mm</b> homme femme
comulare numerus		<b>Mb-</b> comblar	<b>Mb-</b> comblar nombre	<b>Mb-</b> comblar nombre

<i>Latin.</i>	<i>Italian.</i>	<i>Spanish.</i>	<i>Portuguese.</i>	<i>French.</i>
Mm lemma		Mn, Nm lemma, immense		Mm lemme, immense
Mph lymphæ, nymphæ	Nf	Nf linfa, ninfa		
N bonus, unus, bene	N buono, uno	N bueno, uno	M bom, hum, bem	bon, un, bien
-N- panis, manus plenus	pane, mano pieno	pan, mano lleno	Ao, Io pão, mão cheio	In pain, main plein
venenum	L veleno	veneno		
Ng pingere, fingere jungere				Nd peindre, ceindre joindre
O bonus, novus solus, populus	Uo buono, nuovo	Ue bueno, nuevo suelo, pueblo	O bom, novo povo	Eu neuf, seul peuple
locus		U lugar	U lugar	Ieu lieu
ovum, os, ostræa oleum	osso oglio	Hue huevo, hueso		Hui huitre huile
OE caelum	E	Ie cielo		Ie ciel
P lupus, opus	P opera	B lobo, obra	B lobo	P loup
recipere, sapere apertus	V ricevere	recebir, saber abierto	receber, saber	V recevoir, œuvre savoir, ouvert
sapor, populus		V savor	povo	savoir
Pl plenus, plumbum	Pi pieno, plombo	Ll lleno, llomo	Ch chelo, chumbo	Pl plein, plomb
Ph phalanx	F falange	plata F falange	Pr prata	Ph phalange
Q quis, qualitas	Ch che	C calidad	Q quem, qualidad	Q qui, qualité
laqueus		Z lazo		
aqua, sequere	Cq acqua	G agua, siguiir	G agua	Mute eau
aquila		agulla	agua	G aigle
sequere				V suivre
R periculum cerebrum peregrinus marmor papyrus diucertias, practica sacer	L pellegrino	L peligro celebro marmo papel platica carcel	L	L pélerin

<i>Latia.</i>	<i>Italian.</i>	<i>Spanish.</i>	<i>Portuguese.</i>	<i>French.</i>
S	S	Es	Es	E
scribere, status	scrivere	escribir, estado	escrever	écrire, état
Sc	Sc	Eso	Eso	Ec
scutum, scribere	scudo, scrivere	escudo, escribir		écu, écrire
Sp				Esp
sperare				espérer
Ss	Ss	X	X	Ss
vessica	vessica	bexiga	bexiga	vessie
St	St	Est	Est	T, Et
bestia, status	stato	estado	estado	bête, état
T	D	D	D	T
mutus		mudo	mudo	muet
			<i>Mute</i>	<i>Mute</i>
pater, mater	padre, madre	padre	pai, mal	père, mère
frater				frère
T between two vowels	Z	C	C	C
sacerdotium	sacerdozio	sacerdocio	sacerdocio	sacerdoce
			C	
portio	porzione	porcion	porção	portion
			Z	
ratio	razione	racion	razão	raison
U		O	O	
lucrum, aqua		logro	agoo	
	V			F
viduus	viuvo			veuf
			Hu	
unus			hum	un
V	V	B	B	V
vessica, viduus	vessica	bexiga, bludo	bexiga	vessie, veuf
				F
vices, novus		vezes, novo		fois, neuf
X	Ce	Z	Z	X
lux, pax, crux	luce, pace, cruce	luz, paz, cruz	luz, paz, cruz	paix, croix
	Ss	Ch		
maximus	massimo			
exercitatus	esercitato			
	Ge	Ge		Ge
phalanx	falange	falange		phalange

## CHANGES OF ITALIAN IRREGULAR LETTERS INTO LATIN, FRENCH, SPANISH, AND PORTUGUESE.

<i>Ital.</i>	<i>Latin.</i>	<i>Fr.</i>	<i>Span.</i>	<i>Port.</i>	<i>Ital.</i>	<i>Latin.</i>	<i>Fr.</i>	<i>Span.</i>	<i>Port.</i>
Bl	Bl	Bl	Bl	Br	Gl	L	J		Lh
Ce	X	—	Z	Z	L	R	Lr	L, R	L, R
Ch	C, Qu	Qu	C	C, Qu	Nf	Mph	Mph	Nf	—
Chi	Cl	Cl	Li	Ch	O	Au, U, Ho	Au	—	Ch
Qi	Q	—	G	G	Pi	Pi	Pi	Li	X
D	T	T	D	D	Ss, S	X	X	ch	u
F	Ph	Ph	F	Ph	Ti	ct	u	ch	u
Fi	Fi	Fi	Li	Fi	Uo	O, Ho	Ho	Va, Hue	O
Ge	X	Ge	Ge	—	V	P	V	B	B
Ght	Gt	Gl	Gl	Gl, Gr		B	—	V	B
Gl	J	J	J	J	Z	T	C, T	O	C, C, Z



## CHANGES OF SPANISH IRREGULAR LETTERS INTO LATIN, FRENCH, PORTUGUESE, AND ITALIAN.

Span.	Latin.	Fr.	Port.	Italian.	Span.	Latin.	Fr.	Port.	Italian.
B	P	P	B	V	Fl	Fl	Fl	Fl	Fi
C	T, Qu, Ch	T, Qu, Ch	Qu	Ch	Pl	Pl	Ch	Pl	Pi
Ch	ct, X, u	it	it	tt, oe	Mbr	M	Mm	M	M
D	T	T	T	D	Mn	Mm	Mm	Mm	Mm
Es	S	E, E	Es	S	N, yn	Gn	Gn	Nh	Gn
F	Ph	Ph	Ph	F	Nf	Mph	Mph	—	Nf
G	C, L, H, Ch, C, Q	G, Lh, H, C, Gl, H	G	Lh, H, C, Gl, H	Nm	Mm	Mm	Mm	Mm
Gl	J, Qu	—	G	cg	O	Au	O	O	O
Gr	Cl	Cl, Gl	Gr	Gh	Q	C	Ch	Q	C
H	F, G	F, G	F	F	R	L	L	R	L
Hue	O	O	O	O	U, Ue	O	O	O	Uo, U
Ie	OE, E	E	E	E	V	B, P	B	Y	B
J	L, Ch, G	L	Lh	Gl, Ch, C	X	Ss	—	Ss	—
L	D, R	D, L	D, L	D, L	Y	G, J	G, J	—	Gi
Ll	Ci	Ci	Ch	Chi	Ye	H, E	H	H	E
					Z	X, Qu, C, D	X, S	Z	Ce

## CHANGES OF PORTUGUESE IRREGULAR LETTERS INTO LATIN, FRENCH, SPANISH, AND ITALIAN.

Port.	Latin.	Fr.	Span.	Ital.	Port.	Latin.	Fr.	Span.	Ital.
A	N	N	N	N	L	R, D	L	R, D	R, D
B	V	V	B	V	Lh	L	L	J	Gl
Br	Bl	Bl	Bl	Bi	Nh	Gn	Gn	N	Gn
Ch	Cl	Cl	Ll	Chi	O	U, Au	U, Au	O	O
Cr	Cl	Cl	Ll	Chi	Pr	Pl	Pl	Ll	Pi
D	T	T	D	T	R	L	L	R, L	I
Es	S	E, E	Es	S	T	X, ct	it	Ch	Ce, it
G	Q, Ch	C	C	Cq	U	O	—	O	—
Gr	Cl, Gl	Cl, Gl	Ll	Ghi	X	Ss	—	X	S
Hu	Cr	Cr	Cr	Gr	Z	C	C	C	C
	U	U	Ou	U		X	X	Z	Ce

## CHANGES OF TERMINATIONS OF NOUNS.

Latin.	English.	French.	Italian.	Spanish.	Portuguese.
Prud-entia	Prud-ence }	-ence	-enza	-encia	-encia
Clem-entia	Clem-ency }				
Liber-tas	Liber-ty	-té	-tà	{ -tad } { -dad }	-dade
Geolog-ia	Geolog-y	-le	-la	-ia	-ia
Colleg-ia	Colleg-e	-e	-ia	-ia	-ia
Val-or	Val-our	-eur	-ore	-or	-or
Un-lo	Un-lon	-lon	-lone	-lon	-lão
Admira-tio	Admira-tion	-tion	-zione	-cion	-ção
Forti-tudo	Fortitu-de	-tude	-tudine	-dumbre	-dão
Dur-itia	Dur-ess	-esse	-ezza	-eza	
Vir-tus	Vir-tue	-tu	-tu	-tud	-tud
Cor-pus	Cor-ps	-ps	-po	-po	-po
Dat-um	Dat-e	-e	-o	-o	-o
Ima-go	Ima-ge }	-ge	-gine	-gen	-gem
Mar-go	Mar-gin }	-age	-aggio	-aje	-agem
Orna-mentum	Orna-ment	-ment	-mente	-miento	-mento
Glo-ria	Glo-ry	-ire	-ria	-ria	-ria
Mus-ica	Mus-ic	-ique	-ica	-ica	-ica

## CHANGES OF TERMINATIONS OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

Admira-bilis	Admira-ble	-ble	-bile	-bel	-vel
Vigila-ns	Vigila-nt				
Prude-ns	Prude-nt	-nt	-nte	-nte	-nte
Rigor-osus	Rigor-ous	-eux	-oso	-oso	-oso
Simi-laris	Simi-lar	-lier	-laro	-lar	-lar

<i>Latin.</i>	<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Italian.</i>	<i>Spanish.</i>	<i>Portuguese.</i>
Sincer-us	Sincer-e	-e	-o	-o	-o
Nati-vus	Nati-ve	-f	-vo	-vo	-vo
Sacerdota-lis	Radical-ly	-ment	-mente	-mente	-mente
Academi-cus	Sacerdota-l	-l	-le	-l	-l
	Academi-c	-que	-co	-co	-co

## CHANGES OF TERMINATIONS OF VERBS.

Condu-cere	Condu-ce	-ire	-cere	-izer	-izer
------------	----------	------	-------	-------	-------

## CHANGES OF FRENCH WORDS INTO ENGLISH.

<i>French.</i>	<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>English.</i>
<i>A prefix</i>	<i>Ad</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>I, Ie</i>
avancer, avocat	advance, advocate	chef, achever, encrer	chief, achieve, ink
	<i>En</i>	<i>E prefix</i>	<i>En</i>
attrapper, affaiblir	entrap, enfeeble	ëic	enlarge
<i>A</i>	<i>Au</i>	<i>E</i>	<i>At, Ot</i>
vanter, chanter	vaunt, chaunt	père, mère	father, mother
tante	aunt	frère	brother
<i>A</i>	<i>As</i>	<i>E prefix</i>	<i>Mute</i>
mât, pâte, pâté	mast, paste, pasty	épingle, épreuve, étain	pin, proof, tin
plâtre, hâter	plaster, hasten	<i>E final</i>	<i>Y</i>
<i>Ant final</i>	<i>-Ing</i>	liberté, gaieté	liberty, gaiety
dégoûtant	disgusting	<i>E, E</i>	<i>S</i>
<i>Ai</i>	<i>Ea, Be</i>	épargner, épeler	spare, spell
aise, plaisir, paix	ease, please, peace	épouse, étoile, fête	spouse, star, feast
paix, clair, maigre	peer, clear, meagre	bête	beast
faible	feeble	<i>Eau</i>	<i>El, Eal</i>
<i>Au, Ou</i>	<i>Aul, El, Al, Ol</i>	pincean, ciseau, veau	pencil, chisel, veal
faute, faux, veau	fault, false, veal	vaisseau	vessel
ciseau, saumon	chisel, salmon	<i>Ec, Ech</i>	<i>Eac, Sc</i>
échafaud	scaffold	échapper, échelle	escape, scale
<i>B</i>	<i>P</i>	échafaud	scaffold
abricot	apricot	<i>Eg</i>	<i>Sc</i>
<i>C</i>	<i>Ch</i>	égratigner	scratch
cerise, ciseau	cherry, chisel	<i>-Elle final</i>	<i>-Le</i>
	<i>G</i>	bouteille, chandelle	bottle, candle
	<i>C, K, Ck</i>	<i>En prefix</i>	<i>Be, En, In</i>
	<i>S, C soft</i>		
	<i>Sh</i>	Entre	<i>Enter, Inter</i>
	<i>Cl</i>	entretenir	entertain
	<i>Tch</i>	entremédiaire	intermediary
	<i>S, Sh</i>	<i>Ep</i>	<i>Sp</i>
	<i>T</i>	éperon	spur
	<i>-St</i>	<i>-Er final</i>	<i>Mute</i>
	<i>nest</i>	vanter, hanter	vaunt, haunt
		<i>Et</i>	<i>Est, St</i>
		état, étroit	state, estate, strait
		<i>Ev</i>	<i>Sw</i>
		évanouir	swoon
		<i>Eu</i>	<i>Ou</i>
		heure, fleur	hour, flower, flour
		<i>F</i>	<i>Ph</i>
		faisan, chiffre	pheasant, cipher

French.	English.	French.	English.
G, Gu, <i>prefix</i>	W	Oi	<i>Ai, Ey, Ea</i>
gâter, guichet, guerre	waste, wicket, war	proie, étroit, poire	prey, straight, pear
guêpe	wasp	voile	veil
G	Dg	Ou	<i>Ul, Ool</i>
abrégé	abridge	coupable, voute, fou	culpable, vault, fool
Ger, Gir	Ct	Où	<i>Us</i>
affliger, négliger	afflict, neglect	moutarde, coutume	mustard, custom
exiger, agir	exact, act	P	<i>F</i>
Hui	<i>Oi, Oy</i>	père, pied, poisson	father, foot, fish
huile, huitre	oil, oyster	Qu	<i>Ck, C, Ch</i>
I	<i>Oi</i>	craquer, coq, époque	crack, cock, epoch
vide	vold	-Re <i>final</i>	-Er
i	A	ordre, lettre, tendre	order, letter, tender
maitre	master	encre, prêtre, battre	<i>Mute</i>
In	Un	ink, priest, beat	
ingrat	ungrateful	S	<i>R</i>
-Ir <i>final</i>	-Ish	chaise	chair
bannir, finir	vanish, finish	Sou-	<i>Sub-</i>
-Ire <i>final</i>	-Ce, -Se	soumettre	submit
produire, plaîre	produce, please	Ss	<i>Sh</i>
It <i>final</i>	-Ct, Ght	buisson, pousser	bush, push
fait, nuit, huit	fact, night, eight	T	<i>Ct, Ght</i>
it	St	produit, ceinture	product, cincture
maitre, huitre	master, oyster	nuit, huit	night, eight
paitre	pasture	T	<i>Th</i>
J	<i>Ch</i>	trente, trois	thirty, three
jouer	checks	U	<i>Us</i>
J	G	croûte	crust
jardin	garden	Ue	<i>Ut, T</i>
Joug, jeune, jaune	Y	attribuer, nouer	attribute, knot
L	R	V	<i>B</i>
matelas, étoile	mattress, star	Février	February
Mb	<i>M between two</i>	Avril, cuivre	<i>P</i>
combler	<i>vowels</i>	April, copper	<i>W</i>
nombreaux	accumulate	vin, ver, vent	wine, worm, wind
Mp	<i>M</i>	vingt, neuve, volonté	twenty, new, will
temps	times	pouvoir	power
Mpt	<i>Nt</i>	-X	<i>-Ce, Ch, Ss</i>
compter	count	prix, paix, voix	price, peace, voice
Nt	<i>Nd, Th</i>	croix, poix	cross, pitch
vent	wind	capricieux, vicieux	<i>-ous</i>
O	<i>Ea</i>	capricious, vicious	<i>S</i>
oreille	ear	gout, gâter, croûte	gust, waste, crust
annoncer	<i>Ou</i>	Août, coûte, maitre	August, cost, master
coche, approcher	<i>Oa</i>	<i>Mute</i>	<i>S</i>
	coach, approach	neige	snow
		<i>Mute, before a</i>	<i>H</i>
		vowel	have
		avoir	

The groundwork of the English tongue is the Old English, sometimes called Anglo-Saxon. It includes many names substantive common to the Indo-European tongues; but the verbs are worked out on a distinct plan, peculiar to the English tongue.

The Indo-European words are the names of several remarkable objects, as the sun, moon, star; of the limbs of the body, mouth, eye, chin, tooth, heart, hair, nose, hand; of kindred, as mother, father, son; of numbers; and of animals.

Although the substantives in the several tongues are much alike, with a few only of the letters changed; yet, in the verbs, and the words made from them, there is little likeness, inasmuch as the consonants and vowels have not the same power. Thus the Latin, being a mixed tongue, uses, for the English *w*, several letters.

English.	Latin.	Greek.
W	V	H, K
win, wind, whirl, wench	vincere, ventus, volvo, virgo	hello, kore
	U	
wave, whence	unda, unde	
	P	P
work, wealth, weight, whether	opus, opes, pondus	poteros
	M	
wet, world	madidus, mundus	
	T	T
wear, wall	tero	telchos
T	L	D
tongue, tie, tear	lingua, ligo, lachryma	dakrua
	F	
thief	fur	
	Mb	
both, tide, shadow	ambo, tempus, umbra	
Th	T	S
thou, three	tu, tres	su
H	C	K
hound, head	canes, caput	kuon, kephale
		H
hundred	centum	hekaton
	M	Ch
hand, honey	manus, mel	cheir
N	L	L
many, honey, sun, son	multus, mel, sol, filius	pollos, helios

Many words in English are made by putting *s*, which mostly has the effect of continuing and extending the action, as to *steep* from to dip; *sweat* from to wet; to *shout* from to hoot; *shallow* from hollow; *shaft*, a long handle, from haft; *snout*, a long nose; *steep* from deep; to *starve*, to die lingeringly; to *slacken* from to lag; to *smash* from to mash; *still* from dull; *sheaf* from heap.

NOTE.—We say to *melt* lead for bullets; *melt* silver, *melt* iron but when the process is long, as in the case of the ores of the metals, which are several days in the furnace, we say *smelt*, as to *smelt* lead ore, to smelt silver ore, to smelt iron ore. We speak of the short *haft* of a knife, the long *shaft* of a spear.

In some cases the S seems to be privative, and to give an opposite meaning, as Several from every; Scatter from gather; Stilt from tilt; Spill from fill; Scold from cold; Slip from leap.

(r) rumple from	rumple	G-lose	from	leese, lie	G-rumble from	rumble
(r) rush	rush	G-lue		loam, lime	K-nit	net
(r) oal	holt (wood)	G-ripple		rap	K-nith	slipper
(r) ourse	hoarse	G-rave		rive	Q-nag	wag
(r) oop	hoop	G-ready		ready	Q-nit	wag
(r) ot	hut	G-rim		rough	Q-nake	snake
(r) lad	lithe	G-rind		rub	Q-naver	waver
(r) late	light	G-rub		rub	Q-nay	whay
(r) litter	light	G-ruff		rough		

This compound is likewise found in *Knee, Knuckle*.

*N*, in composition of words, seems to have relation to a bent joint, as in *Neck, Knee, Knuckle, Ankle, Finger, Hand, Loins, Kidney, Kilt, Knot, Net, Wing, Wink, Crinkle, Winkle*.

In the common English names for the parts of the body, the words are formed with *K, L, H, R*, and *T*, principally. With *N* (nasal, referring to a twisted joint), as in *Neck, Knee, Knuckle, Wing, Hand, Loins, Tongue*; *H* (referring to a principal member), as in *Head, Hand, Heart, Hip, Heel*; *T* (pointing to a distinct member), as in *Tooth, Tongue, Toe, Thumb, Heart, Foot, Tear*; *R* (in the middle of the words meaning motion, or the result of motion), as *Wrist, Throat, Arm, Ear, Heart*. *S* is an appended letter, as in *Skin, Skull, Shoulder, Shin*; *M* is found in *Marrow, Milk, Milt, and Mouth*; *B* is found in several words, as *Belly, Breast, Bosom, Beard, Brain, Blood*; *L* is found in several words, either at the beginning or elsewhere, but does not seem to have any special meaning in English.

A fanciful speculator might define *Hand*, a principal member, standing free, and having the power of bending; *Heart*, a principal member, working free or alone, and having a motion; *Tongue*, a single member, having the power of moving; and so throughout the series.

The letters in common natural objects suggest some speculations as to their classification. We have *Sea, Sand; Lea, Land; Hill, Heaven, Sky, Hall; Rain, Bill, Tree, Rock; Ground, Grass*.

S	L	H	G	T, D	R	N	M
Sea	Lea	Sky	Ground	Tree	Rain	Sun	Mother
Sand	Land	Heaven	Grass	Star	Rill	Moon	Mouth
Salt	Light	High	Grow	Thunder	Brook, Creek	Thunder	Man
Sky	Low	Hill	Green	Root	Stream	Snow	Moon
Star		Head		Day	Rock, Crag	Night	
		Hall			Rough		
					Root		
					Frost		
					Rime		

The names of many of the common animals end in English with the sound of *R; G, CK; D, T*; and begin with *D, T; H; B, F, P, M; C, K*. Thus we have *Deer, Hare, Bear; Hog, Dog, Buck; Hound, Hart, Kid*: again, *Deer, Steer; Dog, Stag*; and a series, as *Deer, dog, toad; Hare, hog, hound; Bear, buck*.

Names in *H*, or with the affix *S*,—*Hare, Hog, Sow, Hind, Hart, Hound, Sheep, Horse, Hen*; in *D* or *T*,—*Deer, Steer (Taurus), Dog, Stag, Duck, Drake, Doe, Toad*; in *B*,—*Bear, Boar, Pig, Fox, Buck, Broek, Bug, Frog, Fly, Bull*; in *M*,—*Mare, Midge*; in *C, K*,—*Cow, Cuck, Chick, Colt, Cat, Goat, Kid, Gander, Goose*; and many less common names might be brought forward.

In words from the same root, several shades of meaning are given by shifting the endings or vowels, and likewise by putting other letters before; as in

Blow	{	blur, blurt, blot, splutter
	{	blase, blast, bluster, blight, blind
	{	bloom, blush
Hang, bend, bind		
Break, brush, burst		
Brew, breed, brood, spread		
Clap	{	clash, clatter, clutter
	{	clam, cloom, cleave, clump, clash
	{	clog, clot, cloud, cluster, clay, clutch
Clip	{	cling, club, climb, clamber, clinch
Cleave, clip, cleft		
Coop, keep		
Creep, cringe, crawl, crouch, crook		

Dip	{	dab, dive, steep, dew
	{	dab, daub, dabble, dash
Do, deal, dash		
Drip, drop, droop, dribble, strip		
{	{	drag, draw, dredge, drive, drift, struggle
{	{	drench, drink, drown
Flee	{	flee, flit, flag
	{	flirt, flutter, fleet, flicker, flaunt
Fly	{	flash, flare
Flow	{	flush, flood, float, fleet, flurry
Flap, flop, flounce, flounder		
Fling, flinch		

Flay, flick, flaw, fleer, splay, split	Shear, shave, shred
Fell, fall, fold, foul	Slide, alt, sledge, aling
Gripe, grip, grapple	Slap, slip, elop, stuff, alive, clinch
Grub, grave, grovel	Smite, smack, smart, smash
Gnaw, gnash	Sip, sop, sup
Glare { glitter, glow, glimmer	Split { spirt, spew, spill, spawn
{ glatten, gloom, gloat, glear	{ spot, spatter, sputter
Go, gush	Split, splash, splice, splinter, splutter
Hit, hitch, hurt, shoot	Spray, spread, sprinkle, sparkle
Heave, heap, shove, shift	{ spring, sprawl, sprain
Haul, hale, heel, halt, hold	Squeeze, squash, squeal
Jag, jar	Stay { stop, stem, stand, stopple, staunch, stave
Kill, quell, quail, quench, quash, squeeze,	{ stick
{ squash, squeal	Step, stamp
Knick, knock, knock, snick	Strew, stray, stroll, straggle
Knip, knib, knob, snip	Stride, stretch, strain, straddle
Lay { lie, lag, linger, lean	Streak, strike, stroke, straggle
{ lade, load, lump	Strip, stripe, strap, string
Lap, lick	Sway { sweep, swoop, swamp, swim
Let, lose, loose, leak, leave	{ swing, switch, swag, sag, swerve
Lean, lend, loan	Sweal { swell, swelter, sweat
Lift, lug	{ swig, swill
Leap, lope (elope), slip	Tap, tip, top, topple, stab
Mash, maul, smack, smash	Take, tag, tug, tackle
Mow, mope, mourn	Throw, thrust, thresh, thrustle, strow, stroll,
Meet { mate, match	{ straggle
{ mix, mingle	Throb, thrill
Put { push, punch	Tread, tramp, trample, stride, stretch, strain,
Pull { pluck	{ straddle
Pain, pine, pinch	Twit, twang, twitch, twinge, twinkle
Run, rush, roll, reel, rustle, stroll	Twine, twist, twirl
Rap { ram, scrape	Ware, ward, warn, war, worry
Rip { rive, strip, strap, string	Wear, waste
Rub { grub, scrub	Wave { wag, waggle, waft, sway, swing, swag
Raise, rise, rouse	{ waver, weave, warp, swerve, wash
Set, sit, seat, settle	Wend, wind, wander
Shake, shy, shudder, shirk, skulk, shock,	Weep, whoop
{ shatter	Whip, whap, whiff, sweep
Scour, scrub, scratch, scrawl	Wrack { work
Shoot, shed, shut, shy, shower, sheet	{ wring, wrench, wreak, wrinkle,
Shove, shift, shovel, shuffle	{ wriggle
	{ writhe, wrest, wrestle

A likeness of formation may be seen in the following roots, variously modified by the beginning letter :—

Blow	Flee, fly, flow, flare	Clap	Glare, glow
Blurt	Flirt	Clot	Gloat
Blast	Fleet, flit, float	Clog	
	Flag	Clash, clinch	
Blush	Flash, finch, flinch	Clam, cloom	Gloom
Bloom		Cling	
Bluster	Fling	Clatter, clutter	Glitter
	Flitter, flutter, flicker		

## THE DERIVATION OF WORDS FROM ULTIMATE ROOTS MAY THUS BE SHOWN:—

<del>R</del>	S	T, Th	D	R	L	C, K, G, J	W	B	F, P	N	M
<del>ch-ip</del>	s-up	t-ap	d-ab	r-ap	l-ap	c-ap	wh-ap	—	f-ap	kn-ap	—
<del>wh-ap</del>	st-up	tr-ap	—	str-ap	st-ap	ch-ap	—	—	—	kn-ap	—
—	st-ab	st-op	st-ab	—	—	kn-ap	—	—	—	st-ap	—
<del>h-cep</del>	s-ip	t-ip	d-ip	r-ip	—	k-cep	—	—	f-ip	n-ip	—
<del>wh-ip</del>	st-ip	tr-ip	dr-ip	str-ip	—	st-ip	wh-ip	—	—	n-ip	—
<del>ch-ip</del>	st-ip	str-ip	—	dr-ip	l-cep	gr-ip	sv-cep	—	—	st-ip	—
—	st-ip	—	d-cep	gr-ip	cl-ip	cl-ip	—	—	—	n-cep	—
—	st-cep	—	st-cep	cr-cep	f-ip	ch-ip	—	—	—	st-cep	—
—	sv-cep	—	—	—	—	cr-cep	—	—	—	—	—
<del>thr-ob</del>	s-up	t-oppie	dr-ab	r-ob	—	s-ob	—	—	—	st-ab	—
<del>ch-op</del>	s-ob	thr-ob	—	r-ab	l-op	ch-op	sv-amp	—	—	—	—
<del>h-op</del>	st-ab	st-ab	—	gr-ab	—	gr-ab	—	—	—	—	—
—	scr-ab	—	—	scr-ab	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
—	st-op	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
<del>h-ump</del>	—	—	d-ump	r-ump	l-ump	j-ump	—	b-ump	—	—	m-ump
<del>tr-ump</del>	st-ump	th-ump	st-ump	—	cl-ump	ch-ump	—	—	—	—	—
<del>ch-ump</del>	—	—	—	—	—	cl-ump	—	—	—	—	—
<del>h-able</del>	st-umble	t-umble	—	r-umble	—	j-umble	w-able	b-umble	f-umble	—	m-umble
—	—	st-umble	—	gr-umble	—	gr-umble	w-umble	b-umble	p-umble	—	—
—	—	—	—	cr-umble	—	cr-umble	—	—	—	—	—
<del>h-immer</del>	s-immer	—	d-am	r-am	—	j-am	—	—	—	—	—
<del>st-em</del>	st-em	—	st-em	—	st-am	cr-am	—	—	—	—	—





The English tongue as now spoken is made up of above one hundred thousand words.

First: Old English words, which form the framework of the tongue. To these belong many of the so-called Anglo-Saxon words, and many which, not being found in Anglo-Saxon writings, are thought to be Norse, Dutch, Roman, French, and Italian, but which are of Germanic root and English kind, and were, by the French, Italians, and Spaniards, had from the Franks, Longbeards, and Goths. Some of these words have in later times become mixed with Latin and French forms.

Most of the names of Englishmen and of townships are Old English.

The English verbs are given very fully further on.

To this Old English stock, words, which to some extent form another tongue, have been added.

Second: Some Scandinavian words, Danish, Swedish, or Icelandic, brought in by the Danes and Normans. It must, however, be borne in mind, that some of the so-called Danish words were had, by the later Danes, from the old Danes, who were of Suevian stock, and are therefore to be found in Frisian, Flemish, and Low Dutch. Scandinavian words are spoken north of Trent, and are found in the names of places.

Third: A few words from the Latin; as Chester, Street, and the church words brought in before the Norman time.

Fourth: Many words from the Flemish, Netherlandish, and Low Dutch; the Flemings, but, above all, the Hollanders, having been our masters in many handicrafts. Such are words of husbandry, gardening, handicrafts, and seamanship.

Fifth: A great body of Latin words, in French form, brought in before the time of the Tudors, in the Tudor time, and since.

Sixth: A number of old and new Greek words, which have been brought in mostly within the last hundred years, and of which many new ones are being yearly made by chemists, naturalists, and other men of learning, following the French way. The Spanish, Italians, and Portuguese take the same words; but the High Dutch and other Germanic tongues form words of their own, so that nothing is, in the end, got by us in the endeavour to have one set of words for men of learning of all tongues.

Seventh: Some words of each tongue in the world, as French, Provençal, Spanish, Italian, Portuguese, High Dutch, Persian, Hindostanee, Bengalee, Gipse (cant words), Welsh (mostly names of rivers), Irish, Euskardian (names of rivers), Turkish, Hebrew (mostly names of men and church words), Chaldee, Arabic, Malay, Maori, Hawaiian, and Chinese.

---

# ORTHOËPY AND ORTHOGRAPHY

Teach the right speaking and writing of words.

## SOUNDS AND LETTERS.

In English, the number of sounds used in speaking is greater than that of the letters of the alphabet used in writing; and hence, combinations of the letters of the alphabet have to be made in writing down the spoken language. Of the combinations, too, more than one are used for each sound; whence, some trouble is needful for learners in mastering them.

The sounds in English are as follows :—

## VOWELS AND DOUBLE VOWELS.

Sound.		Letters used in writing.	Sound.		Letters used in writing.
a short	in <i>fat</i>	a, ai	o short	in <i>not, rob</i>	o
ar	in <i>father, far</i>	a, au, e	oe, oh, or		
ay or ê	in <i>fate</i>	a, ai, ay, ey, ê	ô	in <i>no, note</i>	o, oa, oe, oo, ou, ow, ô, oh, au, eau
or or aw	in <i>all, fall</i>	a, au, aw, o, oa, oa	oy	in <i>boy, boil</i>	oi, oy
e quick	in <i>open, simple</i>	e	oo	in <i>move, smooth</i>	o, oo, ui
e short	in <i>met, bed</i>	e, ea, a	oo short	in <i>foot, good</i>	oo, u, on, o
ee	in <i>me, bee</i>	e, ee, ea, ei, ie, i	ow	in <i>house, bow</i>	ow, ou
i short	in <i>pin</i>	i, ei, ey, ui, y	u short	in <i>tub, but</i>	u, o, i, oo, ou
i	in <i>mine, my</i>	i, ie, ey, y, ui, uy, ye	u	in <i>tube, mew</i>	u, ue, ew, lew, eu

## CONSONANTS.

b	in <i>by, babe, bib</i>	b	in <i>roll, roller</i>	r	
c or k	in <i>cow, oak, lock</i>	c, k, q, ck, ch	r soft	in <i>painter, singer</i>	r
ch	in <i>chink, preacher</i>	ch, tch	s	in <i>so, massive, lass</i>	s, o, ç
d	in <i>day, bade, bad</i>	d	sh	in <i>shake, ash, ash</i>	sh, ch, si, ti, ç, s
f	in <i>few, life, stiff</i>	f, ph, gh	t	in <i>tee, fatter, fat</i>	t, d, th
g	in <i>gay, agate, nag</i>	g, gh	th sharp	in <i>think, panther, bath</i>	th
h	in <i>he</i>	h, wh	th flat	in <i>then, father</i>	th, the
j	in <i>jay, major, page</i>	j, g, dg	v	in <i>vine, heavy, live</i>	v
l	in <i>lo, mole, moll</i>	l	w	in <i>ware, aware</i>	w
m	in <i>me, Emma, ram</i>	m, mb	y	in <i>yes, youth, yell</i>	y, i
n	in <i>no, any, non</i>	n, gn, kn	z	in <i>zinc, blazer, blaze</i>	z, s
ng	in <i>ring, ringer</i>	ng, n	zh	in <i>razier, pleasure</i>	z, a, si
p	in <i>pie, happy, tip</i>	p			

## COMBINED CONSONANTS.

bl	in <i>blaze, double</i>	bl	dw	in <i>dwelt, dwindle</i>	dw
br	in <i>bran</i>	br	dz	in <i>heads, seeds, bids</i>	ds
bz	in <i>cabs</i>	bz	fl	in <i>flow, fly</i>	fl, phl
cl	in <i>clean, tackle</i>	cl, chl	fr	in <i>frog, free</i>	fr, phr
cr	in <i>crow</i>	cr	fs	in <i>doffs, coughs</i>	fs, ghs
ch	in <i>noxious, factions</i>	x, ct	ft	in <i>loft</i>	ft, phl
cw	in <i>quell, equal</i>	qu	fts	in <i>lofts</i>	fts
cs	in <i>hacks, knocks, aze</i>	cks, x, cachs, quæ	gl	in <i>glow, gleam</i>	gl
ct	in <i>act</i>	ct	gr	in <i>grow, grass</i>	gr
cts	in <i>acts</i>	cts	gz	in <i>hags, exertion</i>	gs, x, gues
dr	in <i>draw, drawl, drag</i>	dr	gw	in <i>anguish, language</i>	gu, gw
dth	in <i>breadth, width, hundredth</i>	dth	hw	in <i>what, whelp</i>	wh
dths	in <i>breadths, widths</i>	dths	lc	in <i>silk, milk, welk</i>	lk
			lca	in <i>milks, skulls</i>	lks
			ld	in <i>hold, gold, build</i>	ld

Sound.		Letters used in writing.	Sound.		Letters used in writing.
ldz	in <i>holds, scolds, folds</i>	lds	rg	in <i>burgh-</i>	rg, rgh
lf	in <i>elf, self</i>	lf	rj	in <i>barge</i>	rg
lj	in <i>bulge, bulge</i>	lg	rch	in <i>birch, church</i>	rch
lch	in <i>flch, milch</i>	lch	rl	in <i>earl</i>	rl
lm	in <i>helms</i>	lm	rlz	in <i>earls</i>	rls
lms	in <i>helms</i>	lms	rm	in <i>arm</i>	rm
lp	in <i>help, scalp, pulp</i>	lp	rmz	in <i>arms</i>	rms
lps	in <i>helps, Alps, whelps</i>	lps	rn	in <i>burn, barn, horn</i>	rn
lz	in <i>tells</i>	lla, ls	rnz	in <i>burns, barns, horns</i>	rns
lsh	in <i>Welsh</i>	lsh	rp	in <i>harp, carp, sharp</i>	rp, rpe
lt	in <i>halt</i>	lt	rps	in <i>harps, carps</i>	rps, rpes
lts	in <i>halts</i>	lts	rz	in <i>bars, doors</i>	rs
lth	in <i>health, wealth, stealth</i>	lth	rah	in <i>harsh</i>	rsh
lths	in <i>healths</i>	lths	rt	in <i>smart</i>	rt
lv	in <i>twelve</i>	lv	rts	in <i>smarts</i>	rts
lvs	in <i>elces, setees</i>	lves	rth	in <i>hearth, birth</i>	rth
mp	in <i>jump, imp</i>	mp	rths	in <i>hearths, births</i>	rths
mpe	in <i>jumps</i>	mpe	rv	in <i>starve, carve</i>	rv
mz	in <i>hams, limbs, dams</i>	ms, mbs	rvz	in <i>starves, carves</i>	rves
mt	in <i>stamp</i>	mpt	sc	in <i>scuthe, ask</i>	sk, sc, sq
nd	in <i>end, bend</i>	nd	scr	in <i>scrape</i>	scr
nda	in <i>ends, bends</i>	nda	sca	in <i>asks, tasks</i>	aks
neh	in <i>paunch</i>	neh	sl	in <i>slay</i>	sl
nx	in <i>tens, cans</i>	ns	sm	in <i>smart, spasm</i>	sm
neh	in <i>bench, tench</i>	neh, nah	smz	in <i>spasms</i>	sms
nt	in <i>meant, mint</i>	nt	sn	in <i>snow</i>	sn
nts	in <i>tent, tents</i>	nts	sp	in <i>spin, hasp, clasp</i>	sp
nth	in <i>tenth</i>	nth	sps	in <i>clasp, hasp</i>	sps
nths	in <i>tenth</i>	nths	spl	in <i>spl</i>	spl
ngz	in <i>lungs</i>	ngs	spr	in <i>sprain</i>	spr
ngc	in <i>bank, sunk, ink</i>	nk, nque	st	in <i>stay, cast, mast</i>	st
ngcs	in <i>banks, anxiety, winks</i>	nks, nx	sts	in <i>casts, tastes</i>	sts, stes
pl	in <i>play, ply</i>	pl	str	in <i>stray</i>	str
pr	in <i>pray, pry</i>	pr	sw	in <i>swell, swim, sway</i>	sw, su
ps	in <i>hops, copse</i>	ps	shr	in <i>shrill, shrink</i>	shr
pw	in <i>puissance</i>	pu	tr	in <i>tree, trust</i>	tr
rc	in <i>dark, work, irk</i>	rk	ts	in <i>rats</i>	ts
rca	in <i>dark, work, irks</i>	rks	tw	in <i>twain, twelve, twinkle</i>	tw
rd	in <i>bird, card, board</i>	rd	ty	in <i>picture</i>	t
rds	in <i>birds, cards, boards</i>	rds	thr	in <i>thrall, throw, thrust</i>	thr
rf	in <i>scarf, wharf</i>	rf, lf	ths	in <i>youths, truths</i>	ths
rth	in <i>laughs</i>	rfs	thz	in <i>bathes, lathes</i>	ths, thes
			vz	in <i>loves</i>	ves

A set of letters used in writing or printing is called an *ABC* (*absee*) or *alphabet*, the first two Greek characters being named *alpha-beta*.

The Alphabet is as follows, the columns numbered 1 comprising *Capital Letters*, and the columns numbered 2 comprising *Small Letters*.

Printed Roman.	Printed Italic.	English Name.	Hebrew Name.	English Saxon.	Old English.	German.	Greek.
1 2	1 2			1 2	1 2	1 2	1 2
A a	A a	ay	<i>Alep</i>	A a	Æ æ	Ä ä	Α α
B b	B b	bee	<i>Beth</i>	B b	Ʒ z	ß b	Β β
C c	C c	see, cee		C c	ƿ w	Ɔ c	
Ç ç	Ç ç	ch	<i>Choth</i>				Χ χ
D d	D d	dee	<i>Daleth</i>	D d	ƿ w	Ɔ c	Δ δ
E e	E e	e		E e	ƿ w	Ɔ c	Ε Η η
F f	F f	ef		F f	ƿ w	Ɔ c	Φ φ
G g	G g	{jee or} ghee	<i>Gimel</i>	G g	ƿ w	Ɔ c	Γ γ
H h	H h	{aitch, hairch, or he}		H h	ƿ w	Ɔ c	
I i	I i	i	<i>Yod</i>	I i	ƿ w	Ɔ c	Ι ι
J j	J j	jay		J j	ƿ w	Ɔ c	
K k	K k	ka	<i>Kaph</i>	K k	ƿ w	Ɔ c	Κ κ
L l	L l	ell	<i>Lamed</i>	L l	ƿ w	Ɔ c	Λ λ
M m	M m	em	<i>Mim</i>	M m	ƿ w	Ɔ c	Μ μ
N n	N n	en	<i>Nun</i>	N n	ƿ w	Ɔ c	Ν ν
O o	O o	o	<i>Ain</i>	O o	ƿ w	Ɔ c	Ο ο
Ô ô	Ô ô	ô					
P p	P p	pee	<i>Pe</i>	P p	ƿ w	Ɔ c	Π π
Q q	Q q	cue	<i>Koph</i>	Q q	ƿ w	Ɔ c	
R r	R r	ah	<i>Resh</i>	R r	ƿ w	Ɔ c	Ρ ρ
S s	S s	ess	<i>Samech</i>	S s	ƿ w	Ɔ c	Σ σ
T t	T t	tee	<i>Shin</i>	T t	ƿ w	Ɔ c	Τ τ
Th th	Th th	thee	<i>Teth</i>	Th th	ƿ w	Ɔ c	Θ θ
Th th	Th th	think	<i>Tau</i>	Th th	ƿ w	Ɔ c	
U u	U u	u, ou		U u	ƿ w	Ɔ c	Υ υ
V v	V v	ves	<i>Vau</i>	V v	ƿ w	Ɔ c	
W w	W w	{double u or wee}		W w	ƿ w	Ɔ c	
X x	X x	ers		X x	ƿ w	Ɔ c	Ξ ξ
Y y	Y y	ey or ye		Y y	ƿ w	Ɔ c	
Z z	Z z	{zee, zeul, or izzard}	<i>Zuin</i>	Z z	ƿ w	Ɔ c	Ζ ζ

ç. Soft c or c with the sedilla (ç), as in Provençal, *Façade*, —è or ay, as in *Fête*, —and ô or long o, as in *Hôtel, Dépôt*, —are sometimes used in words from the French.

The teachers of English in the Lowlands call A *ow*, and give different names and powers to many of the letters. The New Englanders sometimes vary the names of the letters, but not the powers. Some of the English population in Ulster follow the Lowlanders, and many of the Irish call A *ah*, and give other powers to the letters.

Some of the English names of the letters are used as words: a T-pipe, a D-retort, a V branch, an L-branch, a Y-branch, an X or cross shape, a house of H-shape, "crooked as an eel, zed, or izzard," "round as an o."

Some of the Greek names and letters are used as words; as *alphabet* for the ABC; A and  $\Omega$ , *alpha* and *omega*, *the beginning and the end* (the Greek Alphabet so beginning and ending); the *deltà* ( $\Delta$ ) of a river; a *deltoid* or triangular muscle; shaped like a Greek pi ( $\Pi$ ); an *iota*, a jot ( $\iota$ ); *lambdoidal* like *lambda* ( $\Lambda$ ).

The character mostly used in printing English is the Roman ABC, abcd, &c.; the Italic ABC, abcd, &c. being only used at times.

These characters are used for the same purpose by most of the Western Indo-European nations, with ç for soft c; ñ for nasal n; é, ê, ô, for long vowels; except by the Russians and Greeks. The High Dutch, however, very much use what we call the German character. The Indo-Europeans of Western Asia use Arabic characters; but those of India and the East have characters wholly unlike.

The character used in writing was taken from the Italians, but is now known abroad as English writing. In law writings other characters are sometimes used, called *courthands*, and for ornamental purposes German Text. The High Dutch use a peculiar character for writing; but the other Western Indo-European nations use a character almost the same as ours.

The English-Saxon alphabet is used in Anglo-Saxon handwritings and in some reprints of them. It is likewise found in some Irish books, the Irish having taken this alphabet from our English forefathers. It will be seen that the English Saxon alphabet has a token or character, Ð, ð, for the *th* sound, which is very much wanted in our days.

For cheapness of printing the Roman alphabet has been made as simple as possible, and it is therefore more difficult to mark the needful distinctions of sounds without disturbing printers' arrangements. The restoration of some of the old types would, however, be a great step towards remedying the present evil. The types which may be so used are the following:—

ç	for the soft sound of c, as in <i>cell, sinder</i> .
ch	for the ch sound, as in <i>chop, chink</i> .
sh	for the sh sound, as in <i>she, sharp</i> .
th	for the th sound, as in <i>the, think</i> .
wh	for the wh sound, as in <i>what, whale</i> .
ʃ	for the sh sound and zh of s, as in <i>pleasure, passion</i> .

In words which have not the English *ch* sound, as in *choise, choir*, the combined character should not be used, but the single letters. So too in *Thames, Thomas, who, wholesome*.

With a change scarcely appreciable in the look of the page, a great service might thus be done to the public. Except the ç with the sedilla, commonly used on the continent, none of these characters are new to English eyes. The ñ character in *ng* nasal, might likewise be introduced.

Schoolmasters may do much good by judicious application of the written character. The long *f*, instead of being used before the short *a*, should be kept for the *zh* sound, writing *share, possession, not shore, po/ession*. The uncrossed *t* may be used for the common sound of *t*, and the crossed *t* where the letter takes the *sh* or *zh* sound. The crossed *t* may likewise be used in the *th*.

The Old English character is found in early printed English books, and is now sometimes used in law printing and in ornamental writing.

The German character is used very often in Germany, the United States, and Australia, for High Dutch or German books and newspapers. In England it is only used for ornamental writing.

The Greek alphabet with  $\Psi$  is found in reprints of old Greek books and in the Romanic books and newspapers of the Ionian Islands, Greece, and the Levant, being still used by the modern Greeks. Words in Greek letters are sometimes to be found improperly placed on the front of English buildings.

Other printed characters commonly used are & for *and*, &c. or etc. for *and so forth*, or the *Latin words et cetera, the rest*.

The peculiar printed characters, however, most used are the numbers or numerals.

<i>Arabic or Hindoo.</i>	<i>Roman.</i>	<i>Name.</i>	<i>Spoken.</i>
0		Naught	<i>Naunt</i>
1	I	One	<i>Wun</i>
2	II	Two	<i>Zoo</i>
3	III	Three	<i>Threes</i>
4	IV	Four	<i>Fors</i>
5	V	Five	<i>Fives</i>
6	VI	Six	<i>Sixs</i>
7	VII	Seven	<i>Sevens</i>
8	VIII	Eight	<i>Ayt</i>
9	IX	Nine	<i>Nynes</i>
10	X	Ten	<i>Ten</i>
11	XI	Eleven	<i>Eleven</i>
12	XII	Twelve	<i>Twelo</i>
20	XX	Twenty	<i>Twente</i>
40	XL	Forty	<i>Fawte</i>
50	L	Fifty	<i>Fifte</i>
60	LX	Sixty	<i>Sixste</i>
90	XC	Ninety	<i>Nynste</i>
100	C	One Hundred	<i>Wun Hundred</i>
110	CD	One Hundred and Ten	<i>Wun Hundred and Ten</i>
400	CD	Four Hundred	<i>Fors Hundred</i>
500	D	Five Hundred	<i>Fyve Hundred</i>
600	DC	Six Hundred	<i>Sixs Hundred</i>
1000	M	One Thousand	<i>Wun Thousand</i>

The following are likewise used:—1st, First (*furst*); 2nd, Second; 3rd, Third (*therd*); 4th, Fourth (*forth*); 5th, Fifth; 6th, Sixth; 7th, Seventh; 8th, Eighth (*aith*); 9th, Ninth (*nynth*); 10th, Tenth; 11th, Eleventh; 12th; 13th; 14th, Fourteenth (*fore-teenth*); 15th; 16th; 17th; 18th, Eighteenth (*ait-teenth*); 19th; 20th, Twentieth (*twen-ti-eth* or *twen-tith*); 21st; 22nd; 23rd; 24th; 25th, &c.; 30th, Thirtieth (*ther-ti-eth* or *ther-teth*); 100th, Hundredth; 1000th, Thousandth.

The Roman numbers were first used in this country, but during the middle ages the Hindoo numbers were brought into use through the Arabs, and are therefore often called Arabic.

The Roman numbers are used sometimes with Hindoo numbers in bookbinding and printing for distinction; as VOL. I, II, III, IV, V; Vol. IV. p. 197; Introduction, p. xcvi; Vol. VII. p. 323; Vol. I, Chapter 6, Section V., p. 83. These numbers are likewise used sometimes for year dates, as MDCCC, that is, 1800; MDCCCLII, that is, 1852; and for numbers of laws and acts of parliament, as 3 & 4 Victoria, Cap. xci. They are much used on clock and watch faces, on rules, for numbers of houses, and for numbers of regiments.

The Hindoo numbers are those most used in printing and writing, for money, weights, measures, reckoning, and accounts.

The following numeral characters are used:—

$\frac{1}{2}$  one eighth;  $\frac{1}{4}$  one fourth, one quarter;  $\frac{1}{8}$  one farthing;  $\frac{1}{16}$  one third;  $\frac{1}{32}$  three eighths;  $\frac{1}{64}$  one half, halfpenny;  $\frac{1}{128}$  five eighths;  $\frac{1}{256}$  two thirds;  $\frac{1}{384}$  three fourths, three quarters, three farthings;  $\frac{1}{512}$  seven eighths;  $\frac{1}{768}$  one and three eighths. Or thus:  $\frac{1}{10}$  one tenth;  $\frac{1}{100}$  one ninth;  $\frac{1}{1000}$  one eighth, or half quarter;  $\frac{1}{10000}$  one seventh;  $\frac{1}{100000}$  one sixth;  $\frac{1}{1000000}$  one fifth;  $\frac{1}{10000000}$  one fourth, or quarter;  $\frac{1}{100000000}$  one third;  $\frac{1}{1000000000}$  one half; 1 one or unit.

In reckoning by tenths or decimals, . is put after the whole number, or after the place of the whole number, and before the figures representing the decimal fractions, as 1.1 one and one tenth; 1.01 one and one hundredth; 1.001 one and one thousandth; 1.111 one and one hundred and eleven thousandths; 0.1 one tenth; 0.01 one hundredth; 1.5 one and a half, or one and five tenths; 1.25 one and a quarter, or one and twenty-five hundredths.

The alphabets already given were had by the English from the Romans, by these from the Greeks and Etruscans, and by both of these from the Phœnicians, and by them directly or indirectly from the hieroglyphics of the Egyptians.

Writing is the offspring of drawing. The Old Egyptians, Chinese, and Mexicans recorded events by paintings. A battle can be well enough shown in a painting so as to be understood by all; on the frame or edge of such painting we may number by strokes, the red warriors on the side of the winners, and the black warriors on the side of the losers; a headless body with strokes will show the number of the slain; a bound man with strokes,

number of prisoners; an ox or camel with strokes, the number of cattle taken; and thus the spoil may be told over. Such paintings may be seen in the British Museum.

As these paintings are large, a shorter record was made by drawing on a scroll figures of the slain, prisoners, and of the spoil, with marks for the numbers. The customary token of a camel or ox would always stand for the word, and would always be so understood.

The next step is to make known the persons having a share in the deeds so set forth. A red man can even now be understood for an Egyptian, a black man for an African negro, a white man with a hook nose and a long black beard for an Arab or Jew, and a man with the tokens of kingship for a king.

A crowned man stands for any king of the Egyptians or Negroes, and for the king of any clan of Arabs or Jews at any time. If the tribe was called Longbeards like the kinsmen of the English who won Lombardy, or Longaxemen like the Saxons (S-axe), tokens could be made by which they would be known. Three long swords, the arms of Middlesex, carved on the public buildings of London, still show those which belong to the shire or commonwealth of the Middle Saxons. A green mountain is an emblem of the Vermonters in the United States.

A further step is, however, needed to mark those names and words, the sound of which cannot be shown by a drawing of some thing or things having a like sound.

From the list of sounds in the English tongue already given, it will be seen that the number of sounds to be represented is within narrow bounds; and if a new kind of writing were to be made for English, it would be a ready way to take for each sound the sign of some common thing, in the name of which that sound was to be found: ww, a mark for running water, might stand for the W sound in *water*; ʏ for the I sound in *eye*, being like a shut eye; ʔ for the N sound in *knot*. With such characters we should make the inscription W ʏ ʔ, by using the leading sounds of the signs included in which, we should get the word *wine*. Such represents the way in which the Egyptian phonetic writing, the Chinese writing, and the Syro-Arabian and European alphabets, have been formed. The Egyptians, however, used several signs for the same sound, or more signs than sounds; the Syro-Arabians and Europeans only one sign for each sound, or, rather, fewer signs than sounds. The Chinese, instead of marking a sound only by a sign, mark a syllable, and thus their system of characters is fuller and more complex than that used by us, as they must have one for each syllable. To understand this, suppose we go back to the signs we have just imagined, then ʔI, or rather  $\frac{I}{\text{O}}$ , as they would put it, would sound for the word *knott-y*.

The alphabet we use has its groundwork in about a score of hieroglyphics betokening the first sounds of objects in the Chaldee, Hebrew, and Arab tongue. Each of the Hebrew names of the letters given at page 33, has its meaning in that tongue. *Aleph* is an ox, *Beth* a house, *Daleth* a door, *Gimel* a camel, and so on. At this time the likeness of the letters to the objects of the Hebrew names is not readily seen, as the shape and position of the letters have been so much altered in many hundreds of years. The letters in very old writings, as may be seen in some of the Greek and Etruscan monuments of the British Museum, are written in several ways. The letters are put up, down, or sideways; they begin from the right hand or left hand, and are carried along sideways, straight up, straight down, and even up and down like the ploughing of a field.

In the alphabets at page 33, we may still see some grounds for the original names. Thus, ʏ may well enough pass for *Aleph*, an ox's head roughly marked; uuuu for *Mim*, water running, as schoolboys will draw on a slate; ʔ for *Ain*, an eye; ʔ or Δ for *Daleth*, a doorway; C has still something of the crooked long-necked shape of *Gimel*, the camel; m is the altered form of the ground plan of *Beth*, a house, of old a long square with a wall athwart to show two rooms, the common hut of Egypt.

These signs were taken from Egyptian hieroglyphics for common objects, such as the body and its parts (hand, hollow of hand or cup, head, eye, mouth, tooth), a house and its parts (house, door, hook), and animals (ox, camel, an ox-goat), so that when first made they could readily be borne in mind.

The Greek names of the letters were taken from the Syro-Arabian tongues, but these names have no meaning in Greek. They run, *alpha*, *beta*, *gamma*, *delta*, and so forth.

Our fathers, before they took the Roman Alphabet, had a kind of writing of their own, called the *Rune*, or mystery, said to have been made by Woden, the great father of the English kings, and lawgiver of our people. In this character writings are to be found cut on stones and rocks in England and Norway.

The sounds given at pages 31 and 32, are divided into vowels and consonants.

A vowel is a sound made with the unbroken passage of the breath through the open lips. Thus we may dwell on the sound a-a-a-a.

The vowels are single and double, the latter being called diphthongs.

Of the list already given, *i* long, *ow*, and *u*, are by some considered double.

Of the letters, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *o*, and *u*, are constant vowel letters; and *w* and *y* are used as such at the end of syllables, *y* having the power of *i* long.

H is hardly a true consonant, but only a breathing at the beginning of a word or syllable.

A consonant is a spoken sound, the passage of which through the lips is broken or stopped by the movement of the lips, tongue, or teeth. A consonant cannot be sounded of itself, or is not *sonant* of itself. It must be made *sonant with* (con-sonant) a vowel. Thus *b* or *d* will not sound of itself, but will sound with *a* or *e* before or after it.

The consonants are divided into liquids (*l, m, n, r, ng*), from their readily flowing or uniting with other consonants, as in *flow, talk, small, snap, band, tree, bark*; and into still or mute letters, *as, b, d, f, g, &c.*

The English consonants may be thus classified:—

	Sharp Lene.	Flat Lene.	Sharp Aspirate.	Flat Aspirate.	Sharp Lene.	Sharp Aspir.	Flat Lene.	Flat Aspir.
P sounds or labials	p	b	f	v	or p	f	b	v
T sounds or dentals	t	d	th ( <i>think</i> )	th ( <i>then</i> )	or t	th	d	th
S sounds or dentals	s	z	sh, ch	zh j	or s	sh	z	zh ch j
K sounds or palatals	c, k	g ( <i>gale</i> )		y	or g	c		y

H sound or aspirate h

Liquids l, r, m, n, ng

p, f, t, th (*think*), c, s, ç, sh, ch

b, v, d, th (*then*), g, z, zh, j

p, b, f, v, w, m

t, d, th (*think*), th (*then*), s, z, l, r, zh, sh, n

c, g, y, n, ng

n, ng, m

are sharps, sharp-sounded.

are flats, flat-sounded.

are labials, or lip-made.

are dentals, or tooth-made.

are palatals, or roof-made.

are nasals, or nose-made.

Some sounds being made by the lips, teeth, tongue, and roof of the mouth together, the same sound may be made with the teeth, as well as the roof, and be put under both heads or either.

In English, *l, m, n, r* (the liquids), *c* or *k*, *t, p, w, y*, have a semi-vowel power, and unite with other consonants before them; as in *slink, small, snap, trap, scald, stop, spin, sweet, picture*.

The *sf* sound is to be found in some foreign words, as in *sphere* for *ball, sphinx, &c.*

The letter which most readily unites, at the beginning of words, with the semi-vowels and semi-liquids, *l, m, n, r, c, t, p, w, y*, is *s*, which will unite with all singly (except *r* and *y*) and with their combinations. Other letters which so unite to a less extent, are *b, f, p, ç, g, d, t, th* (*think*), *h, sh*.

*l, m, n, r*, will not unite, at the beginning of a word, with other consonants; nor will *j, ch, y, ng, th* (*then*), *v, w, z, zh*. The *ing* sound *ng* is not found at the beginning of a word.

At the end of words or syllables, *b, f, p, v*, unite with *s*; *t, th* (*think*), *k*, with *s*; *d, th* (*then*), *g*, with *z*; *l, m, n, r, ng*, with *z*; *j, ch, sh, zh*, do not unite with *s* or *z*. *l, m, n, r, ng, d, c, s*, at the end of words or syllables, will further unite, more or less, with *t, d, th, m, p, sh, ch, j, g*.

## SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

### A.

A takes the short sound, and those of *ar, ay*, and *or*.

The short sound\* is that in *fat, fancy, an, mat, at, hat, hath, dam, has, as, have, hand, hast, had, that, answer*.

The middle sound† of *ar* is that in *father, far, ma, harm, rather, glass, lass, bath, lath, haft, half, art, are*.

The long sound of *ay* or *ai* in *fane, mate, hate, name, stare, fare, fate, basin, mason, hasty*. The broad sound of *or* or *aw*‡ in *fall, hall, ball, quarter, water, war, wrath, warm, falcon, warn, walk*.

\* This sound is given before single sounds, not followed by *e* silent, except *h, r, w*, and *y*; thus *cab, cad, cag, cal, cam, can, cap, as, caek, cat*. Before *ai*, plant; *ai*, band.

† This sound is given to roots ending with *ap, at, as*, as *glass, lass, mass, pass, hap, cast, &c.*; *ft*, as *haft, abast*; in *r*, as *car, far, star*; *th*, as *bath, lath, path*.

‡ This sound is given after *w*, and to roots ending with *il*, as *all, ball, call, &c.*; *il*, *hail, scald*; *il*, *halt*; *em*, *halm*.



*Æ* is used by some writers for *E* in words derived from the Latin and Greek, for *Æ* and *Æ*; as *enigma*, *aquator*. Michael makes *Mycel*; Michaelmas, *Micelmass*; Raphael, *Rayfel* and *Rafa-el*; Rachael, *Ray-chel*. *Ael*, in Hebrew and other foreign words, commonly makes *a-el*.

*Al* and *ay* have the long sound of *a* in *pail*, *pair*, *tail*, *laid*, *gait*, *bait*, *chair*, *fair*, *hair*, *kail*, *plain*, *wain*, *main*, *mail*, *sail*, which have the same sound as the other words, *pale*, *pare*, *tail*, *male*, *sale*, *lade*, *gate*, *bate*, *chare*, *fare*, *hare*, *stare*, *plane*, *wane*, *mane*. In *plaid*, *rallery*, it has the short *a* sound; and at the end of longer words an *e* sound, as in *again*, *fountain*, *Britain*, *certain*, &c.

At the end of words *ai* is written *ay*, as in *day*, *lay*, *may*, *say*; but *laid*, *said*. *Quay* is spoken *kee*.

There is a peculiar modification of the short sound of *a*. Thus, a *man* is made longer than to *man* a vessel: *Anne* is longer than *an*.

*Au* and *aw* are mostly sounded like *or*, as in *haul*, *caught*, *taught*, *ought*, *naught*, *awe*, *bawl*, *scrawl*, *daughter*.

*Au* at the end of words is made *aw*, as in *law*, *draw*, *craw*, *maw*, *saw*.

The *or* sound is found in *aunt*, *flaunt*, *gaunt*, *gauntlet*; the long *o* sound in *hautboy*; and the short *o* sound in *laurel*, *laudanum*.

*Ant* is by some made with a short, *ant*, to distinguish it from "aunt;" by some it is spoken *ahnt*, like the other word.

*Haunt*, *flaunt*, *gauntlet*, are pronounced by some *hahnt*, *fahnt*, *gahntlet*; by others, *hawnt*, *flawnt*, *gawntlet*.

*A* has the sound of a short *o* in *want*, *wan*, *wander*, as if written *wont*, &c.; and in *yacht*, as if written *yot*; in *was*, *wast*, *wos*, *wost*; what, *quadrant*, (and words beginning with *quad*) *quality*, *quandary*, *quantity*, *quadrature*, *quarrel*, *quarry*, *quart*, *quarter*, and *quash*.

There has been sometimes a fashion of saying, *glas* for *glahs*, *pas* for *pahs*, &c., which was begun by Dr. Sheridan, an Irishman, writer of a pronouncing dictionary.

*Basrelief* is sometimes spoken *bahsrelief*, *baserelief*, and *bahsrelief*. *Plant* is called *plant* and *plahnt*.

In Frisian, Flemish, and Low Dutch words, as *Zaandam*, &c., the *aa* is spoken as *ay*.

In foreign words, as *Isaac*, *Canaan*, *Balaam*, the *aa* is spoken as *a* short.

#### B.

*B* has one sound at the beginning, middle, and end of words; as in *bay*, *babe*, *mab*.

*B* is still in some words; as in *debt*, *debtor*, *doubt*, &c., *indebted*, *subtle*. After *m*, in monosyllable roots, and the words taken from them, it is commonly still. In some of these words the vowel is long, as in *climb*, *comb*, *tomb* (*loom*), *womb* (*woom*), *climba*, *climber*, *climbing*, *combing*, *doubt*, and their compounds. In others of these words it is short, as in *thumb*, *dumb*, *numb*, *rhomb*, *rhumb*, *bomb*, *limb*, *lamb*, *jamb*. In *bombardier* the *b* is sounded.

*Ble*, *bre*, at the end of words, sound as *bel*, *ber*, with the *e* slurred over; as *able*, *miserable*, *sabra*.

#### C, ç.

*C* has two sounds:—

A hard *K* sound before *a*, *o*, *u*, *i*, *r*, *t*, as in *car*, *concoct*, *cut*, *cloth*, *craft*; and when it ends a syllable, as in *victim*, *fiacid*.

A soft *S* or *ç* sound before *e*, *i*, and *y*, as in *cell*, *face*, *cit*, *cymbal*, *mercy*, *fiacid*. Sometimes it makes with the next vowel the sound of *sh*, as in *ocean*, *social*, *precious*, *specious*, *vicious*, *delicious*; but not in *oceanic*, *society*. The soft *c* is on the continent written *ç*, or *c* with a *sedilla*, and in some words used in English, as *Provençal*, *façade*.

*C* is still in *Czar*, *Czarina*, *virtuals*, &c., *scene*, *creascent*.

At the end of a one-syllable word the hard *c* sound is written *ck*, as in *back*, *black*, *knock*; and it used to be so in longer words; but now they are made to end in *c*, as *public*, *politic*; and so in syllables before a consonant, as *publicly*. Before a vowel, the *k* is kept in *trafficking*, *mimicking*.

The Irish wrongly give *c* the sound of *cy* before *a*, as in *card*.

*Cre* at the end of words makes *cer*, as in *massacre*.

#### Ch.

The right sound of *ch* is *tch*, as in *church*, *chick*, *chill*, *charter*, *gutta percha*, *much*. At the end of words it is sometimes made *sh*, as in *plinch*, *winch*, *haunch*, and in *punchion*, *stanchion*, *Michigan*, *Chenango*, &c., which are spoken both with the *ch* and *sh* sound.

At the end of words *ch* is sometimes written *tch*, as in *crutch*, *Dutch*.

In some words from the French it has the French sound of *sh*, as in *chaise*, *chevalier*, *chagrin*, *chandelier*, *machine*, *machinist*, *chamade*, *champain* or *champagne*, *chaumettelle* (*shomettelle*), *chevron*, *chevaux-de-frise* (*shev-ro-de-frees*). In *chamfer*, *chamola*, *charlatans*, *chicane*, &c., *chivalrons*, *chivalry*, the sounds of *sh* and *ch* are both given.

In words from the Greek and Latin it has the sound of *c* hard; though there is good ground for believing that the Greeks themselves gave the *tch* sound (as in *Romanic* and *Russian*). *C* is now much written for the *ch* hard, and is displacing it, as in *cameleon*.

*umomlie*, *coler*, *colera*. The hard sound is found in *chaos*, &c., *character*, &c., *chasm*, *chiliad*, *chlorosis*, *choral*, *chord*, *chorus*, *Christ* (and its compounds), *chromatic* (and compounds of *chroma*, colour), *chronic* (and compounds of *chronos*, time), *chrysalis*, *chyle*, *chemic*, &c., *scheme*, *school*, &c.

Choir is made *quire*; and chorister, *corister* and *quirister*. *Magna Charta* is made *Charta* and *Carta*.

Ch in arch sounds like *tch* before a consonant, as in *archbishop*, *archdeacon*, *archpriest*, *archprelate*, *archduke*, *archfiend*, &c., and in *arch*, *arched*, &c., *archer*, &c., *archenemy*. Before a vowel the *ch* has commonly the hard *c* sound, as in *archangel*, *architect*, &c., *Archipelago*, &c.

Archives and its compounds are spoken with the *c* and *ch* sound.

Ch is still in *schedule*, *schism*, &c., and *yacht*.

Chr sounds as *cr*, as in *chromatic*.

## D.

D has one sound at the beginning, middle, and end of words, as in *die*, *deaden*, *dead*.

Ed as a verbal ending is in the solemn style so pronounced, as *strip-ped*, *slip-ped*; but in common speech is spoken *d*, as *lovd*, *bard*, unless where the sound is short, when it takes the *t* sound, as in *stuffed*, *stripped*, *slapped*, which are spoken as when written *stuff*, *strip*, *slapt*.

## E.

E has three proper sounds:—

A short sound,\* as in *men*, *bed*, *yes*, *twenty*, *seven*, &c.

A long sound of *ee*, as in *meting*, *England*, *English*, *being*, *glebe*, *severa*.

A dull short sound, as in *open*, *soften*, *women*.

In *clerk*, &c., *serjeant*, &c., it is *ar*, as *clark*, *sargent*.

Before *r* it has a short *u* sound, as in *her*, *wert*, *berth*, *herd*; made *hur*, *wurt*, *berth*.

In *pretty*, *been*, &c., it has the sound of short *i*.

Yellow is made *yello* and *yallo*; *were*, *where*, *there*, *ere*, are made *ware*, *hoare*, *thore*, *are*; *fête*, *fate*.

In *me*, *he*, *she*, *we*, *ye*, *the*, *be*, it has the sound of *ee*.

E at the end of other words is still, as in *pine*, *wine*, *since*; except in substantives taken from the Greek, as *epitome*, *catastrophe*, *Penelope*, *Phæbe*, made *epitome*, *catastrofe*.

E at the end of a word softens the consonant, as in *force*, *rage*, *since*, *bathe*; or lengthens the foregoing vowel, as in *pine*, *wine*, *cane*, *fane*, *robe*, *cate*, as likened to *pin*, *win*, *can*, *fane*, *rob*, *cat*; *glove*, *live*, *give*, *sieve*, *dove*, *love*, *shove*, *have*, are however short.

With vowels so lengthened it does not commonly make another syllable when *s* is added, as in *pin-es*, *wine-es*, *cane-es*, *fane-es*, &c.; but it does with some consonants, as *for-ces*, *ra-ge-es*.

Ea has commonly the sound of *ee*, as in *breathe*, *mead*, *tear*, *shear*, *fear*, *each*, *lead* (to guide), *hear*, *near*, *rear* (behind), *sear*, *blear*, *clear*, *clean*, *shear*, *guinea*; but of short *e* in *breath*, *meadow*, *treasure*, &c., *pleasure*, &c., *lead* (a metal), *heard*, *pearl*, *feather*. In *break*, *great*, *yea*, *wear*, *pear*, *tear* (to rend), *swear*, *rear* (to raise), *Jean*, it has the *ay* sound, like *bare*, *brake*, *grate*, *ware*, *pare*, *tare*, *sware*, *rare*, *Jane*. In *search* it has the sound of *ur*. In *Eleanor* it is hardly heard.

Eau has the sound of long *o* in *beau*, *Eaubrink*, *flambeau*, *portmanteau*, *manteau*, *Bordeaux* (*bore-do*), *eau-de-Cologne*, *eau-de-vie*.

Eau in *beauty*, &c., is sounded long *u*, as *bute*.

Ee has a long sound of *e*; except in *mynheer* (*meen-hare*), where it is made *a*; and in *breeches*, where it is made *i* short.

Ei sounds like *ay* in *vein*, &c., *deign*, &c., *feign*, &c., *neigh*, &c., *weigh*, &c., *eight*, &c., *neighbour*, &c., *skein*, like *vane*, *dane*, *fane*, *nay*, *way*, *ate*.

Ei sounds like *ee* in *either*, *neither*, *seize*, *deceit*, *receive*.

Ei sounds like *i* short in *foreign*, &c., *sovereign*, &c., *forfeit*, &c.

Either and neither are by some severally spoken *ayther*, *eyther*—*nayther*, *neether*, *nyther*.

Eo sounds like *ee* in *people*, *peoples*, *peopled*, *peopling*.

Eo sounds like *e* short in *leopard*, &c., *jeopardy*, *pigeon*, &c., *widgeon*, *Geoffrey*.

Eo sounds like *u* short in *dungeon*, *sturgeon*, *punchoon*, *bludgeon*.

Eo sounds like *o* long in *George*, *yeoman*, &c.

Eu or Ew has commonly the long *u* sound, as in *hew*, *yew*, *ewe*, *ower*, &c., *dew*, *few*, &c., *seud*, &c., *new*, *stew*, *dew*, *Europe*, &c., like *hue*, *due*, *you*.

At the end of words *ew* is written *ew*, and sometimes makes the sound of *oo*, as *brew*, *flew*, *grew*, *strew*.

Sew, *sews*, *sewing*, *sewed*, *sewer*, (with a needle,) are spoken with long *o*, as *so*, *soz*, *soing*, &c. *Sewer*, a drain, is made *shore* and *soor*. *Ewe*, a sheep, is made *yu* and *yo*.

Ey, accented, has the sound of *ay*, as in *grey* or *gray*, *prey*, *convey*, *ley*; except in *key*, made *kee*.

\* This sound is found before single consonants, as *bed*, *beg*, *men*; before *ss*, *sp*, *st*, *best*; *th*, *left*; *ll*, *llm*, *fp*, *ll*, *bell*, *held*, *helm*, *help*, *helt*; *mp*, *nd*, *nt*, *hemp*, *end*, *hent*.

† This sound is taken before single consonants lengthened by the still *e*, as in *mere*, *v*.

When *ey* is unaccented it has the sound of *ee* short, as in *alley, valley, barley, Charley*.  
In *eye, eyre*, it has the sound of long *e*.

## F.

F has one sound at the beginning, middle, and end of words, as *fan, offing, off*; except in *of*, which makes *oe*. Its compounds whereof, thereof, &c., have the *f* sound.

F in plurals readily makes *v*, as *wife, wives—knife, knives*.

## G.

G has four powers:—

It has a hard sound at the end of words, as *bag, cag, dog*; and before *a, o, u, i, r*, as *game, gone, gun, glee, grow*; and sometimes before other vowels, as in *gewgaw, get, &c., gold, gear, Gertrude, Gilbert, gild, &c., gin (trap), giddy, &c., gibberish, gig, give, &c., giggle, gill (hang), gimlet, gimp, gird, &c., girl, &c., gizzard, finger, anger*.

It has the sound of *j* at the end of syllables, when lengthened by the still vowel *e*, as in *cage, hedge*; in *Egypt, &c., ginger, &c., German, Roger, Geoffrey*; and before *e* and *i* in many words of foreign stock, as *general, &c., generate, &c., generous, &c., genina, gentle, &c., genteel, &c., genuine, genus, geography* (compounds of *ge*, the earth), *George, germ, &c., gest* (and its compounds), *gibbet, gibelts, giant, &c., gill* (quarter of a pint), *gimcrack, gipseey, gyration, danger, manger*; and in syllables formed from *ge*, as *stranger, ranger*.

It is mute before *n* in the same syllable, as in *gnash, gnat, gnaw, gnomen, sign* (and its compounds), *deign, feign, condign*; and before *m* in *phlegm (stem), apophthegm (apophthegm)*, but not in their compounds.

With *n* it makes a nasal sound, as *ring, sing, Nottingham*.

*Nger* is commonly made *ng* (nasal) -*er*, as in *singer, ringer*; except in *finger, anger, made fing-gher, ang-gher*; and *danger, made dane-ger*.

Gh at the beginning of a word has the hard *g* sound, as *ghost, ghastly*; in the middle it is still, as *higher, nigher, daughter*; and it is sometimes still at the end, as in *high, sleigh, nigh, weigh, neigh, sleigh, bough, dough, Hugh, sough, slough, thigh, furlough, thorough, borough, though, through*, and their compounds; before *t*, as *sight, might, mighty*; except *draught*.

Gh at the end has often the sound of *f*, as in *laugh, cough, tough, trough, clough, draught, enough, rough*; and in words made from such, as *laughter, langher, laughing, coughing*.

Burgh is sometimes spoken as *burg*, but in the names of towns *borough*, as *Edinburgh, Hamburgh, Edinburgh, Hamburro*.

Hough, shough, and lough are made *hock, shock, and lock*.

Gu has the sound of *g* hard, as in *guard, &c., guarantee, guerdon, guess, &c., guest, guide, guy, &c., guile, &c., guildhall, guild* (spoken *gild* and *gyld*), *guinea, guise, guitar*. In language and anglish it has the sound of *gu*, spoken *lang-guage, ang-guish*.

Ge in sergeant has the sound of *j*.

Gue at the end of words sounds as *g*, as in *rogue, catalogue, prorogue, vogue, synagogue, harangue*.

Gg in suggest, &c., makes *dj, sudjest*.

Gre at the end of words makes *ger*, as in *meagre, ogre*; and *gle* makes *gel*, as in *mingle*.

The Irish wrongly make *g* into *gy*, as in *gulde*, spoken by them *gyid*.

## H.

H at the beginning of words is aspirated or strongly breathed, as in *hat, horse, hang*.

It is still in *hour, heir, honour, herb, honest*, and their derivatives; in words having the accent on the second syllable, as *historical, hibernial, Hibernian, Hungarian*; and commonly in composition, as *Birmingham, Nottingham*.

It is still after *r*, as in *rhubarb, rhetoric, &c., rheum, &c., rhomb, &c., rhumb, rhyme, rhapsody, rhinoceros*.

It is still after *t* in *Thomas, Thames*.

It is still after a vowel, as in *ah! hah! oh! foh! Sarah, Messiah, John*.

It is very questionable how far the sound of H is absolute in English, and whether it is not governed by position, having a great tendency to coalesce. There are people who say *Notting-gam* and *Nottin-gam*; but few even of the sticklers for the *h* aspirate, who say *Notting-ham*, for *ham* after the nasal *ng* is as harsh as *gam* is. The body of the English, for the sake of softness, will therefore go on saying *Notting-am*, notwithstanding all the laws that grammarians may lay down. *Clapham* is spoken *Clap-am*, and not *Clapham*; *Petersham, Peter-sham* and *Peters-am*; *Shoreham, Shore-am*.

## I.

I has the following sounds:—

A short sound,\* as in *id, ig, in, it, his, did, fifteen, fifty, six, &c., wind (air), window, hinder, cluder, Pindar, tinder, kindle, spindle, dwindle, swindle, which, this, with, Michaelmas*.

\* This is formed before single consonants, as *it, hit; ee, ey, et, miss, wisp, mist; ft, aft; ee, hen, it, ich, my, nd, hill, elm, hilt, imp, hint*.

A long sound,\* as in *isle*, *biter*, *Michael*; before single consonants followed by the still *e*, in *mine*, *thine*, *wife*, *wile*, *mile*. alive: except *give*, *live*; and in *mind*, *wind* (to twist), *mild*, *hinder* (behind).

A sound like *u* short before *r*, as in *flirt*, *dirt*, *first*, *birth*, *thirteen*, *thirty*.

A sound like *ee* in *machine*, *magazine*, *bombazine*, *oblique*, *clique*, *Missouri*.

A sound like *y* in *William*, *bilious*.

*Girl* is pronounced *girl* and *garle*.

*Wind* (air), in poetry, is sometimes made with *i* long.

At the end of words *i* is written *y*, as in *by*, *my*.

*Is* is like short *i* in *carriage*, *marriage*, *parliament*.

*Is* is like *ya* in *Christian*, *poniard*, *William*, *Britannia*, *Russia*, *Prussia*.

*Diamond* is spoken *diamond* and *di-amond*.

*Is* in *Maria*, *Julia*, and like words, makes *i-a*.

*Is* has the sound of *ee*, as in *grief*, *thief*, *grenadier*, *bombardier*, *niece*, *piece*, *fiend*.

At the end of words it is the long *i* or *y*, as in *die*, *lie*, *pie*.

Sometimes it has the sound of short *i*, as in *sieve*. In *friend* it has the sound of short *e*.

*Ieu* and *ieu* in French words take the sound of *eu*, as in *lieu*, *adieu*, *surieu*, *view*, &c.

*Lieutenant* is made *leftenant*, *lutenant*, and *lewtenant*.

*Ii* or *ij*, found in Flemish words, is *y* with an *ee* sound, as in *Ijssel*.

*Io* in *ion* has the sound of *u* or *shu*, according to the consonant going before. In *violet*, *iodine*, *prior*, it makes two syllables, *i-o*.

# J.

*J* has one sound at the beginning of words, as in *Jay*, *James*, *Jar*.

In *hallelujah* it has the sound of *y*.

# K.

*K* is the same as *C* hard, as in *kill*, *ken*, *kine*.

It is still before *n*, as in *knee*, *knock*, *knell*.

It is never doubled, but *c* is put before it, as in *knuckle*, *tackle*, *sucker*. At the end of words it does not stand alone, but *c* is put before it, as in *knock*, *lock*, *back*.

*K* is by the Irish often wrongly made *ky*; thus, such people say *kyind* for *kind*.

# L.

*L* has the same sound at the beginning, middle, and end of words, as in *love*, *blow*, *quarrel*.

It is still in half, *calk*, *walk*, *talk*, *Walker*, *balk*, *psalm*, *could*, *would*, *should*, *salmon*, *falcon*.

At the end of words it is often doubled, as *bell*, *bill*, *ball*, *bull*.

Le at the end of words takes the sound of *el*, with the *e* almost still, as in *table*, *rubble*, *shuffle*.

*Halfpenny*, &c., are spoken as written, but often *ha-pen-nee*.

# M.

*M* has always the same sound, as *may*, *mamma*, *mam*; except in *comptroller*, spoken *controleer*.

# N.

*N* has two sounds:—

Its common sound, as in *net*, *many*, *Nan*.

The nasal sound of *ng* before *k* and *g*, as in *brink*, *bank*, *banquet*.

It is still after *m* at the end of a syllable in *hymn*, *solemn*, *autumn*, *column*, *condemn*; and in *hymns*, &c.; but not in their compounds.

It is still in *Monsieur*.

*Gn* and *Kn* are spoken as *n*, as in *gnat*, *knot*.

# Ng.

*Ng* has a nasal sound, as in *ring*, *sing*, *Nottingham*. After this sound the *h* following is commonly still, as *Notting-am*, *Birming-am*, *Wadding-am*; though in some districts these are spoken *Nottin-gam*, *Birmin-gam*; *Notting-gam*, *Birming-gam*; and some few try to say *Notting-ham*, *Birming-ham*.

Stronger, finger, anger, hunger, monger, linger, Bangor, are made *strong-ger*, *ang-ger*, &c. Danger, ranger, stranger, manger, cringer, plunger, swinger, make *dane-ger*, *rane-ger*, *strane-ger*, &c.

Ringer, singer, and other words in *ng* with *er*, make *ring-er*, *sing-er*.

# O, o.

*O* has the following sounds:—

A short sound† as in *not*, *hog*, *log*, *cord*, *chord*, *coral*, *from*, *Poll* (a name), *doll*, *boll*, *loll*, *Moll*, *noll*, *toll*, *moth*, *troth*, *conjure*, *dollar*, *moose*.

\* This is found before *ll*, *nd*, *mild*, *mind*.

† This sound is taken before single consonants, as in *hot*, *hod*; before *ss*, *boss*; *ft*, *hot*; *nd*, *bond*.

A long sound like A<sup>u</sup> as in *ga. na. zo. sa. Sa. more. less. less. from. choral. heat. meat. guest. post. rail. dull. pull* (at any direction). *tail. swirl. trial. swallow. back. slack. betrothed. wait. only. work.*

A sound like *ow* in *gun* and before *r*, as in *ar. mar. far. forty. hard*; and in *fourth. fourth. catch. off. with. left. cream. less. team. front. east.*

A sound like short *o* in *mother. brother. son. come* and its compounds; *death. death. done. amongst. conquer. London. was*; before *r*, as in *world. thorough. borough*; and commonly in *oo* at the end of words, as *technism. salvation.*

A sound like long *oo* as in *to. do. doing. two. prove. move. wash. what. do. less.*

A sound like short *oo* in *woman.*

In *women* *o* is made short *i*, *women*; in *one. are. as was*; *coloured* is made *herald.*

In *bird. despite*, the French or accented long *a. &* is sometimes used.

*Go* has the long *o* sound in *ast. boat. coal. great. beard. Jan.*

In *breast. abroad. great. money*, the sound is *or*, as *brum.*

*Rostrum* is *rostrum*; *cockswain. carum.*

*He* has the sound of long *a*, as in *dee. see. three. hillock.*

In *shee* it has the sound of *oo* long.

*Ed* is sometimes used in foreign words for *E*, as *Edipus.*

*Oh* has the sound of long *a*, as in *oh*; but of short *o* in *John.*

*Oi* and *oy* have a peculiar sound, as in *boy. bail. joint. Boyne. oil.* At the end of a word it is made *oy*, as *boy. coy.*

*Go* has two proper sounds:—

A short sound: in *foot. good. wood. wool. stood. hood. sooth.*

A long sound; which is its common one, as in *tea. wea. noon. seen. shed. breed. boot. back. book. goose. loose. sothe.*

In *blood. flood*, and their compounds, it has the sound of short *u*, as *blud. flud.*

In *down. floor*, and their compounds, it has the sound of long *a*, as *dere. flare.*

*Boor*, and *moor*, *Moore*, are spoken *boor*, *moor*, *Moore*, and *boe*, *more*, *More*; as are *boorish*, *moorish*.

*Boor* is often made *ast.*

*On* has several sounds:—

Its proper and general sound of *oo* in *thou. bound. found. ground. our. bough. chough. sough. plough. slough. hour. scour. sour. shroud. wound* (from wind). *rowt. pound.*

The sound of a short *oo* in *enough. young. trouble. journey. tough. slough. rough. cousin. honour. valour*; and in words ending in *ous*, as *virtuous. audacious.*

The sound of *oo* in *you. your. youth. sough. uncouth. would. could. should. wound. through. Missouri. Louis. Louise. Louisiana*; some French words, as *soup. tour. tournement. route.*

The sound of *oo* in *cough. trough. ought. bought. brought. thought. sought. fought. wrought.*

The long *o* in *four. though. dough. mourn. poult. poultry. poulitice. borough. pour. thorough. soul. court. furlough.*

The short *o* sound in *hough. shough. lough.*

At the end of words *oo* is made *ow.*

*Ow* has its proper sound, as in *how. cow. owl. brown. shower. bow* (of a ship, a salute), *row* (a noise), *sow* (of swine), *vow. now. lower* (to look heavily), *brow. prow. prowl. howl. cowl. towel. fowl. growl. scowl.*

In some words it has the sound of long *a*, as in *snow. grow. stow. &c. flow. &c. blow. &c. bow* (of ribands), *row* (a string of things, to pull a boat), *sow* (seed), *tow. &c. crow. &c. slow. &c. mow. &c. know. low. lower. &c. snow. &c. Rowland. bowl. jowl.*

*Frow* is spoken *frow.*

## P.

P has the same sound at the beginning, middle, and end of words, as in *pin. pipkin. pip. In cupboard* it has the sound of *b.*

In *pain. &c. palter. Ptolemy. &c.*, it is still; as also in *empty. &c. tempt. &c. exempt. &c. peremptory. &c.*; Thompson, Simpson, Sampson, Tompkins, Simpkins, Tompkinson, pseudo, pseudonymous, ptarmigan.

P has commonly the sound of *f*, as in *philosophy. philanthropy. Philip. Ralph. sapphire. Phebe. and Sophia.*

Phl, phr, have the sound of *f*, *fr*; as *phlegm or flegm. Humphrey.*

In *nephew. Stephen. phial*, the sound is that of *v.*

In *apophthegm. phthisis. &c.*, it is still; they are spoken *apophthem. this.*

Perhaps is often made *prape.*

## Q.

Q is followed by *u*, and stands for *cu*, as in *quell. quail. conquest.*

\* This sound is taken before *ll. ld. lm. bolt. bold. holm.*

† This sound is commonly taken before *k*, as *book. &c. cook. &c.*

‡ Commonly before *l*, as *fool. cool*; *n*, as *moon. soon. monsoon*; *m*, as *boom. room*; *th*, *smooth.*

In conqueror, Exchequer, quoft, liquor, *qu* has the sound of *c* or *k*.  
Que at the end of words stands for *k*, as in oblique.  
Quy has the sound of *cicee*.

## R.

R has two sounds:—

A rough sound at the beginning of words and syllables, as in river, rich, ram, deride; and after other consonants, as in free, grow, pray, throw, Mary.

A soft sound before a consonant and at the end of syllables, as in bard, bar.

Re at the end of words is spoken like *er* weak, as in theatre, sepulchre, acre, massacre, meagre.

Iron is commonly made *turn*; irony, &c., *i-ron-ee*.

Rh has the sound of *r* rough at the beginning of words and syllables, and of *r* soft at the end of words, as in rhetoric, &c., rhyme, &c., rheum, &c., rhapsody, &c., rhinoceros, rhomb, &c., rhumb, rhubarb, catarrhal; but catarrh.

Rr before *y* in the middle of words commonly makes the foregoing vowel short, and gives only one *r* sound, as in carry, marry, Harry, hurry, ferrý, tarry (to linger); except in tarry (of tar), spoken *tar-ree*.

R before *y* makes the foregoing vowel long, as in Cary, Mary, hairy, hoary.

## S.

S has several sounds:—

A sharp hissing sound, as sister, history, this, thus, us, yea, rebus, surplus, hast, else.

The sound of *z*, as in as, is, his, was, eyes, bosom, desire, wisdom, besom, ella.

The sound of *sh* in cassia, Prussia, Russia, &c.; and before *ion* in conversion, diversion.

The sound of *zh* in pleasure, measure, &c., treasure, &c., leisure, intrusion, Asia.

It is mute in isle, island, viscount, &c., demesne, pulse.

The *s* sound is taken at the beginning of words before consonants, in words ending with *ous*, and in plurals after sharp mutes.

The *z* sound is taken before *m* at the end of words, before a vowel and *e* mute, and before *y* at the end of words, as in spasm, beds, rose, wise, rosy; and in most plurals.

The *sh* sound is taken before *ion* after another consonant, as in conversion, reversion, convulsion.

The *zh* sound is, by the Irish, wrongly used before *u*, as in suit, superb, made by them *shoot*, *shooperb*.

The *zh* sound is taken before *ion*, as intrusion, delusion.

Sc, Sk, and Sch have the same sound, as in scale, skill, school, scheme; except *sc* and *sch*, made *s* before *e* and *i*, in scene, &c., scent, &c., sceptre, sciatica, science, &c., scimitar, scion, scissars, scythe, schedule.

Sw and Su have the same sound before a vowel, as in swine, suavity, suasive, Suevian, Swabian, suite, assuage, dissuade, persuade; except suit, sue, suet.

Sw in sword, answer, is *s*, made *soard*, *arnser*.

Ss has the sound of *rs* in cross, loss, toss.

Sh has one power, as in she, shank, dash, dasher.

## T.

T has several sounds:—

The common one in take, hatter, hat.

Before *u*, after an accented syllable, it takes the sound of *ty*, as in nature, virtue, made *na-tyoor*, *vir-tyu*.

St before a vowel takes the sound of *st-y*, as in question, suggestion (*quest-yun*, *sug-gest-yun*).

T is sometimes mute in *tle*, as in whistle, bustle, rustle, hustle, apostle, epistle, made *whissel*, *bussel*, *russel*, &c.

Tch has the sound of *ch*, as in catch, latch, match.

Tle at the end of words makes *tel*, as in battle, bottle, cattle, shuttle.

Tre and ter at the end of words have the same sound.

## Th.

Th has two powers:—

A sharp sound, as in thin, thick, thank, thunder, death, breath, mouth, theme, third, thousand.

A flat sound, as in thus, they, father, breathe, mouthe, them.

Th is made *t* in Thames, Thomas, thyme, asthma, phthisis, Thompson.

The sharp sound is found commonly at the beginning of words, as in thank, thick, thumb; at the end of words, as bath, breath, mouth, sooth, south, north; in the middle of some Greek and Latin words, as panther, orthodox, misanthrope, Athens, apothecary, apathy, ether.

The flat sound is found in the, thee, &c., that, &c., they, &c., this, &c., thus, thence, there, &c., thither, than, with, beneath; at the end of words with *e*, as bathe, breathe, mouthe; and after *oo*, as smooth; in the middle of English words, as mother, &c., father, &c., brother, &c., either, neither, whether, rather, other, smother, together, gather, heathen, worthy, farthing.

Of, if, as, in, has, was, his, this, us, was, thus, you, chief, you, are, single.

Words of more than one syllable do not commonly double it, as common, scornful.

2. Abba, addi, ebb, odd, egg, inn, err, hurt, putt, butt, bunk, double the last consonant; no other one-syllable words do so but those ending in *f*, *l*, or *a*.

3. One-syllable words ending in a single consonant, double it on taking another syllable beginning with a vowel; as fit, fitting, stand, faster; thin, thinner, thinnish, thinnest, thinning, thinned.

Words accented on the last syllable, ending with a single consonant, double it; as begin, beginner, beginning.

Words ending with two vowels and a consonant, or with the syllable unaccented, do not commonly double the consonant: as feel, fresh, feckery; maid, maiden, maidish, maidenly; faster, fastening, factory. Wool makes woolly.

4. Words ending with *y* and a consonant before it, make the plurals of nouns, the persons of verbs, verbal nouns, past participles, comparatives, superlatives, and adverbs, by shifting *y* for *i*; as fly, flies, flies, flesh, flies; carry, carries, carries, carries, carries, carries; copy, copies, copies, copied, copied, copied; happy, happier, happiest, happily, happiness; merry, merrier, merriest, merrily, merriment.

The present participle in *ing* keeps the *y*; as flying, carrying, copying, copyings.

*Y* with a vowel before it, is not changed except in some cases for the past participle; as laid, paid, said; but we write pay, pays, payer, payee, payment, payest, payeth, paying, repay, repays; coy, coyer, coyest, coyly, coyness.

5. Words ending with double *l*, commonly leave out one *l* before *ness*, *less*, *ly*, *full*, and their compounds; as full, fullness, fully; skill, skillful, skillfulness, skillless, skillfully.

6. *Ing* or *ish* put after words ending with still *e* cuts it off; as love, loving; white, whitish, whiting; blue, bluish.

7. *Able*, *ible*, *ably*, *ibly*, *ability*, and *ibility*, when put after words ending with still *e*, commonly cut it off; as blame, blamable; sense, sensible, sensibly; insensible, insensibly, insensibility.

*C* soft, and *g* soft, keep the vowel after them; as peace, peaceable, peaceably, peaceableness; courage, courageous.

8. It is common to write the participles of verbs with *ed*, even where they are spoken as *d* or *t*; thus, burned (spoken *ber-ned*, *ber-əd*, *ber-ət*); passed (most commonly spoken *past*). Many of the words may be written with *t* where they have the sound of *t*, as *burnt*, *past*.

The following words are spelled irregularly:—duly, awful, judgment, abridgment, acknowledgment, argument, lodgment.

#### ACCENT.

In a many-syllable word one of the syllables is dwelt upon more strongly than the others, as in *mánful*, *mánfully*, *mánliness*, *Nórman*, *húsbándman*, *présént*, *présént*.

Accent has much to do with the sound of the vowel and consonants. We say of conjure, *cún-jeer*, *con-júre*; further, *prés-ent*, *prée-zént*; *rée-ent*, *ree-zént*; *dée-ent*, *dee-sént*; *cóm-plement*, *complee-mént*.

Under the accent, the vowel is made longer, or the consonant flatter; *a* being made *z*; *ah*, *zh*; *ca*, *gs*; *th* (thin), *th* (thine).

Words of English root commonly keep the accent throughout, as *love*, *lóvely*, *lóveliness*, *lóvelier*, *lóving*, *béloved*, *lóvesick*, *lóvesong*, *lóver*. It is not so, however, with words of *French*, *Latin*, *Greek*, or *High Dutch* root, as in *hármony*, *hármónious*, *hármóniously*.

Words of more than one syllable, made by giving an ending to the root, keep an accent as on the root; as condemn, condemned, condemnations, uncondemned; communicate, communication, communicative, communicativeness, communicable, communicableness, incommunicable.

Words of many syllables have a leading accent and a secondary accent; as communication, communication.

A syllable put before the root leaves the accent on the root, as beware, unwary, unwarily; return, returning.

#### ACCENT ON TWO SYLLABLES.

Latin and French words, which are at once substantives and verbs, have commonly the accent on the first syllable for the substantive or adjective, and on the latter syllable for the verb.

##### *Substantive or Adjective.*

contract  
présent  
présage  
perfume  
absent

##### *Verb.*

contract  
présent  
présage  
perfume  
absent

Two syllables, not coming under former rules, commonly have the accent on the first, except allow, endow, avow, create, champain, maintain, sustain, retain; or, unless the latter syllable ends with *e* still, has two vowels in it, or ends with two consonants, as appease, reveal, attend, payée.

#### ACCENT ON THREE SYLLABLES.

Words in three syllables, made from a root, follow the accent of that root.

Three-syllable words accent the first syllable commonly—

Unless they accent the middle syllable, as in words in *átor*; as spectátor, créátor; except orátor, sénátor, légator, bárrator.

Or when they have two vowels in the middle syllable, as endéavour; or a vowel before two consonants in it, as doméstic, promulgate.

Some French words have the accent on the third syllable, as acquiesce; those in *ine*, magazine; those in *ee*, légatée, nominée, repartée.

#### ACCENT ON MANY SYLLABLES.

Words in many syllables, made from a root, follow the accent of the root, except French, Latin, Greek, Hebrew, High Dutch, and other foreign words.

Words in *átor* have the accent commonly on the last syllable but one (*penultimate*, or almost last), as equivocátor, gladiátor.

Words in *ble* have the accent on the first syllable, as amicable, déspicable; unless the second syllable has a vowel before two consonants, as combustible, condémnable.

Words ending in *ion*, *ous*, *ly*, *ia*, *io*, *cal*, which are commonly of foreign root, have the accent on the last syllable but two (*antepenultimate*, or fore-almost-last); as dégradation, harmonious, activity, cyclopédia, punctilio, despótical.

In such long words as these there is a twin or secondary accent, and either is sometimes made the leading one, as sounds best with neighbouring words; thus, referee, referee; privateer, privateer; gazetteer, gazetteer; violin, violin; complaisant, complaisant.

#### QUANTITY.

Vowels are called *long* and *short*, as the time in speaking them is *longer* or *shorter*: wáll, wále, nātūre, are *long*; plānt, hōnōr, mērry, *short*.

Syllables not having the accent on them are often short, but not always so.

When the accented syllable ends with a consonant, the vowel is commonly short, as in history, hés-itate, mād-ly, mād-dening.

*i* is short in vowels under the principal accent before the endings *ia*, *io*, *ion*, and their derivatives; militia, Sardinia, punctilio, ambition, decision, vision. The other vowels are long, as Austrália, regália, follo, animátion, cohésion, nōtion, diffútion. The following are not so; Británnia, battáilion, nâtionál, râtionál, discrétion.

The vowel is short in the accented last syllable but two, of words with the following foreign endings, and those made from them:

-logy (*speaking or knowledge*); as géology, géological, géologize.  
-loquy; as solloquy, solloquize.  
-graphy (*writing*); as géography, géographical.



- Clause, a limb of a speech or writing  
 Claw, *plural of* claw  
 Cliff, a steep  
 Clif, a male mark  
 Climate, climate  
 Climb, to climb  
 Close, end, to shut  
 Close, shut  
 Cloth, dress  
 Course, grass  
 Course, career  
 Courser, groomer  
 Courser, a horse  
 Courtest, greatest  
 Courtest, thou runnest  
 Crab, to catch  
 Crab, a small fishing boat  
 Crab, money  
 Crab, a wedge  
 Crab, the corner of a building  
 Collar, dress for the neck  
 Cloder, bile, anger  
 Compliment, a civility  
 Compliment, that is complete  
 Complimental, civil  
 Complimental, making up a compliment  
 Content, leave  
 Content, harmony  
 Cowl, wheel grease  
 Cowl, a measure  
 Cow, a beastplant, or the stony remains of it  
 Cow, inner shell of a flower  
 Cow, a rope  
 Cow, a string in music or mathematics  
 Cow, a kind of lettuce  
 Cow, Hindoe mile  
 Counsel, advice, a lawyer  
 Council, a meeting for advice  
 Counsellor, member of a council  
 Counsellor, a lawyer  
 Cowl, a hood  
 Coul, a tub  
 Cowen, to cheat  
 Cousin, a kinsman  
 Creak, to make a noise  
 Creek, a winding cove  
 Crease, mark after folding  
 Creese, a Malay dagger  
 Cruel, hard-hearted  
 Crewel, a ball of worsted  
 Cruise, a sea search  
 Crews, *plural of* crew  
 Cue, a hint  
 Kew, a suburb of London  
 Queue, a tail, pigtail  
 Curb, a restraint, bridle  
 Korb, an edging  
 Cygnet, a young swan  
 Signet, a seal  
 Cymbal, an instrument  
 Symbol, a sign  
 Cypress, a tree  
 Cyprus, a Greek island, a black stuff  
 Dam, a mother  
 Dam, a bank  
 Dam, to stop up  
 Damn, to condemn  
 Day, a period of time  
 Day, the former governor of Algiers  
 Daze, to dazzle  
 Days, *plural of* day  
 Dey, the governors of Algiers  
 Dear, loved  
 Deer, a beast  
 Dane, Danish  
 Deign, to condescend  
 Demean, to behave  
 Demesne, land in the hands of the proprietor  
 Dew, night mist  
 Due, owing, right  
 Die, a stamp, a cube  
 Die, to lose life  
 Die, to stain  
 Die, dreadful  
 Dyer, one who dyes  
 Doe, a she deer or rabbit  
 Dough, unbaked paste  
 Does, she deer  
 Dose, to slumber  
 Dram, a drink of spirits  
 Drachm, a weight  
 Draft, a cheque, a bill, sketch of writing  
 Draught, act of drinking or drawing  
 Draughts, a game  
 Draughts, what is drunk, bodies of troops  
 Drafts, cheques, bills  
 Dun, dark  
 Dun, to ask for debts  
 Done, *participle of* to do  
 Dust, small particles  
 Dost, thou dost  
 Earn, to gain  
 Urn, a vessel  
 Earnest, warm, zealous  
 Earnest, thou earnest  
 Ernest, a name  
 Easel, a painter's frame  
 Eisel, vinegar  
 Eight, a number  
 Ait, a small island  
 Ate, *imperfect of* to eat  
 Ewe, a sheep  
 Yew, a tree  
 You, *plural of* thou  
 Fane, a temple  
 Fain, gladly  
 Feign, to sham  
 Faint, weak  
 Feint, a trick, a sham  
 Fare, price of journeying  
 Fare, cheer, entertainment  
 Fair, beautiful  
 Fair, a meeting  
 Fawn, a young deer  
 Faun, a Greek wood elf  
 Feat, a deed  
 Feet, *plural of* foot  
 Feel, to have sensation  
 Fille, French for a girl  
 Fees, payment  
 Feaze, to untwist the end of a rope  
 Fellow, of a wheel  
 Fellow, a mate  
 Feud, a quarrel  
 Feod, a fee, freehold  
 Few, not many  
 Feu, what is let out  
 Filip, a snap of the fingers  
 Philip, a Roman name  
 Filter, to cleanse water  
 Philter, a love potion  
 Finary, an iron forge  
 Finery, showy dress  
 Flea, an insect  
 Flee, to run away  
 Flour, corn  
 Flower, a plant  
 Floe, of ice  
 Flow, to run  
 Flue, down, fluff  
 Flue, a chimney  
 Flew, *imperfect of* to fly  
 Flew, the jaws of a hound  
 Foaled, having brought forth a foal  
 Fold, a plait  
 Four, a number  
 Fore, in front  
 Forth, forwards  
 Fourth, belonging to four  
 Fowl, a bird  
 Foul, dirty, unfair  
 Freeze, to congeal  
 Freese, a Frisian  
 Friese, a cloth  
 Frieze, an architectural member  
 Frith, a strait or estuary  
 Fryth, a plain among woods  
 Fir, a tree  
 Fur, soft hair  
 Firs, trees  
 Furs, soft hair skins  
 Furze, gorse

Gage, a pledge  
 Gauge, a measure  
 Gall, bile  
 Gall, a kind of nut wart on the oak  
 Gaul, a Celt of France  
 Gamble, to game  
 Gambol, a sport  
 Gate, a door, street  
 Gait, way of walking  
 Gater, one who keeps a gate  
 Gaiter, a covering for the foot  
 Gelders, those who geld  
 Gelders, a Netherlands shire  
 Gild, to cover with gold  
 Guild, a fellowship  
 Gilt, what has gold on it  
 Guilt, crime  
 Gilder, one who gilds  
 Guilder, a Netherlands coin  
 Glare, shine  
 Glaire, white of an egg  
 Gloze, to flatter  
 Glows, he shines  
 Gore, blood  
 Goar, a piece cut out  
 Gored, torn  
 Gourd, a pumpkin  
 Graze, to eat grass  
 Grays, people named Gray, name of a place  
 Grate, for fire  
 Great, big  
 Grate, to scratch, rasp  
 Grator, a scratcher, rasper  
 Greater, bigger  
 Grease, fat  
 Greece, a land  
 Greaves, leg armour  
 Greeves, refuse fat  
 Grievous, mourns  
 Groan, to moan  
 Grown, *participle of to grow*  
 Guest, one entertained  
 Guessed, imagined  
 Hale, healthy  
 Hale, to drug  
 Hail, frozen rain  
 Hail, to salute  
 Hair, of the head  
 Hare, a beast  
 Heer, title of a Fleming  
 Hall, a house room  
 Haul, to drag  
 Haw, a wild fruit  
 Haugh, a meadow in a hollow  
 Haws, *plural of haw*  
 Hawse, a cable  
 Heal, to cure  
 Heel, the hind part of the foot  
 Heel, to cant over

Hear, to listen  
 Here, in this spot  
 Herd, a pack, flock  
 Heard, *imperfect of to hear*  
 Hew, to fell  
 Hue, dye  
 Hugh, a name  
 Hied, he went  
 Hide, a skin  
 Hyde, a measure of land, a name  
 High, raised, tall  
 Hie, to hasten  
 Hire, wages  
 Higher, more high  
 Hiest, thou hastenest  
 Highest, most high  
 Ho! a call  
 Hoe, a tool  
 Hoard, a store  
 Horde, an inclosure  
 Horde, a tribe of savages  
 Hoared, turned white  
 Hock, a Rhenish wine  
 Hough, or Hock, the shews of the thigh  
 Hold, to clutch  
 Holed, *imperfect of to hole*  
 Hole, a hollow  
 Whole, all  
 Hollow, scooped out  
 Holloa, a call  
 Holy, sacred  
 Holy, having many holes  
 Hoop, a flat ring  
 Whoop, a call  
 Horal, belonging to an hour  
 Oral, by mouth  
 Horary, belonging to an hour  
 Orrery, an instrument  
 Hour, a measure of time  
 Our, belonging to us  
 Him, *objective of he*  
 Hymn, a holy song  
 I, myself  
 Eye, the organ of sight  
 Idle, lazy  
 Idol, an image  
 In, within  
 Inn, a house for travellers  
 Indite, to compose  
 Indict, to prosecute  
 Ire, anger  
 Eyer, one who eyes  
 Isle, an island  
 Aisle, side of a church  
 Jam, a preserve  
 Jam, to squeeze together  
 Jamb, a leg or side of a door or chimney-piece  
 Jury, twelve men named to judge a cause

Jewry, Juden, a place in which Jews live  
 Just, equitable  
 Joust, a tournament  
 Kernel, fruit of a nut  
 Colonel, head man of a regiment  
 Key, to open a lock  
 Quay, a wharf  
 Knare, a net  
 Ne'er, never  
 Kneel, to bend the knee  
 Neal, to temper  
 Nell, Neel, Nella, Neale, a name  
 Gnu, a beast  
 Knew, *imperfect of to know*  
 New, novel  
 Knewest, thou wast aware  
 Newest, most new  
 Knot, a knob in a string  
 Not, no  
 Know, to be aware  
 No, not  
 Knows, he knows  
 Noes, the dissentients  
 Nose, of the face  
 Lac, ten thousand rupees  
 Lac, a dye gum  
 Lack, to want  
 Lacker, one who wants  
 Lacquer, varnish  
 Lade, to load  
 Laid, *imperfect of to lay*  
 Lair, sitting place of a beast  
 Layer, a stratum  
 Lane, a road  
 Lain, *participle of to lie*  
 Lapse, flew  
 Laps, *plural of lap*  
 Latten, brass, tinned iron  
 Latin, the tongue of the Romans  
 Lax, loose  
 Lacks, he lacks  
 Lay, a song  
 Lay, to put down  
 Lay, *imperfect of to lie*  
 Ley, mixed metal  
 Lays, songs  
 Lays, he lays  
 Laze, to idle  
 Lead, a metal  
 Led, *imperfect of to lead*  
 Leak, a water breach  
 Leek, a root  
 Least, smallest  
 Leased, let out  
 Least, thou liest  
 Lea, inclosed ground or meadow  
 Lee, opposite to windward  
 Lear, a name  
 Leer, to ogle

Leas, meadow	Marhal, an officer	More, greater
Leas, dregs	Marshall, a name	Mower, one who mows
Leet, a jury	Martial, warlike	Moor, a common
Leet, a water channel	Martial, a Roman name	Moor, a black
Lessen, to make smaller	Marten, a bead, a bird	Moor, to secure a vessel
Lesson, a teaching	Martin, a name	Moor, Moore, More, a man's name
Lettuce, a plant	Mattress, a bed	Morris, a dance
Lettice, a woman's name	Matrice, a mould	Maurice, Morris, a name
Levy, to raise men	Mays, people of that name	Moat, a ditch
Levee, a dyke	Maze, a labyrinth, confusion	Moate, an Irish town
Levee, a court assemblage	Maize, Indian corn	Mote, a meeting
Liar, a storyteller	Mead, a drink, a meadow	Mote, particle of matter
Lyre, a musical instrument	Meed, a reward	Mucus, alime
Lie, to repose	Mean, to intend	Mucous, slimy
Lie, a falsehood	Mean, low	Mule, a beast of burthen
Lye, of potash	Mien, a look	Mewl, to cry
Limb, a member	Means, resources	Muscle, flesh
Linn, to paint	Means, he intends	Mussel, a shellfish
Lion, a beast	Miens, looks	Naval, belonging to ships
Lien, a bond or hold	Medal, a commemorative coin	Navel, of the body
Literal, relating to letters	Meddle, to interfere	Nave, of a church, of a wheel
Littoral, relating to the shore	Meddler, a busybody	Knave, a rascal
Load, a burden	Medlar, a fruit	Nay, not
Lode, a course of ore	Meat, flesh	Neigh, of a horse
Loan, what is lent	Meet, fit	Naze, a sea cape
Lone, solitary	Meet, to encounter	Nays, the noes
Lock, a door fastening, a canal sluice	Mete, to measure	Neighs, he neighs
Loch, Lough, Celtic name for lake	Message, an errand	Need, necessity
Lo! look, see	Messuage, a property	Knead, to work dough
Low, mean	Metal, mineral substance	Night, the dark time
Low, to bellow	Mettle, temper, spirit	Knight, an armed man, a title
Loose, free	Meting, measuring	Nit, egg of an insect
Luce, a pike	Meeting, assembly	Knit, to weave
Lore, learning	Meter, a measurer	None, not any
Lower, more low	Metre, verse	Nun, a she friar
Lumber, useless	Mett, a measure	O! a letter, a round
Lumbar, belonging to the loins	Met, <i>imperfect of</i> to meet	Oh! a cry
Lynx, a wild beast	Mews, a stable	Owe, to be owing
Links, of a chain	Mews, cries	Oar, a scull
Ma, a mother	Muse, a Greek goddess	O'er, for over
Mar, to spoil	Muse, to think	Ore, mineral
Maid, a young woman	Might, power	Ode, a poem
Made, <i>imperfect of</i> to make	Mite, an insect	Owed, <i>imperfect of</i> to owe
Mail, armour, letterbag	Mighty, powerful	One, a number
Male, of the he kind	Mity, full of mites	Won, <i>imperfect of</i> to win
Mane, horse's neck hair	Millenary, belonging to a thousand	Otter, a beast
Main, the great sea, the chief	Millinery, dress	Ottar, of roses
Manners, behaviour	Miner, one who digs for ore	Pa, father
Manors, lands	Minor, one under age	Par, a fish
Mantel, chimney work	Mire, dirt	Par, even
Mantle, a cloak	Mier, Myer, Meyer, a High Dutch name	Pact, a contract
Mare, a she horse	Mist, a cloud	Packed, compressed
Mayor, the head alderman of a town	Mist, or Missed, <i>imperfect of</i> to miss	Peaan, a song of joy
Mayer, a name	Moan, to cry	Peon, a Hindoo servant
Mair, a name	Mown, cut down	Pail, a bucket
Mark, a token	Mode, a fashion	Pale, white
Marque, license for sea-roving	Mowed, cut down	Pain, anguish
	Mordant, a dye substance	Pane, a sheet of glass
	Mordent, biting	Pain, Paine, Payne, a name
		Pair, a couple
		Pare, to cut
		Pear, a fruit

- Palace, a dwelling  
 Pallas, a Greek goddess  
 Palate, roof of the mouth  
 Pallet, a small bed  
 Palette, a painter's tool  
 Pall, a coffin cover  
 Paul, a foreign name  
 Pawle, the catches of a windlass  
 Pannel, a saddle  
 Panel, a square of board, a law term  
 Pause, stop  
 Pawa, feet  
 Payst, thou payest  
 Paste, of meal  
 Peace, quiet  
 Piece, a bit  
 Peak, an end, a top  
 Pique, an illfeeling  
 Peel, a ring of bells  
 Peel, rind  
 Pearl, a jewel  
 Purl, a drink  
 Pearly, made of pearls  
 Purley, a name of a place  
 Peer, an equal, a senator  
 Peer, to look  
 Pier, a buttress or pillar  
 Peerage, the body of peers  
 Pierage, pier dues  
 Pencil, a brush  
 Pensile, hanging  
 Pendant, a hanging ornament  
 Pendant, hanging  
 Perry, a drink of pears  
 Pury, name of a place  
 Pew, a box in a church  
 Pugh, a Welsh name  
 Phrase, a saying  
 Frays, fights  
 Picks, he picks  
 Pyx, a box  
 Pict, name of an old tribe  
 Picked, chosen  
 Place, a stead  
 Placce, a fish  
 Plane, flat  
 Plain, flat ground  
 Plate, a platter  
 Plait, to fold  
 Pleas, pleadings  
 Please, to gratify  
 Plum, a fruit  
 Plumb, a lead weight  
 Pole, a staff, a Polander  
 Poll, a head  
 Polypus, an animal  
 Polypous, of the polypus kind  
 Populace, people  
 Populous, full of people  
 Pure, an organ of the skin  
 Pour, to empty out  
 Practice, habit  
 Practise, to do  
 Pray, to make prayers  
 Prey, plunder  
 Praise, commendation  
 Prays, he prays  
 Preys, he preys  
 Profit, gain  
 Prophet, a seer  
 Quartz, a mineral  
 Quarts, plural of quart  
 Quean, an idle woman  
 Queen, a king's wife  
 Quire, a quantity of paper  
 Choir, a body of singers  
 Rabbit, a beast  
 Rabbet, a joint  
 Rain, water falling from the clouds  
 Rein, part of a bridle  
 Reign, to rule  
 Raining, falling of water  
 Reigning, ruling  
 Rains, plural of rain  
 Reins, the loins  
 Reins, plural of rein  
 Reigns, rules  
 Rap, to strike  
 Wrap, to cover  
 Rapper, one who strikes  
 Wrapper, a cover  
 Rare, scarce  
 Rear, to rise up  
 Rae, a name  
 Ray, a fish  
 Ray, a beam of light  
 Wray, a name  
 Raise, to lift up  
 Rase, to destroy  
 Rays, fish, beams of light  
 Rals, an Arab captain  
 Red, a colour  
 Read, imperfect of read  
 Read, to peruse  
 Reed, a plant  
 Reid, a name  
 Rest, quiet  
 Wrest, to twist off  
 Rheum, a cold  
 Room, an apartment  
 Rheumy, like rheum  
 Roomy, having room  
 Roam, to wander  
 Rome, a town  
 Rye, grain  
 Wry, crooked  
 Rigor, severity  
 Rigger, one who rigs  
 Rhyme, number, po try  
 Rime, frost  
 Ring, a bell  
 Wring, to wrench  
 Riot, a squabble  
 Ryot, a Hindoo husbandman  
 Rise, an ascent  
 Ryea, kinds of rye  
 Right, correct, straight  
 Rite, a ceremony  
 Wright, a workman  
 Write, to scribe  
 Righter, one who rights  
 Writer, one who writes  
 Road, a thoroughfare  
 Rode, imperfect of to ride  
 Rowed, imperfect of to row  
 Roads, plural of road  
 Rhodes, name of a man, island  
 Roar, a noise  
 Rower, one who rows  
 Roe, of a fish  
 Row, a rank, to pull with oars  
 Roea, plural of roe  
 Rose, a flower  
 Rose, imperfect of to rise  
 Rows, ranks  
 Rows, he rows  
 Rote, practice  
 Wrote, imperfect of to write  
 Rough, harsh  
 Ruff, a neck ornament  
 Roughed, made rough  
 Ruffed, having a ruff  
 Rouse, to wake  
 Rows, riots  
 Sail, of a ship  
 Sale, act of selling  
 Sally, to rush out  
 Sally, a woman's name  
 Sallee, an African town  
 Same, the like  
 Saim, hog's lard  
 Savory, a plant, a name  
 Savoury, well tasting  
 Sea, the ocean  
 See, a bishop's seat  
 See, to look  
 Seam, a suture  
 Seem, to look like  
 Seas, plural of sea  
 Sees, plural of see  
 Seas, he sees  
 Seize, to lay hold of  
 Scene, a picture  
 Seen, participle of to see  
 Seine, a fishing net  
 Serge, cloth  
 Surge, a wave  
 Sewer, a drain  
 Shore, a bank  
 Shear, to clip, cut  
 Sheer, mere  
 Sheer, to go off

Shears, clippers	Stile, a passage across a fence	To, towards
Sheers, masting apparatus	Style, a title	Too, likewise
Shoal, a shallow	Stone, a weight	Two, one and one
Shoek, a body of fish	Stun, to shock	Toe, a member of the foot
Shock, a shaking	Succour, help	Tow, loose hemp
Shough, a kind of dog	Sucker, what sucks	Tow, to drag along
Sign, a token	Butler, an army victualler	Toise, a French fathom
Sine, a geometrical term	Subtler, more subtle	Toys, playthings
Sigher, one who sighs	Suite, a following	Told, <i>imperfect of</i> to tell
Sire, a father	Sweet, pleasant	Tolled, <i>imperfect of</i> to toll
Skink, a drain	Tact, touch, skill	Ton, a weight
Cinque, the five at cards	Tacked, fastened	Tun, a cask
Slate, a weaver's reed	Tacks, nails	Tract, a region, a pamphlet
Slay, to kill	Tax, a rate, duty	Tracked, <i>imperfect of</i> to track
Sleigh, a sledge	Tail, an end	Travel, to journey
Sleight, a trick	Tale, what is told	Travail, to be in labour
Sleight, neglect	Tame, domesticated	Tray, a dish
Slight, slight	Thame, a river, a town	Trey, three at cards
Sloe, a wild fruit	Tamar, a river	Tripoli, a land in North Africa
Slow, not fast	Tamer, more tame	Tripoly, polishing sand
So, thus	Tare, a plant	Vail, a bribe
Sow, to plant seed	Tare, an allowance in weight	Vale, a valley
Sew, with thread	Tear, to rend	Veil, a covering
Soak, to dip in water	Tartan, a Highland striped stuff	Vain, idle
Soke, a jurisdiction	Tartane, a Mediterranean ship	Vane, a weathercock, a name
Soar, to rise, a river	Tartar, a tribe	Vein, a blood vessel
Sore, an ulcer	Tartar, a chemical substance	Veer, to turn round
Soared, <i>imperfect of</i> to soar	Tea, a Chinese herb	Vere, a name
Sword, a weapon	Tee, the letter T	Venous, belonging to the veins
Sole, only, a fish	Team, a set of horses	Venus, a Roman goddess
Soul, the spirit, vital principle	Teem, to bring forth	Verge, edge
Soled, having soles put	Tear, a drop of water in the eye	Virge, a wand
Sold, <i>imperfect of</i> to sell	Tier, a row	Vial, Phial, a small bottle
Some, several, many	Teas, the kinds of tea	Viall, a name
Sum, total	Tees, a river	Viol, a musical instrument
Son, a child	Tease, to worry	Wade, to pass through water
Sun, the orb of day	Temse, a sieve	Weighed, <i>imperfect of</i> to weigh
Sow, a she swine	Thames, a river	Wail, to cry
Sough, a drain	Terrace, a raised walk	Wale, a stripe
Sower, one who sows	Terras, a cement	Wain, a waggon
Sewer, one who sews	The, <i>definite Article</i>	Wane, to lessen
Stade, a Greek furlong	Thee, <i>Objective of</i> thou	Waist, the middle of the body
Stade, name of a town	Their, belonging to them	Waste, empty
Staid, steady	There, in that place	Weigh'st, thou weighest
Stayed, <i>imperfect of</i> to stay	Threw, <i>imperfect of</i> to throw	Walster, one who serves in the middle of the ship
Stair, a gangway, a town	Through, thorough	Waster, one who wastes
Stayer, one who stays	Throe, a pain	Wait, to expect
Stare, to look	Throw, to cast	Weight, a burthen
Stare, a starling	Throne, a seat	Waits, he waits
Stake, a post	Thrown, cast down	Weights, <i>plural of</i> weight
Steak, of meat	Tide, time, the ebb and flow of the sea	Wates, musicians
Stationary, fixed	Tied, bound	Wall, a fence
Stationery, a stationer's stock	Time, the measure of duration	Wawl, to cry
Steal, to rob	Thyme, a plant	Ware, something saleable
Steel, a kind of iron	Tire, the iron round a wheel	Ware, the name of a town
Stalk, a stem	Tier, one who ties	Wear, to bear about
Stalk, to stride	Tire, to wear out	Wear, a man's name
Stork, a bird		Were, <i>plural of</i> was
Step, gait		
Steppe, a Russian waste		

Wat, Walter	Weakly, sickly	Wheal, a swelling
Wot, to know	Weekly, once a week	Wheel, of a cart
Watts, a name	Weal, happiness	Wine, he wins
Wots, he knows	Weale, a name	Winze, a mining term
Wave, of water	Weald, a wood	With, by
Waive, to put aside	Wield, to handle, manage	Witthe, a twig
Waver, to flutter	Weeks, plural of week	Wood, a weald, forest
Walver, concession	Weekes, a name	Would, imperfect of will
Waver, a river	Weather, state of atmosphere	Ewea, sheep
Wavre, a town	Wether, a sheep	Yews, trees
Way, a road	Weld, to join iron	Use, to make use of
Weigh, to find the weight	Welled, sprung up	Yoke, to join
Wey, a measure	Werst, a Russian mile	Yolk, of an egg
We, plural of I	Worst, most evil	Your, belonging to you
Wee, Lowland for small	Wert, thou wast	Ewer, a jug
Weak, feeble	Wort, a root	Ure, a name
Week, seven days		

WORDS OF LIKE SPELLING BUT UNLIKE SOUND.

Abuse, insult	Abuse ( <i>abuse</i> ), to use abuse
Analyses, plural of analysis	Analyses, he analyses
August, a month	August, grand
Bow ( <i>Bow</i> ), to bend	Bow ( <i>Bo</i> ), to shoot with
Bower, an arbour	Bower, one who bends
Close, shut	Close ( <i>close</i> ), to shut
Closer, more close	Closer, one who closes
Closest, most close	Closest, thou shuttest
Courtesy, a favour	Courtesy ( <i>courtesy</i> ), a salute
Cruise, a vessel	Cruise ( <i>cruise</i> ), a voyage
Désert, a waste place	Désert, to run away
Diffuse, widely spread	Diffuse ( <i>diffuse</i> ), to spread
Disuse, want of use	Disuse ( <i>disuse</i> ), to give up the use
Effuse, dissipated	Effuse ( <i>effuse</i> ), to pour out
Excuse, an apology	Excuse ( <i>excuse</i> ), to apologise
Gallant, brave	Gallant, attentive to women
Grease, fat	Grease ( <i>grease</i> ), to use fat
House, a dwelling	House ( <i>house</i> ), to shelter
Incense, perfume	Incense, to anger
Lead ( <i>lead</i> ), a metal	Lead, to guide
Loose, scattered, unbound	Loose ( <i>loose</i> ), to let adrift
Lower ( <i>low</i> ), to look heavy	Lower ( <i>lore</i> ), more low
Minute, of time	Minute, small
Mouse, a beast	Mouse ( <i>mouse</i> ), to catch mice
Object, something before the senses	Object, to oppose
Pasty ( <i>pasty</i> ), a pie	Pasty, made of paste
Poll, a name	Poll ( <i>pole</i> ), a head
Provost, head of a corporation	Provost ( <i>pro-vo</i> ), executioner
Put, a game	Put, to place
Récreate, to refresh	Re-create, to create anew
Réformation, an improvement	Re-formation, forming anew
Resound, to sound again	Resound ( <i>re-sound</i> ), to echo
River ( <i>ry-ver</i> ), one who rives	River ( <i>riv-er</i> ), a stream
Row ( <i>Row</i> ), a noise	Row ( <i>roe</i> ), a rank, to pull with oars
Shower ( <i>shou-er</i> ) of rain	Shower ( <i>sho-er</i> ), one who shows
Slough ( <i>slou</i> ), mire	Slough ( <i>sluff</i> ), to cast off
Sough ( <i>sou</i> ), a drain	Sough ( <i>soo</i> ), whistling of the wind
Sow ( <i>sou</i> ), a she swine	Sow ( <i>so</i> ), to put in seed
Stone, rock	Stone ( <i>stun</i> ), a weight
Súpine ( <i>supin</i> ), a grammatical term	Súpine ( <i>supine</i> ), lying down
Swinger ( <i>swing-er</i> ), one who swings	Swinger ( <i>swinjer</i> ), one who swings
Tarry, to stay	Tar-ry, belonging to tar
Tier ( <i>tier</i> ), a row	Ti-er, one who ties
Undress, loose dress	Undress, to take off the dress
Use, utility	Use ( <i>use</i> ), to make use of
Wound ( <i>wound</i> ), hurt	Wound ( <i>wound</i> ), imperfect of to wite

## ETYMOLOGY,

Or the knowledge of words, is commonly taken as the second part of grammar after Orthography.

The kinds of words in English are, the Article, Noun or Name Substantive and Adjective, Adverb, Pronoun, Verb, Conjunction, Preposition, and Interjection.

An Article is a word put before Names or Nouns to mark them out, and show how far their meaning goes; as *a man, an eye, the woman, the birds.*

A Noun is the *name* of anything which is or of which we can think, and is either Substantive, or standing by itself, as *man, worth, England*; or Adjective—that is, added to a Name Substantive or Pronoun—to show its kind, as *a happy man, great worth, Old England, he is happy.*

An Adverb, likewise, is added to a word to show its kind or quality, and may be added to Adjectives and Adverbs; as *a truly happy man; very great worth; he reads very well.*

A Pronoun, or Forname, is one of a set of words used instead of other Names or Nouns, to save their frequent use; as *Edward Browning is happy, he is useful, he is kind; England is rich—it is well peopled.*

A Verb is a word showing being, doing, or bearing; as *he is, he loves, he is loved.*

The Preposition is a small word or particle *put before* Names Substantive to show their bearing on each other, or with Verbs to direct their meaning; as *he went from London to York; the duck swims in the water; he went off; he went by; up rose the king of men.*

The Conjunction, or *yoke word*, is used to bring together other words, so as to make a sentence or saying; as *The man and the woman are happy; "the English of the Old World and the New are a strong people;" a swan or duck swims in the water.*

An Interjection is a small word or particle thrown in to show the feeling of the speaker; as *"Lo! he comes." "Hush! she sleeps."*

NOTE.—Parsing, or the examination and determination of the parts of speech, is an educational process of very limited utility, and should not be carried too far; for a child cannot determine what the most learned men have not determined yet. Time is taken up in parsing which could be much better employed, and it is much to be wished that schoolmasters would substitute other exercises.

English words may be brought under three great heads: NAMES, as Substantive, Adjective, Adverb, Pronoun, Participle; VERBS; and PARTICLES, as Preposition, Conjunction, Interjection.

Although in some tongues, as in Greek or Latin, each of these kinds of words is so unlike the others as to be readily made out, it is not so in English, where the same word is put in several ways: thus we say, *A man, a man child, to man a ship; a near relation, to near the land, near him; he dwells above; above all praise.* It is further to be borne in mind, that the part of the verb called the Participle, and the kind of Pronoun called Adjective Pronoun, are put for Names Substantive and Adjective: thus we say, *Living is easy, a living man, she is living; few men, a few.*

The several sorts of words may be thus known: the Articles are *a, an, the.* A Name Substantive will either take an article before it, or have a *meaning of itself*; as *a man, an eye, the birds, worth, health.* A Name Adjective will take the word "*thing*" after it; as *a happy thing, a great thing, an old thing.* An Adverb will answer to *How? When? Where? as*

in "a truly happy man;" "he reads very well." How is the man happy? how does he read? The man is *truly* happy; he reads *very well*. A Verb will take before it "I," "You," or "He," or the word "to;" as he *is*, to *love*, to *be loved*.

An ARTICLE is a word put before Names or Nouns Substantive or Adjective and Adverbs, to show how far their meaning goes; as a man, an eye, the woman, the birds, an old man, a very old man.

The Articles belong to the class of Pronouns; but, for convenience, are taken first in the English Grammar.

## THE ARTICLES.

The Articles are *a* and *the*.

*A* is called the indefinite article, and marks out one or any; as, "give me *a* book," meaning *one* book, or *any* book.

Before most vowels and before "h" still, *an* is used; "h" being still or unbreathed in "heir, herb, honour, hour, honest, habit," and their compounds, and in words beginning with "h," of which the accent is on the second syllable, as historical, unless in those having the long "u" sound. *A* is used before "h" aspirate, before all other consonants, before the long "u" sounds, as "u," "eu," "ew," and "hu," unaspirated, and before the word "one."

Thus we say, *a* man, *a* cow, *a* hog, *a* house, *a* history, *a* harmony, *a* university, *a* European, *a* ewe, *a* humane man, such *a* one; and we say, *an* eye, *an* ell, *an* ass, *an* uncle, *an* hour, *an* heir, *an* heiress, *an* hourglass, *an* historical work, *an* harmonious composition.

*The* is named the definite article, as it shows the thing or things meant; as "Give me *the* book," meaning some known book.

*A* or *an* is put before Names of the singular number, Names of multitude, and the adjectives *few* and *many*; *the*, before singular and plural. Thus we say, *a* man, *an* eye, *a* hundred, *a* crowd, *a* few men, *a* great many men; *the* man, *the* men, *the* eye, *the* eyes.

The meaning of a name substantive is bounded or limited by the article, as "*a* man," "*the* man;" but without the article the meaning is wide or unbounded, as "Food is good for man," that is, for mankind.

The way in which the meaning of words is affected by the articles, will be seen in the following:—"Son of man," "A son of man," "The Son of man;" "Son of a man," "A son of a man," "The son of a man," "Son of the man," "A son of the man," "The son of the man."

When an adjective, with or without an adverb, is used with a noun, the article is commonly set first; as "*A* careless writer," "*the* too careless writer," "*a* writer too careless," "*the* writer too careless;" but sometimes the indefinite article is put after the adjective, as "*too* careless *a* writer."

Where the definite article "the" is put between the adjective and substantive, a verb is left out or understood; as, "Faithless *the* man who, while believing with one party, speaks for the other;" that is, "faithless *is* the man," &c.

The definite article "the" is sometimes put before adverbs in the comparative or superlative degree, to show that degree more strongly; as "*The* more I look at it, the better I like it;" "*I* like *this* *the* least."

*The* is sometimes put for the pronoun possessive, as "He looks him full in *the* face," or "*his* face;" "In his presence they were to strike *the* forehead on the ground," that is, "*their* foreheads."

## NOUNS.

A SUBSTANTIVE is the name of anything which is or of which we think, as *man*, *worth*, *England*.

Names Substantive are classed as individual or common.



An Individual name is such as Edward, Edith, London, Thames, Dash the dog, Dobbin the horse, Mayflower the ship, the Times.

A Common name is such as has many individuals of its kind, as man, woman, town, dog, horse, ship, worth.

Individual names become common when an article is put to them, as "He is a Washington," "He is the Nelson of his day."

Common names likewise, by putting articles or pronouns before them, may be made to mean individuals, as "*the* man has hurt *my* dog."

Names substantive are further classed for their gender or kind, number, and case.

Names may be likewise collective, abstract, or verbal.

Collective names, or names of multitude, are such as bring together many under one head; as a host, shipping, kinsfolk, a crew, a gang, the ministry.

Abstract names are those of qualities apart from bodies, things, or substances; as knowledge, goodness, whiteness.

Verbal or participial names are the participles or parts of verbs used as names; as loving, betrothed, dying, reading, writing.

Names substantive are made in several ways. They are original, as "man, sun, dog;" made from substantives put together, as "horseman, sunshine, housedog, steamship;" made from substantives and endings or terminations of given meaning, as "manhood, duckling, kingdom;" or made from other words, as "love, dying, wisdom, overlander."

A substantive is made to bear several meanings by putting to it other words, whether substantives or verbs. Thus of "a dog" we make "sheep-dog, bulldog, housedog, lapdog, yarddog, carriagedog, foxdog," showing the kind of dog. By putting the word "dog" before another substantive we give the latter a meaning relating to a dog, as "doghouse, dogboy, dogfight, dogtooth, doggrass, dogcart, dogsmeat, dogsmeatman, dogs ear."

This use of substantives instead of adjectives, and the bringing together of such substantives in one word, is one of the peculiarities of the English tongue, giving it great strength. Such compound words are made daily as new arts arise, or are peculiar to some places, trades, or households, being found useful for more readily showing the thing meant. Thus some knowledge of the right way of putting together words is highly needful.

The use of steam and of rails has already brought forth many words, as "steamer, steam-boat, steamship, steamengine, steamtug, steamcarriage, steambox, steampipe, railway, railroad, enginehouse, enginedriver, engineman, engineer."

Verbs are used as substantives, as "a stroke, a beat, the breed, a meet, the rise, sewing is a good task, the betrothed met, fighting is a bad trade."

In the English tongue several meanings are given to substantives by endings or terminations, and thus new substantives are made from substantives, adjectives, and verbs; as lover, loveliness, lovership; hardness, hardishness, hardship, hardihood, hardener, hardness; fruitfulness, fruitlessness, fruitiness, fruiterer.

The endings most used are—to show character, condition, or quality, *hood* or *head*, *ship*, *th*, or *ness*, as manhood, knighthood, childhood, hardship, swiftness, manliness, wealth, depth, height; to point out the doer of an act or the member of a profession, *er*, as baker, swimmer, butcher, brewer, lover, shareholder, partner, lawyer, preacher; to show office, employment, or condition, *ship*, as "stewardship, kingship, partnership, mastership, lordship, aldermanship, preachership;" to show dominion, jurisdiction, or condition, *dom*, *wick*, *rick*, as "kingdom, earldom, freedom, bailiwick, bishoprick;" to show character and sometimes a strongly marked habit, *ard*, as "drunkard, laggard, dotard, sluggish;" to show the place of occupation, *y*,

as "brewery, colliery;" *ful* to show quantity, as "handful, pailful;" *man, woman, boy, girl*, to show employment, as "boatman, husbandman, needlewoman, cowboy, milkgirl."

For words of French, Latin, or Greek stock, other endings are sometimes put—to show condition, act,\* or habit, *ment, age, ery*, as "commandment, government, usage, peerage, slavery, monkery;" to show the doer of an action or the member of a profession, *ian*, as "musician, physician;" to show office or employment, *y* or *ty*, as "royalty, duchy, mayoralty, shrievalty, barony, presidency, county."

In English the doer or actor is shown by the ending *er*, and the one acted upon by the ending *ed* or *en*, as lover, beloved, employer, employed, striker, stricken; but in words of French or Latin stock *er* or *or* and *ee* are sometimes used, the latter mostly by lawyers. Thus there are the following:—"Orator, dictator, vendor, legatee, allottee, nominee, guarantee, trustee, presentee; assigner, assignee; drawer, drawee; employer, employee; feoffer, feoffee; grantor, grantee; lessor, lessee; mortgager, mortgagee; payer, payee; referor, referee."

Many persons, instead of writing *employee*, think to make the word more French by writing *employée*; whereas *employée* in French stands for a woman employed, *employé* for a man employed.

Diminutives are words for showing youth or smallness, and are either simple or compound. Compounds are made by putting other words at the beginning or end. The endings are *ling, kin, ock, en, el, et*. *Ling* is the one most used, as "duckling, gosling, sapling, lordling, groundling, witting." To show contempt the ending "*ster*" is sometimes used, as "trickster, rhymester, gamester."

Among words of offspring are the following, those of the male kind being used for small males, those of the female kind for small females:—

Man	} Child, boy,	Hare	Leveret
Woman	} girl	Cock	Chick
Horse	} Foal, colt,	Goose	Gosling
Mare	} filly	Duck	Duckling
Bull	} Calf	Turkey	Poult
Cow	} Heifer	Swan	Cygnets
Sheep	Lamb	Owl	Owlet
Goat	Kid	Eagle	Eaglet
Stag, deer	Fawn	Frog	Tadpole
Swine	Pig	Fish	Fry
Dog	Pup	Tree	Seedling, sapling
Cat	Kitten	Plant	Seedling
Bear	Cub		

Other diminutives are—

Man, mannikin, dwarf; Horse, cob, pony; Ass, aseling; Lamb, lambkin; Cock, cockerel; Pike, pickerel; Salmon, salmonpeel, samlet; Trout, troutlet; Hill, hillock; River, rivulet; Stream, streamlet; Isle or Island, eye, ait, islet.

Words of endearment are made with the endings *ling* or *y*, as "darling, fondling, Neddy, Willy, Dicky, Milly, Gerty, doggy, Kitty, Dolly.

Names of nations are made by the endings *e, sh* or *ch, ing, er, man, an* or *on*; as the Goths, the Longbeards or Lombards, Franks, Manks, Jutes, English, Irish, Welsh, Cornish, Kentish, Scotch, Dutch, French, a Fleming, an Easterling, the Warings, the Thuring, Londoner, Vermonteer, Highlander, Lowlander, Hamburger, New Englander, Poland, New Yorker, Marylander, New Hollander, Norman, Scotchmen, Yorkshirewoman, Frisian, Saxon, Burgundian, Briton, Cambrian, Northumbrian, Italian, Virginian, Kentuckian, Californian.

Names of races or families (patronymics) are formed with nearly the same endings. Thus we say, the Hares, the Bulls, the Gibbs, the Carrolls, the Merovings, the Wilsongs.



speaking of all the English and Saxon commonwealths together, said English Saxon-land; but in this word Saxon was brought in as a lower term.

The ending *ist* commonly marks the race or nation; the ending *er* or *lander*, the land of birth. A Dutchman, Irishman, or Negro, born in New England or New York, is an American—a New Englander, a New Yorker; an Englishman so born is American, New English, or Americo-English. Confusion sometimes happens where the name of an old race and a land are given to a new race living in the same land, or where the name of one member of a race is wrongly given to all. No one calls those now living in Judea or Jewry, Jews; nor the Scandinavians of Old England in Jutland, English; nor are the Jews called anywhere otherwise than by their race: but the people now living in Saxony are called Saxons; in Swabia, Swabians; and in Burgundy, Burgundians. The Scotch or Irish Celts, having driven the Cambrian race out of North Britain, the land was named Scotland; and thus the Irish race in the Highlands, and the English race in the Lowlands, are both spoken of as Scotch, and the dialect of the Lowlands called Scotch. The English in this island are spoken of as Britons and British; and some writers say British literature, British law, and the British constitution, terms properly applied to the Welsh literature, law, and constitution, which have no connection with those of the English, nor share in them. The British language has even been spoken of. On the other hand, as in the Roman times, the Saxons were among the first Germanic people whom the Celts knew, they called all others Saxons, as they do the English to this day. The Turks, in the like way, having first known the French leaders, call all West-Europeans Franks.

By putting together or compounding English words, meaning can be shown as well by putting together Greek or Latin words, while such English words are by most better understood.

The flood of Latinism nearly-overwhelmed our mother tongue with long and uncouth words seeming to have some new meaning. In this flood English would have been swept away, had it not been for the "vulgarity" of speech of common folks, and for the hold which the Bible and some other old books have had, thereby keeping the English tongue alive in the teeth of grammarians and scholars, who had doomed its words and warped its grammar into "classical" shapes. It has, however, become well enough known, that those books of which the words are most English are ever best liked, and this teaching has not been lost on our speakers and writers, though it does too often happen that Latin or Greek words are needlessly put forward as fine words.

There is a tale of the clergyman of some lonely township, who laid down for himself the law of preaching in common English. A learned brother clergyman, having asked to preach for him, he unwillingly gave way, but with this pledge, that none but common English words should be written in the sermon. After churchtime the preacher asked his friend, whether the pledge had been broken. "You did well enough," said the other, "but you spoke of *felicity*, and I do not think all your hearers understood it; I should say *happiness*." "I can hardly think," said the other, "that any one does not know what *felicity* means, and we will ask this ploughman near us. Come hither, my man! you have been at church and heard the sermon; you heard me speak of *felicity*, do you know what it means?" "Eea, sir!" "Well, what does *felicity* mean?" "Summut in the inside of a pig, but I can't say altogether what." Speakers and preachers may bear this in mind.

Some words are distinguished by GENDER, kind or sex, being either of the MASCULINE, Male or Manly kind, or of the FEMININE, Female or Womanly kind. Most words are NEUTER or Neither of the Masculine or Feminine Gender. "A man, a horse, a gander, a milter, nephews, shepherds, knights, priest, Frenchman," are of the Masculine Gender; "Woman, mare, goose, sows, spawner, niece, shepherdesses, priestess, quakeress," are of the Feminine Gender; "Sun, kindred, worth, worthlessness, kingdom," are Neuter or of Neither Gender.

Some words are Common to both genders, being used for masculine and feminine, as "child, goat, friend, neighbour, musician, cat, fish."

Substantives of neither gender are figuratively or by way of speech sometimes called he or she; as we say of the sun, "he is setting;" of a ship, "she sails fast;" of an engine, "she runs well."

The words used figuratively in the masculine gender are the sun, time, death, winter, autumn or fall, summer, love, a harrow, a shovel, a prong, the names of great rivers, the Mississippi, old father Thames, the Hudson, the Murray, the St. Lawrence.

The words used figuratively in the feminine gender are more in number, as the moon, the evening and morning stars, the spring, the earth, a land (England, America, Scotland, Caledonia, Ireland, Erin, Pennsylvania, France), a town (London, Antwerp, Boston, Modern Athens, the Empire City, Sydney), virtue, luck or fortune, hope, faith, nature, the church, a ship, an engine, a mine, a plough.

To some beings, where the gender is not known, a gender is assigned or avoided. Of the dog, horse, ass, elephant, buffalo, we say *he*; of the cat, hare, sheep, goat, duck, we say *she*; of a babe, lamb, calf, mouse, rat, rabbit, squirrel, guinea pig, bird, fish, fly, we say *it*.

When speaking of lands, as Old England, the Mother Country, the Seagirt Isle, Cambria, East Anglia, Britannia, Scotia, Hibernia, the Sister Isle, the Green Isle, America, France, we use the feminine; but for nations we use masculine epithets, as English, Welsh, Americo-English, Portuguese; or masculine symbols, as John Bull, Sawney, Paddy, Brother Jonathan, Uncle Sam, Jack Spaniard.

The word fatherland is sometimes used after the Low Dutch and High Dutch.

In the English tongue there are three ways of showing the gender:—

1. By other words; as "man, woman;" "horse, mare;" "king, queen."
2. By the ending; as "lad, lass;" "actor, actress."
3. By putting a word before the substantive; as "a man-child or male child, a female child;" "a he-goat, a she-goat;" "a jackass, a she-ass;" "a man-cook, a woman-cook;" "a bull-whale, a cow-whale."

The ending most used for the masculine gender is *er*, and for the feminine gender *ess* and sometimes *ine*.

The following are words of gender belonging to the first and second kind:—

Alfred, Elfida	Gentleman, gentlewoman,	Merman, mermaid
Bachelor, spinster, maid	lady	Milker, spawner (of fish)
Baron, baronne	George, Georgiana	Monk, nun
Beau, belle	Goodman, goody	Monsieur, madame
Boar, sow	Grandair, grandam	Mynheer, mevrouw
Boy, girl	Hart, roe	Nephew, niece
Bridegroom, bride	Hero, heroine	Ox, heifer
Bridesman, bridesmaid	Herr, frau	Palsgrave, palsgravine
Buck, doe	Horse, mare	Papa, mama
Bull, cow	Husband, wife	Rake, jilt
Bullock, heifer	Jack, Jenny, Gill	Ram, ewe
Charles, Caroline	John, Joan, Jane	Rhinegrave, Rhinegravine
Cock, hen	Julius, Julia	Ruff, reeve
Colt, filly	Kinsman, kinswoman	Signor, signora
Czar, czarina	King, queen	Sir, madam
Daddy, mammy	Knight, dame	Sire, dam
Dog, bitch	Lad, lass	Sloven, slut, slattern
Don, donna	Landgrave, landgravine	Son, daughter
Drake, duck	Landlord, landlady	Stag, hind
Earl, countess	Lord, lady	Steer, heifer
Ethelred, Ethelreda	Male, female	Sultan, sultana
Father, mother	Man, woman	Swain, nymph
Fishmonger, fishwoman	Margrave, margravine	Uncle, aunt
Fox, vixen	Marquis, marchioness, marquise	Widower, widow
Friar, nun	Master, mistress	Wildgrave, Wildgravine
Gaffer, gammer	Master, miss	Wizard, witch
Gander, goose		Youth, maid, damsel

*Ster* was the Old English ending for the feminine gender; as singer, songster (sometimes songstress); spinner, spinster; weaver, webster; baker, baxter; seamer, seamster (sometimes seamstress). *Trix* is put sometimes for the ending of words used by lawyers; as Administrator, administratrix; Executor, executrix; Testator, testatrix.

The following are words having the feminine ending in *ess*:—

Abbot, abbess	Archer, archeress	Count, countess
Actor, actress	Author, authoress	Coheir, coheirness
Administrator, administratrix	Baron, baroness	Dauphin, dauphiness
Adulterer, adulteress	Baronet, baronetess	Deacon, deaconess
Ambassador, ambassadress	Benefactor, benefactress	Dominican, dominicaness
Arbiter, arbitress	Canon, canoness	Duke, duchess
Archduke, archduchess	Chanter, chantress	Electer, electress
	Conductor, conductress	Emperor, empress

Enchanter, enchantress	Manager, manageress	Protector, protectress
Executor, executress	Marquis, marchioness	Quaker, quakeress
Founder, foundress	Master, mistress	Sexton, sextoness
Giant, giantess	Mayor, mayoress	Shepherd, shepherdess
Goatherd, goatherdess	Murderer, murderess	Sorcerer, sorceress
God, goddess	Negro, negress	Steward, stewardess
Governor, governess	Patron, patroness	Suitor, suitress
Heir, heiress	Peer, peeress	Tailor, tailoress
Host, hostess	Poet, poetess	Testator, testatrix
Hunter, huntress	Priest, priestess	Tiger, tigress
Jesuit, Jesuitess	Prince, princess	Traitor, traitress
Jew, Jewess	Prior, prioress	Tutor, tutress
Laundrer, laundress	Progenitor, progenitress	Viscount, viscountess
Leopard, leopardess	Prophet, prophetess	Waiter, waitress
Lion, lioness	Proprietor, proprietress	

Many masculines and feminines are made with the endings *man* and *woman*, and *boy* and *maid* or *girl*; as "Scotchman, Scotchwoman; Frenchman, Frenchwoman; Freeman, free-woman; Horseman, horsewoman; Washerwoman, washerwoman; Milkman, milkwoman, milkboy, milkmaid, milkgirl; Townsman, townswoman.

For Number of words we look whether a word means *one* or *more* than *one*, these being the only numbers taken into account in English Grammar. These numbers are called Singular or onelike, and Plural or manyfold.

The Singular number takes in words meaning only one thing, or several things in one; as a man, a horse, an hour, worth, a sun, a pair, a host.

The Singular number will commonly take the indefinite article *a* or *an*.

The plural number takes in words meaning more than one; as men, horses, evils, hosts.

The Plural number will not take *a* or *an*; we cannot say, a men, a horses, an ashes; but all words which will not take *a* or *an* are not, therefore, plural.

Some names are the same for both numbers: such are

Alms	Deer	Haddock	Means	Salmon	Tench
Apparatus	Folk	Heathen	Neat	Score	Trout
Bream	Fry	Hiatus	Perch	Series	Turbot
Carp	Gentry	Hose	Residue	Skate	Vermin
Cod	Grouse	Mackarel	Rest	Species	Youth

Some of these take a *plural* form for some meanings, as "Folks say," "The youths were at play."

Collective names, or names of multitude, have the same quality, and other words used with them are made either singular or plural. Thus we say, "A gang of thieves has robbed the house." "The ministry are unworthy of trust." "The ministry is unworthy of trust."

Collective nouns act too sometimes as extended or absolute plurals. Thus we say, "A man, men, mankind, or all men;" "A ship, the ships, *shipping*, or ships generally."

The following are some of the names of multitude:—

Mankind, womankind, folk, kinsfolk, household, family, people, nation, tribe, race.

Populace, nobility, mob, gentry, laity, clergy, multitude.

Ministry, cabinet, church, sect, congress, parliament, legislature, court, press, vestry, convention, meeting, caucus, assembly.

Gang, crew, fellowship, brotherhood, community, company, body, party, faction, crowd, band, fraternity.

Herd, flock, covey, flight, shoal, swarm.

Proprietary.

Cattle, swine, deer, sheep, poultry, game, fish, fry, shellfish, vermin.

Shipping.

Some substantives take the singular form, as wheat, pitch, gold, sloth, eloquence; others the plural, as scissors, shipping, cattle, politics.

Although it is held that such words as wheat are to be taken in the singular only, yet the practice has taken root of speaking of "a wheat," "an oak," "wheats" and "oakens" "wools," when speaking of the several kinds of corn or wool.

Some substantives, plural in look, are singular in meaning ; as *aloes*, *news*.

The following is a list of some words which are singular, and commonly do not take the article, as they are used in a general sense. The whole number of these words is very great.

Alabaster	Corn, and gene-	Hardware	Musketry	Scum
Ale	rally the several	Hartshorn	Mustard	Silver
Alspice	kinds of it	Hay	Naught	Slotch
Ambergris	Cotton	Hemp	News	Slush
Apparel	Cream	Hogwash	Odium	Soda
Aquafortis	Cribbage	Hollands	Oil	Soot
Arrack	Cricket	Honey	Opium	Smoke
Asparagus	Crockery	Injustice	Oratory	The several kinds
Avarice	Crops of most	Insolence	Parsley	of Spices
Aught	kinds	Iron	Pastry	The several kinds
Bacon	Darkness	Ironmongery	Pepper	of Spirits
Backgammon	Decorum	Isinglass	Perry	Spittle
Barley	Dirt	Jewellery	Pertness	Spruce
Barn	Down	Justice	Pewter	Starch
Blood	Earthenware	Lard	Phrenology	Stout
Brandy	Eloquence	Laudanum	Photography	Sugar
Brass	Elysium	Lead	Pitch	Tallow
Brawn	Engineering	Leather	Plate	Tapioca
Bread	Filth	Light	Pomatum	Tar
Breeze	Finery	Liquorice	Pondfish	Tea
Brightness	Flax	Loo	Porcelain	Tin
Buckwheat	Flesh and its kinds	Luck	Porter	Tobacco
Bulk	Flour	Madder	Pride	Turpentine
Butter	Fodder	Maize	Punch	Twine
Caoutchouc	Frippery	Malt	Rhetoric	Venison
Celery	Fuel	Marrow	Rhubarb	The several Vices
Charcoal	The names of	Mead	Rice	Vinegar
Cheese	many Games	Meal	Rosemary	The several Virtues
Chees	Geography	Neckness	Rouge	Wax
Chocolate	Geology	Mesmerism	Rubbish	Wheat
Cider	Gin	The several kinds	Rue	Whey
Cinnamon	Ginger	of Metals	Rum	Whist
Clover	Glue	Mint	Rye	Whitewash
Cocoa	Gold	Mire	Sage	Wine
Coffee	Grain	Muck	Sago	Wool
Coke	Grease	Mucus	Saliva	Yeast
Copper	Gutta serena	Mud	Sap	Zink

The following is a list of words which are plural only :—

Aborigines	Drawers	Inwards	Piles	Statistics
Acoustics	Eaves	Kalends	Pincers or pinch-	Stays
Aeronautics	Economics	Kinsfolk	ers	Strangles
Amends	Ethics	Lees	Pliers	Suds
Analytics	Fillings	Leavings	Pneumatics	Sundries
Annals	Fives	Literati	Poetics	Sweepings
Antipodes	Forceps	Maccaroni	Politics	Tactics
Archives	Freshes	Magnetics	Premises	Teens
Ashes	Giblets	Mathematics	Pulse	Thanks
Belles Lettres	Glanders	Matins	Regalia	Tidings
Billows	Gnomonics	Measles	Reins	Tongs
Billiards	Goods	Mechanics	Riches	Trappings
Breeches	Goggles	Metaphysics	Rickets	Trousers
Calends	Grains	Middlings	Scissors	Tweezers
Castors	Greaves	Minutiae	Settlings	Umbles
Cates	Grits	Mneumonics	Shambles	Vermicelli
Cattle	Grounds	Movables	Shears	Vespers
Catoptics	Headquarters	Mumps	Shipping	Victuals
Chops	Hemorrhoids	Nippers	Skimmings	Vitals
Clothes	Hotcockles	Nones	Skittles	Vives
Compasses	Hustings	Nuptials	Snuffers	Wages
Conics	Hydrodynamics	Obsequies	Spatterdashies	Withers
Credentials	Hydrostatics	Odds	Spectacles	Wrekin (the
Diploptics	Hydraulics	Optics	Spherics	clouds)
Dominoes	Hysterics	Phonics	Staggers	Yellows
Druggists	Ideas	Physics	Statics	

Although these words do not take the singular form as substantives, unless for other meanings, they do as adjectives. Thus we say, a billiardtable, a giletple, a staymaker, a transcriber.

The plural number of substantives is mostly made in writing by adding *s* to the singular; as horse, horses; ship, ships; thought, thoughts.

When the substantive singular ends in *x*, *ch* soft, *th* or *s*, the plural is made by adding *es*; as box, boxes; birch, birches; sash, sashes; kiss, kisses; prospectus, prospectuses. In words of Greek and Latin stock ending in *ch* hard, where it is spoken as *k*, the plural is made in the common way; as monarch, monarchs; distich, distichs.

Substantives ending in *f* or *fe*, make this ending into *ves* for the plural; as loaf, loaves; half, halves; wharf, wharves; wife, wives. Grief and some words from the French, as "relief," "reproof," "chief" and its compounds, "safe," make the plural by putting *s*, as do substantives ending in *ff*; as ruff, ruffs; except staff, staves.

Some substantives of foreign stock in *o* make the plural in *es*, as cargo, hero, negro, mulatto, potato, calico, echo, volcano, manifesto; others in *s*, as folio, nuncio, punctilio, seraglio, sambo.

A substantive ending in *y* or *i*, without any other vowel just before it, changes the *y* or *i* into *ies* for the plural; as fly, flies; beauty, beauties; liberty, liberties; alkali, alkalis. The *y* is not changed when there is another vowel joined to it; as key, keys; day, days; delay, delays; attorney, attorneys.

For speaking, the law of the plural must be otherwise stated. Words ending in a sharp mute sound, as *p*, *t*, *k*, *f*, *th* (bath), with or without a still *e*, make the plural in *s*, as haps, capes, hats, hates, oaks, ifs, baths; words ending in other letters, in *z*, as ebbz, headz, hidez, eggz, leaguez, ellz, filez, hemz, rhymz, henz, minez, ringz, barz, bearz, boothz, lovz, dayz, hawz, beez, fiez, foez, boyz, looz, cowz, newz.

The compound consonants follow the law of the simple consonants. Thus, lofts, silks, acts, halts, healths, mints, tenths, works, birds, carts, hasps; but holdz, helmz, endz.

The *s* sounds of *s*, *sh*, *j*, *ch*, *z*, take another syllable for the plural, which makes *es*; as kiss, kiss-es; box, box-es; prince, prince-es; ash, ash-es; page, page-es; birch, birch-es; blaze, blaze-es.

Some of the commonest substantives make their plurals in writing and speaking otherwise than by putting *s* after the singular, though sometimes in the latter way too. They are as follows:—

Beet, bees	Man, men
Brother, brethren, brothers	Mouse, mice
Child, children	Ox, oxen
Cow, cows, kine	Pea, pease, peas
Die, dice ( <i>for gambling</i> )	Pie, pice ( <i>Hindoo money</i> )
Foot, feet	Penny, pence, pennies
Goose, geese	Shoe, shoes, shoon
Hog, hogs, swine	Sow, sows, swine
Louse, lice	Tooth, teeth

The compounds follow the same law; as woman, women; gentleman, gentlemen; grandchild, grandchildren; halfbrother, halfbrethren; shrewmouse, shrewmice; halfpenny, halfpence; dogtooth, dogteeth. German, however, is made in the plural Germans; Alleman, Allemanni; Marcoman, Marcomanni. Turkman, Mussulman, talisman, leman, and cayman, add *s* for the plural. Newman, Bulman, &c., and the like names of men, make in the plural the Newmans, the Bulmans. The coins threepence, fourpence, sixpence, make in the plural threepences, fourpences, sixpences, as "He gave me two sixpences for a shilling." "Die," for coining, makes the plural "die



Compound words make the plural on the last word ; as husbandman, husbandmen ; manstealer, manstealers ; handful, handfuls.

Where the compound is formed with foreign words, or in an irregular way, the plural form is commonly given to the leading substantive, as courts-martial, fathers-in-law, cousins-german, hangers-on.

No law can be laid down as to all these words ; we say knights-errant, knight-errants, Lord chancellors, Lords chancellor.

The following foreign words from the Hebrew, Greek, and Latin tongues make their plurals thus :—

Addendu , addendums <i>and</i> addenda	Herr, herren ( <i>High Dutch</i> )
Amanuensis, amanuenses	Frau, frauen ( <i>High Dutch</i> )
Analysis, analyses	Hypothesis, hypotheses
Animalcule or animalculum, animal- cules or animalcula	Index, indexes ( <i>for tables of con- tents</i> ), indices ( <i>in algebra</i> )
Antithesis, antitheses	Larva, larvae, larvæ
Appendix, appendixes <i>and</i> appen- dices	Lamina, laminæ
Arcanum, arcana	Madame, mesdames
Automaton, automatons <i>and</i> auto- mata	Magus, magi
Axis, axes	Medium, mediums <i>and</i> media
Basis, bases	Memorandum, memorandums <i>and</i> memoranda
Calx, calces	Metamorphosis, metamorphoses
Cherub, cherubs, cherubin	Monsieur, messieurs
Crisis, crises	Nebule or nebula, nebulae, nebules
Criterion, criteria	Oasis, oases
Datum, data	Phenomenon, phenomenons <i>and</i> phenomena
Desideratum, desiderata	Polyp or polypus, polyps <i>and</i> po- lypi
Dieresis, diereses	Radius, radiuses, radii
Dictum, dictums, dicta	Senor, senores ( <i>Spanish</i> )
Effluvium, effluvia	Senora, senoras ( <i>Spanish</i> )
Ellipsis, ellipses	Seraph, seraphs and seraphim
Emphasis, emphases	Signor, signori ( <i>Italian</i> )
Encomium, encomiums <i>and</i> en- comia	Signora, signore ( <i>Italian</i> )
Erratum, errata	Stamen, stamens <i>and</i> stamina
Focus, focuses, foci	Stratum, stratum <i>and</i> strata
Genius, geniuses ( <i>for people of genius</i> ), genii ( <i>for spirits</i> )	Vortex, vortexes <i>and</i> vortices
Heer, heeren ( <i>Flemish</i> )	Parenthesis, parentheses <i>and</i> paren- theses

Participial substantives in *ed* are of both numbers, as “He spoke to his beloved,” “The betrothed met.” Most of those in *ing* are singular, but some make a plural in *s*, as—takings, havings, sayings, doings, pickings, writings.

Some words, being put generally, admit of the singular being used after numerals or names of quantity in a singular form, as “ten stone, ten score, a thousand horse, six fathom, ten sail of the line.” Such are—

*Quantities* : Brace, couple, pair, half dozen, half score, dozen score, half hundred, hundred, gross, thousand, myriad, million.

*Weights and Measures* : Ounce, pound, stone, hundredweight, ton, gallon, bushel, foot, mile, acre.

*Moneys* : Shilling, pound, dollar, doubloon, guinea.

*Miscellaneous* : Sail, stand, file, kind.

We say "ten ships," but "ten sail," not "ten sails." Other sayings are "A hundred stand of arms," "Two file of grenadiers," "Ten kind of seeds."

In English, substantives have two Cases, the Simple and the Possessive; as a man, a man's; the children, the children's.

The Simple Case expresses the name of a thing, the subject of a verb, or the object acted upon; as "A man talks," "Alfred helps Edwin," "Richard lives in London."

Although no change of form takes place, grammarians define the substantive which is the subject of the verb as being in the *nominative case*, as "A man," "Alfred," "Richard," in the last sentences; and they define the substantive acted upon by the verb or preposition as being in the *objective* or *accusative case*, as "Edwin," "London."

The Possessive Case shows the relation of ownership, possession, or property, and is made by putting after the substantive an apostrophe (') with the letter *s*; as "My father," "My father's house." When the plural ends in *s*, the apostrophe is put, but the other *s* left out; as "The horses' saddles," "The goldsmiths' fellowship."

Although in writing the possessive case is made with *s*, yet it is not so in the spoken tongue, the possessive being made like the plural. Thus we say, Jack's, Ralph's, book's, dog's; but bird'z, cow'z, bull'z, horse'-ez, page'-ez.

When the singular ends in *ss* the apostrophe only is sometimes added, as "For goodness' sake," "For happiness' sake."

When a substantive is put next after a verb it sometimes takes a dative meaning, as "Alfred gave Edwin a book," that is, "Alfred gave to Edwin a book;" but if the object given is placed next the verb, then the preposition must be put before the other substantive, as "Alfred gave a book to Edwin."

English substantives are declined thus:—

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Simple Case,</i>	A man	Men
<i>Possessive Case,</i>	A man's	Men's
<i>Simple Case,</i>	The horse	The horses
<i>Possessive Case,</i>	The horse's	The horses'
<i>Simple Case,</i>	Goodness	
<i>Possessive Case,</i>	Goodness's or goodness'	

In Latin, Greek, or High Dutch, these changes of meaning are brought about by changes of endings, as in *vir*, Latin for a man.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nominative Case,</i>	<i>Vir</i>	<i>Viri</i>
<i>Genitive,</i>	<i>Viri</i>	<i>Virorum</i>
<i>Dative,</i>	<i>Viro</i>	<i>Viris</i>
<i>Accusative,</i>	<i>Virum</i>	<i>Viros</i>

In French these changes are brought about by the use of the prepositions.

When a name is compounded of several words the sign of the possessive case is commonly given to the last, as "The Governor of New York's message," "The Mayor of Sydney's opinion."

Two substantives in the possessive case sometimes follow each other, as "My wife's brother's land."

The order of the simple case may be varied so long as the meaning is clear. Thus we say and write, "Such tricks hath strong imagination," "Him bear all the prophets witness."

Sometimes the possessive sign and the preposition *of* are both used with the same word, as "This picture of my friend's," meaning "This picture belonging to my friend." "This picture of my friend," means "This is a likeness or painting of my friend." "My friend's picture," may bear either of the other meanings.

rather better, rather the best;" "very good, very best;" "almost good, almost the best;" "far better," "much better."

Besides these, *better, best, worse, worst*, are used with participles; as *better looking, best looking, worse looking, worst looking*.

By using the adverb *as*, a comparative signification is given to the simple state; thus, "As high as St. Paul's," "Not so high as St. Paul's."

*So* is put before an adjective to show comparison, as "This is so good," "So good a man must be loved." We likewise say *so very*, as "This is so very good." *Such* has likewise this meaning, as "Such a good man must be loved."

Many of these words of comparison have peculiarities of position; we say "So good a man must be loved," "A man so good must be loved;" not "A so good man must be loved." We say "Such a good man must be loved;" and in the plural, "Such good men must be loved." We do not use *so* in the plural and say, "So good men must be loved." We say "rather better, almost better, far better, much better;" but for the superlative, "very best, rather the best, almost the best, nearly the best, far the best, much the best."

Some words, mostly of foreign stock, being comparative or superlative in their meaning, do not admit of the comparative or superlative form being given to them. We cannot say "more superior, most superior;" that is, in English, "more higher or more upper, most higher or most uppermost." Adjectives absolute in their meaning have no superlative; what is "right" cannot be "more right;" what is "circular" cannot be "more circular."

Simple only:—Right, straight, perfect, unique, absolute, universal, chief, abstract, simple, concrete, sovereign, superfluous, everlasting, eternal, immortal, yearly, monthly, &c., immense, immeasurable, unbounded, unlimited, endless, infinite, unparallelled, certain, round, circular, threecornered, triangular, fourcornered, square, pentagonal, central, perpendicular, horizontal.

Comparative only:—Superior, inferior, exterior, interior, anterior, posterior, prior, ulterior, senior, junior, major, minor, ceterior. It is much better, however, to take English words as upper, lower, outer, inner.

Superlative only:—Extreme, supreme, superlative.

The numbers are of several kinds called *cardinal*, as one, two, three, &c.; *ordinal*, as first, second, third, &c. These again give rise to other words, substantives, verbs, and adverbs.

The cardinal numbers are adjectives, as one, two, three, four, &c.; these are all English but "million." All these, except one, are plural. We say, one man, three horses.

The ordinal numbers, or numbers of order, are adjectives; they are formed from English words, as first, third, fourth, fifth, hundredth; or from Latin or French words, as premier or prime, second, decimal, undecimal, duodecimal, centesimal, millesimal; of these, "second" only is commonly used.

The collective numbers are, dozen, score (twenty), thrave (two dozen), hundred, gross (twelve times twelve), myriad (ten thousand), million, billion, and their parts, as half score, quarter hundred. The singular is often used with the collective numbers, as a score horse, a dozen pound. The collective numbers are likewise often put in the singular, as six score horses, six score men, three dozen spades. The same is done with the collectives for two, "pair, brace, couple;" for three, "leash, trio;" as "three couple of hounds," "four brace of birds." We say, too, "a ten pound note," "a ten dollar bill," "a ten rupee piece," "a two foot rule."

The *partitive numbers* are, a unit or whole, a half or moiety, a third or *terce*, a fourth or *quarter*, a fifth or *quint*, a sixth, seventh, eighth or half

quarter, ninth, and tenth or tithe. The others are made from the cardinal numbers by adding *th*, as a hundredth, a twentieth. Some of these numbers are adjectives, as "a whole cask, a half cask, a quarter cask;" others are substantives, as "a sixth of a foot, an eighth of a pound."

The multiplicative numbers are adjective, and are formed with the ending *fold*, as—onefold, twofold, threefold, fourfold;" or by words of foreign stock, as—single, double, treble or triple, quadruple, quintuple, &c.

Another class of numbers which are distributive are adverbial, as—one by one; or by twos, two by two; or by threes, three by three. In this class the cardinal numbers take a further plural form, as—by twos, by threes.

A class of adjectives having the meaning of a kind of number or order, is primary, secondary, tertiary.

The partitive numbers may be used with the article before or after, in some cases to vary the meaning; as "Half a dollar," speaking of the price; "a half dollar," speaking of the coin; "half the dollar," speaking of halving a dollar coin; "the half dollar," speaking of a particular half-dollar coin. We say "a quarter of a bushel" and "a quarter-bushel" measure; "half an hour," "the half hour;" "a tithe pig," or one of ten pigs, and "a tithe of a pig."

From the adjective numbers several adverbs of number are made, by giving the ending *ly*; as firstly, thirdly, fourthly; singly, doubly, triply; primarily, secondarily; wholly, quarterly, half quarterly; decimally. Adverbs of time are once, twice, thrice, four times. The verbs of number are, to halve, quarter, and tithe or decimate; to single out, to double, triple, quadruple. Substantives taken from numbers besides the partitives, are unity, duality, triplicity, trinity, quaternity.

An adjective may be put with a pronoun or verb, as "He is *good*," "To do *good*."

Although the adjective is commonly put last, its position may be altered, as "*Good* is he," "*Good* is it so to do."

## ADVERBS.

AN ADVERB is a word added to another, to show its kind or quality, and may be put with a substantive, adjective, pronoun, verb, or adverb; as a *truly* happy man, *very* great worth, he reads *very* well.

Some adverbs are compared as adjectives; as—soon, sooner, soonest; often, oftener, oftenest; worthily, more worthily, most worthily, less worthily, least worthily, very worthily.

The following are thus compared:—

Oft,	} oftener, oftenest
Often	
Well, better, best	
Ill, worse, worst	
Little, less, least	

Much, more, most
Far, farther, farthest
Forth, further, furthest
— rather —

Some words are both adjectives and adverbs, as—more, much.

Most adverbs are made from adjectives and participles by putting the ending *ly* or *y*, meaning like; as—great, greatly; wise, wisely; noble, nobly; able, ably; loving, lovingly. Most adjectives can thus be made into adverbs. Adverbs are likewise made by adding *wise* or *ways* to substantives, adjectives, and pronouns; as Englishwise, Irishwise, lengthwise, eitherwise, neitherwise, anywise, likewise.

Adverbs are likewise made by putting the particle *a*, meaning on or at, before a word; as—aboard, ashore, abed, aground, afloat, adrift, ahead, afoot, apickaback, ahorseback, asleep, awake, athirst, adry, ahungry, aside, apart

aforehand, abaft, abroad, abreast, afar, afield, afore, aflat, afresh, again, agone, ago, agog, aloft, alike, akin, alive, along, aloof, aloud, alow, amain, amiss, anew, anights, apace, apiece, aright, awry, around, arow, astray, askance, aslope, astern, asunder, athwart, atilt, atop, atween, atwixt, aware, away, awhile, awork, apeak, astride, astraddle, acold, afire, agape, aghast, alight, alone.

The endings *ward* and *wards* show the direction :—Upward, downward, forward, backward, inward, outward, afterward, onward, hitherward, thitherward, homeward, landward, seaward, rearward, heavenward, leeward, Londonward. We say, "He was homeward bound," "As he was going homewards," the ear being the only leader as to the best form of word.

The endings *side* and *sides* likewise show place :—Inside, outside, beside, topside, underside, bottomside, rightside, leftside, backside, nearside, offside.

The following are some of the several kinds of adverbs :—

1. *Of number* :—Once, twice, thrice.

2. *Of order* :—First, firstly, secondly, thirdly, fourthly, primarily, secondarily, lastly, finally.

3. *Of place* :—Here, there, where, and their compounds; yonder, by, far, near, within, without, nigh, forth, home, instead, upward and words of like ending; aloft, ashore, and most adverbs beginning with the particle *a*; inside, and those ending in *side*.

Here, there, and where, make several compound adverbs of place :—Hence (from here), thence, whence; hither (to here), thither, whither; wheresoever, wherever; whereabouts, thereabouts, whereabouts (about which place); here-against, thereagainst, whereagainst; herefrom, therefrom, wherefrom; herein, therein, wherein; elsewhere, somewhere, everywhere, nowhere, anywhere. It is wrong to say from hence, from whence.

4. *Of time present* :—Now, even now, just now, nowadays, at present, to day, to night.

*Of time past* :—Already, before, formerly, lately, yesterday, yestereve, yesternorn, yesternight, heretofore, theretofore, hitherto, till now, long since, long ago, newly, recently, anciently, of old, till now, erewhile, erst.

*Of time to come* :—To-morrow, yet, not yet, hereafter, thereafter, henceforth, whenceforth, thenceforth, henceforward, thenceforward, whenceforward, by and by, instantly, presently, immediately, straightways, forthwith, soon, ere long, shortly.

*Of time indefinite* :—Of, often, oftentimes, oftentimes, sometime, anytime, meantime, betimes, alltimes, seldom, rarely, meanwhile, longwhile, oftwhiles, somehow, otherwhile, soon, speedily, quickly, daily, weekly, monthly, yearly, always, ever and anon, when, then, always, ever, never, whenever, whensoever, for ever, again, at first, at length, frequently, evermore, everlastingly, endlessly, betweenwhiles.

5. *Of quantity* :—Much, little, enough, enow, sufficiently, abundantly, fully, how much, so much, as much, all, wholly, quite, altogether, ever so.

6. *Of manner and quality or likeness* :—Wisely, quickly, slowly, lovingly, badly, and most adverbs in *ly* and *wise*; well, till, somehow, thus, so, nohow, anyhow, however, howsoever.

7. *Of affirmation* :—Yes, yea, aye, truly, verily, surely, doubtless, indeed, really, certainly, undoubtedly, forsooth, even, even so.

8. *Of doubt* :—Perhaps, peradventure, perchance, possibly, by chance.

9. *Of likelihood or probability* :—Almost, nigh, may be, most likely, very likely.

10. *Of denial* :—No, nay, not, not at all, by no means, in no wise, nohow, *noways*.

11. *Of asking or interrogation* :—How, why, wherefore, whether, whence, &c.

12. *Of likening or comparison* :—More, most, better, best, worse, worst, less, least, very, almost, nearly, barely, rather, little, alike, even, quite, just, hardly, only, but (*for only*), welnigh, likewise, such, so.

*No* is sometimes used purposely with an adjective to give a doubtful meaning, as "*No small fool*," "*No great conjuror*."

Many adverbs are put with verbs ; as "*He has done well*," "*He has done so once*." Some words partake of a substantive and adverbial character, as *much, little, enough, aught, naught, nothing, something*. Thus, "*much* may be done ; *enough* has been done ; it is good *enough* ; he has done a *little* ; he has done *something* good ; he has done *nothing* evil."

*Enow* was formerly the plural of enough.

Adverbs used with verbs may be put before or after ; as "*Well* hath he done," "*He hath done well*," "*He hath well* done."

When an article is used with an adverb, adjectives, and substantives, it is sometimes set before the adverb, and sometimes before the substantive, as the sound or meaning may need. We say, "*An* equally important question," or "*A* question equally important."

When *to, so, as, and how*, are used, the article is put next to the substantive ; as "*I never knew a man so bad*," "*I never knew so bad a man*," "*I did not know how bad a man he was*."

With *quite, altogether, almost, nearly, barely, rather, just, hardly, welnigh*, the article must be set before the substantive or before the adjective ; as "*This is quite a different thing*," "*This is a thing altogether different*," "*This is welnigh the same thing*," "*This is a book nearly new*."

#### PRONOUNS.

A PRONOUN or Forname is one of a set of words used for or instead of other Names, Nouns, or Substantives, to save their too frequent use ; as "*Edward Browning is happy, he is useful, he is kind*," "*England is rich, it is well peopled*."

Pronouns may be classed as PERSONAL, RELATIVE, and ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

The Personal Pronouns are *I, thou, he, she, it*, with their plurals, *We, ye or you, they*. These Pronouns may be considered with reference to Person, Number, Gender, and Case.

There are three Persons ; *I* and *We* being of the first person ; *Thou, Ye, and You*, of the second person ; and *He, she, it, and They*, being of the third person. Thus a person may speak of himself, as *I* did it ; or several persons may speak of themselves, as *We* did it ; secondly, one may speak of the person or persons addressed, as *Thou* didst it, *Ye* did it ; and thirdly, one may speak of some other person or persons, as *He* did it, *She* did it, *They* did it.

The numbers are two, singular and plural ; as *I, thou, he she, it*, singular ; and *We, ye, you, they*, plural.

For some time the practice has become very common of giving the second person plural *You*, with its derivatives, a singular as well as a plural meaning, and it is spoken to one person only. "*You* did it," may mean that one did it. *Thou* and *thine* are used in addressing the Almighty, in religious writings, in the higher works of poetry and prose, and commonly by many persons in the country townships of England and New England, and by Quakers or members of the Society of Friends.

*We* and *our* for *I* and *my* are used by presidents, kings, governors, ambassadors, mayors, bishops, writers, editors, or other heads or representatives of communities ; as "*We, Elizabeth, Queen of England, hereby command*," "*We (the Times or New York Herald) are of opinion*."

*Ye* is now mostly used solemnly and in poetry.

Gender is distinguished in the third person singular; as *He* did it, *She* did it. The plural *They* does not distinguish gender. *It* is of neither gender, and is used for things which have not life, for young living beings, and for beings of a doubtful gender. The indefinite pronoun *One* is likewise used in the singular for a being of doubtful gender, or for a thing of neither gender; as "*One* may ask without being heard." The indefinite pronoun *Some* is used in the same way in the plural; as "*Some* think so," "*Some* are well made." *One* is likewise sometimes used with special reference to the person speaking, as "*One* is apt to think of *one's* self."

Personal Pronouns have three cases; the Simple or Nominative, the Possessive or Genitive, and the Objective. The Objective has the powers of the Latin Dative and Accusative; as "*Give him that*," meaning, give that to him; "*Strike him dead!*" in which latter there is only an accusative meaning.

These Pronouns are thus declined:—

<i>Singular. Plural.</i>			<i>Singular. Plural.</i>		
<i>Simple or Nom.</i>	<i>I</i>	<i>We</i>	<i>Simple or Nom.</i>	<i>He</i>	} <i>They</i>
<i>Possessive</i>	<i>Mine</i>	<i>Ours</i>	<i>Possessive</i>	<i>His</i>	
<i>Objective</i>	<i>Me</i>	<i>Us</i>	<i>Objective</i>	<i>Him</i>	
			<i>Simple or Nom.</i>	<i>She</i>	
			<i>Possessive</i>	<i>Hers</i>	} <i>Theirs</i>
<i>Simple or Nom.</i>	<i>Thou</i>	<i>Ye or You</i>	<i>Objective</i>	<i>Her</i>	
<i>Possessive</i>	<i>Thine</i>	<i>Yours</i>	<i>Simple or Nom.</i>	<i>It</i>	
<i>Objective</i>	<i>Thee</i>	<i>You</i>	<i>Possessive</i>	<i>Its</i>	
			<i>Objective</i>	<i>It</i>	} <i>Them.</i>

After the adjectives *like* and *unlike* the objective case is used; as "*The portrait is like him*;" "*The portrait is unlike her*."

Relative Pronouns are those which relate to or bear upon some word or saying going before, which is thence called the antecedent or forerunner. They are of both numbers, and are *who*, *which*, *that*; as "*The man is happy who lives virtuously*."

*What* is a relative, which takes in both the antecedent and the relative, and stands for *that which*; as "*This is what I wanted*," that is to say, "*the thing, or that which, I wanted*."

*Who* is applied to persons, *which* most commonly to animals other than man and to things; as "*He is a friend who is steadfast in all things*;" "*The bird which sang so sweetly is flown*;" "*This is the tree which brings forth no fruit*."

*That* is sometimes used as a Relative instead of *who* and *which*, and stands for both persons and things.

*Who* is thus declined:—

<i>Simple or Nominative Case</i>	<i>Who</i>
<i>Possessive Case</i>	<i>Whose</i>
<i>Objective Case</i>	<i>Whom</i>

The other Relatives are not declined; but *whose* is often used as the possessive of *which*.

The words *so*, *soever*, *ever*, and *same*, are combined with the Relatives and their cases; as *whoso*, *whoever*, *whosoever*, *whomever*, *whosoever*, *whosoever*, *whomsoever*, *whichever*, *whichever*, *whichever*.

It may be noted that many of the pronouns, as well as other words, have been marked by grammarians as seldom used, obsolete, or not used, which have not gone out of use in speech, and which, if seldom used in writing, are only so because in prosewriting there is not so much opportunity of making

use of them. In some cases words have been less used, forasmuch as grammarians had marked them out as "vulgar," "unclassical," "uncouth," or "antiquated."

*Who, which, what, and whether*, are used for asking, and are therefore called *interrogatories*; as "Who is he?" "Which is the book?" "What are you doing?" "Whether of these shall I choose?" "Who else, what else, which other, what other," are likewise so used.

*What* is likewise used in a special way with the article *a* after it, as "What a man Alfred must have been to do so much with such small means and so little time!"

The Adjective Pronouns are words having the properties of both adjectives and pronouns, and are such as *my, thy, our, each, every, either, this, that, some, one, any, all, such*.

The Adjective Pronouns are of four kinds, the Possessive, the Distributive, the Demonstrative, and the Indefinite.

The Possessive Pronouns chiefly refer to ownership, possession, or property. They are *my, thy, his, her, its, one's, our, your, their*.

*Mine and thine* may be used instead of *my* and *thy* instead of a name beginning with a vowel or a silent *h*, as "Give me *mine* own," "Blot out all *mine* iniquities."

These possessive pronouns are nearly akin to the possessive cases of the personal pronouns, which are used for like purposes. The possessive pronouns are used before a substantive or adjective, as—*my* hat, *thy* brethren, *his* worth, *her* horse, *one's* life is in danger, *its* safety is at stake, *our* books are torn, I will go to *your* house, *their* lot is unhappy.

The possessive cases are used when separated from the substantive by a verb or when the substantive is left out; as "This hat is *mine*, and the other is *thine* or *yours*; *mine* is that land; that horse is *hers*; the books that are torn are *ours*; the house is *yours* or *theirs*." *His* undergoes no change in this position, and *its* and *one's* cannot be so put.

Although *mine, thine, &c.*, are called the possessive cases, yet for other meanings of ownership they take before them the preposition *of*; as, besides saying "This house is *mine*," we can say "This is a house of *mine*," meaning "one of the houses belonging to me."

As we cannot put the possessive pronouns *my, thy, or others* separate from the substantive, so the form *mine, thine, &c.*, must be used with a preposition; as "This house is next to *mine*," "That land is bounded by *yours*."

The East English in Norfolk and the neighbourhood wrongly say "I am going to *mine*," "I am going to *yours*," for "I am going to my house or to your house," whereas the possessive cases must have some substantive or pronoun going before.

*Own* and *self* are used with the possessive and personal pronouns. *Own* is singular and plural; *self* singular, making *selves* in the plural. The combinations are *my own, mine own, thy own, thine own, his own, her own, its own, one's own, our own, your own, and their own*. *Own* is used emphatically to show ownership, as "I live in *my own* house," and "not in a hired house."

*Self* makes *myself, thyself, himself* or *hisself, herself, itself, one's self, ourself, ourselves, yourself, yourselves, themselves* or *theirselves*. They are likewise used emphatically, as "He did it *himself*;" or reciprocally, as "I can please *myself*," not "I can please *me*."

Sometimes "myself, ourself, yourselves," are used with a verb without a personal pronoun, as "yourselves have heard."

*Even* is used emphatically; as "I did it, even I;" "Even he."

*Ourself* is used by a king or head of a community, using the plural; *your-*



*self* is used in speaking to one person, as "You *yourself* did it;" *yourselves* in speaking to more than one, as "You *yourselves* did it."

The DISTRIBUTIVE PRONOUNS are those which show the persons or things that make up a number as taken singly. They are *each*, *every*, *either*; and are of the singular number.

*Each* relates to two or more, and means either of the two, or every one of any number taken singly; as "*Each* of the pair works well," "*Each* man must fight for himself."

*Every* relates to several persons or things, and means each one of them all taken singly; as "*Every* nation has its own customs."

*Either* relates to two persons or things taken singly, and means the one or the other; as "*Either* Edmund or Harold did it." We cannot say "*either* of the three or four."

*Neither* means "not *either*," that is, neither the one nor the other; as "*Neither* Edmund nor Harold did it."

*Each*, *every*, *either*, and *neither*, can be used with names of multitude or numbers standing for bodies; as "each pair, every company, either house of congress, neither state, every three men."

*Either* and *neither* take the possessive case; as "It is *neither's*."

These pronouns, compounded, form *each other*, *every other*, *each one*, *every one*, *either one*, *neither one*, *each one soever*, *every one soever*, *every one else*, *everything*, *everybody*, *everything else*, *everybody else*.

We can say *every other two*, *every other three*. "Every three men went to the right," means that all went to the right in parties of three; "Every other three men went to the right," means that half only went by threes to the right.

The DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS are those which point out the substantives to which they relate. *This*, *that*, and *yon*, are of that class. *This* and *that* make *these* and *those* in the plural.

*This* and *these* point out the nearest being or thing in time or place; *that*, *those*, and *yon*, the furthest; as "*This* man is wiser than *that*," "*Yon* man is coming to our house," "*Those* thieves who broke into the dockyard."

The definite article, *the*, belongs to this class.

The Demonstrative Pronouns which are compounded, are *This other* and *that other*, *yon other*, *yon others*, *the other*, *the others*, *this one*, *that one*, *the one*, *yon one*, *this same*, *that same*, *these same*, *those same*, *yon same*, *even this*, *even that*, *even these*, *even those*.

*This other* and *that other* are declined.

Under this head may be named a peculiar construction of *here*, *there*, and *where*, with prepositions, giving a pronominal meaning. Thus, *herewith* means with this; *therewith*, with that; *wherewith*, with which. These compounds are *hereby*, *thereby*, *wheroby*, *hereat*, *thereat*, *whereat*, *hereof*, *thereof*, *whereof*, *herewith*, *therewith*, *wherewith*, *herein*, *therein*, *wherein*, *hereunder*, *thereunder*, *whereunder*, *herefrom*, *therefrom*, *wherefrom*, *hereafter*, *thereafter*, *whereafter*.

The compounds with *where* are relatives.

The article is sometimes used with several of the indefinite pronouns. We say, "*All* the men who were there," "The men *all* said," "*Both* the men who were there," "The men *both* said," "*The many* men who were there," "*Many* a man," "The *several* men," "A *few* men," "*The few* men," "*Such* a man."

"*Many* are the men," and "The men are *many*," have an adjective character; so has "The men who came were *several*."

The INDEFINITE PRONOUNS are those which show their subjects in an indefinite or general way. The following are of this kind: *Some*, *no*, *other*, *any*, *one*, *a* or *an*, *none*, *both*, *all*, *many*, *several*, *most*, *few*, *such*, *ought*, *naught*.

Of these, *one* makes *one's* in the possessive ; *other* makes *other's* in the possessive singular, *others* in the simple or nominative plural, and *others'* in the possessive plural. The other Indefinite Pronouns are not declined.

*One*, *a* and *an*, *another*, *ought*, *naught*, are singular ; *both*, dual ; *other* makes a singular and plural ; *no*, *some*, *any*, are used both in the singular and plural ; and the others are plural. *One* sometimes makes a plural, as "The squirrel and her little ones."

*Both*, *two*, *either*, *neither*, *whether*, *betwixt*, *every other*, are said of two, and are by some spoken of as belonging to the dual number. *Two* makes *twain* in the objective.

*Ilk*, *this ilk*, *that ilk*, the same, this same, that same, are used in the Lowlands ; *thilk*, in other English districts. "Allington of that ilk," is "Allington living in the township of the same name," that is, "Allington of Allington."

The Indefinite Pronouns form a great number of compounds. Such are *Some other*, *any other*, *all other*, *such other*, *none other*, *another*, *one other*, *most other*, *no other*, *few other*, *several other*, *one another*, *many other* ; *some such*, *othersuch*, *any such*, *all such*, *no such*, *none such*, *one such*, *most such*, *few such*, *several such*, *another such*, *manysuch*, *much such* ; *someone*, *someone else*, *anyone*, *anyone soever*, *anyone else*, *nonesoever*, *none else*, *anotherone* ; *something*, *something else*, *anything*, *anything else*, *nothing*, *nothing else* ; *some few* ; *somebody*, *somebody else*, *anybody*, *anybody else*, *nobody*, *nobody else*, *all else*, *none else*, *one else*, *ought else*, *naught else*, *few else*, *much else* ; *some such a one*, *any such a one*, *no such a one*, *another such a one* ; *even all*, *even such*, *even one*, *even several* ; *selfsame*, *the same one*, *the same few* ; *such as*, *so many as*, *as many as*, *the same as*, *as few as*, *all such as*.

The compounds of *other* are declinable.

*Other* and its compounds, before a plural substantive, are put in the singular ; when standing alone, with a plural meaning, in the plural : thus we say, "Other men do not think so ;" "Some other horses have been bought ;" "Others do not think so ;" "He has not done so to anyothers."

*As*, being a Relative Conjunction, gives a relative meaning to the pronouns with which used : thus, "This is the same as that," or "This is the same *which* that is ;" "Let such as think with him, vote with him."

*No* is used with and before substantives and pronouns in the singular and plural ; as "No others can do so ;" "No man has fought harder." *No* not being used by itself, *none* is put in its stead ; as "Some book is better than *none*," for "Some book is better than *no* book."

*None* is used in the plural ; "None have done so ;" "None others thought so." *No one* is used in the singular.

*None* does not mean *not one*, or *no one*, as *neither* means *not either*, but is a case of *no*, formed like *mine* and *thine*.

*None*, as having a better sound, is often used before *others* instead of *no*.

*None at all* is a compound of *none*.

*No* is used as a negative in composition with *other*, *one*, *such* ; *not*, with *another*, *any*, *one*, *a* or *an*, *all*, *both*, *many* ; *not a*, with *few*, and sometimes with *many*.

*Many* and *such* take after them the article *a* before a substantive. When *many* is so used with a noun in the singular, a plural meaning is still given, as it speaks of many taken one by one, and not altogether. Thus, for "Many a man, who is faithless to the truth, is led away by the love of gain," we may say "Many men," &c. "Many a light flickered, but one by one all went out." The article *the* may likewise be used after *many* and *such* : "Many the man who has been led astray by wrong teaching ;" "Such the men who were our fathers."

## VERBS.

A **VERB** is a word showing being, doing, or bearing; as *He is, He loves, He is loved.*

Verbs are of three kinds, **ACTIVE, PASSIVE, and NEUTER.**

An **Active-Transitive Verb** shows doing or action, and has a doer or agent, and something acted upon: as "*I struck him; I raised him.*"

An **Active-Intransitive Verb** shows doing or action, and has a doer or agent, without anything for its object; as "*I rise, I walk, I run.*"

A **Passive Verb** is made from an Active Verb, and shows a bearing, passiveness, suffering, or receiving of an action; as "*To be loved;*" "*He was slain by me.*"

A **Neuter Verb** shows neither doing or action, nor bearing or passion, but being, or a state of being; as "*I am, he sleeps.*"

Active-Intransitive and Neuter Verbs sometimes take a passive shape, as when in combination with a preposition: "*He was laughed at;*" "*They shall be well dealt with;*" "*He is looked up to.*"

Some Verbs have both an active and a neuter meaning: as "*To flatten,*" to make even, is active; but "*To flatten,*" to become dull, is neuter. "*Here I rest,*" is neuter; but "*Here I rest my hopes,*" is active.

The **Auxiliary Verbs** are those used for conjugating the others, and are *Do, be, have, shall, will, may, can, let, dare, need.*

To Verbs belong **NUMBER, PERSON, INFLECTION, MOOD, and TENSE.**

Some Verbs are the same as substantives, but having different conjugation; as "*a love, the loves; we loved, thou lovest.*"

Verbs are made from substantives, adjectives, and adverbs; as—*to salt, to warm, to forward.*

Sometimes the Verb is made by a change in the vowel or consonant sound, as from "*grass, to graze;*" *breath, to breathe;* cloth, *to clothe;* use, *to use.* Sometimes by putting the ending *en;* as from "*strength, to strengthen;*" *fast, to fasten.*"

The particle *un-* changes the meaning wholly; as from "*to lock, to unlock;*" *to fasten, to unfasten.*"

The particle *Mis-* gives the meaning of "*Ill;*" as—*to Misdo, Mistake.*

**NOTE.**—There is a like particle used by the French, and adopted in some words taken from the French, as *Misapply.*

Verbs are made from nouns of foreign stock, and from a few English words, by shifting the accent, of which are the following:—

From		From		From	
Ab'sent	absént	Cónverse	convérse	In'crease	incréase
Ab'stract	abstráct	Cónvert	convért	In'sult	insúlt
Ac'cent	accént	Cónvict	convíct	In'terchange	interchángé
Affix	affíx	Cónvoy	convóy	In'terdict	interdíct
At'tribute	attribúte	Cóuntermand	countermánd	In'terest	interést
Aug'ment	augmént	Cóuntermarch	countermárch	In'vert	invért
Colleague	colléague	Cóuntermine	countermíne	Misconduct	misconduct
Comment	commént	Cóunterplot	counterpłót	Ob'ject	objéct
Cómpact	compáct	Cóunterpoise	counterpóise	O'vercharge	overchárge
Cómpound	compóund	Déscant	descánt	O'verflow	overflów
Cómpress	comprésse	Digest	digést	O'verlay	overláy
Cóncert	concért	Discount	discount	O'verthrow	overthrów
Cóncord	concérd	Es'cort	escórt	Pérfume	perfúme
Cóncrete	concréte	Es'say	essáy	Pérmít	perμίt
Cónduct	conduct	Ex'ile	exíle	Pérvért	pervért
Cónfine	confíne	Ex'port	expórt	Precontract	precontráct
Cónflict	confíct	Ex'tract	extráct	Préfix	preffíx
Cónserve	consérve	Férmént	fermént	Prélude	prelúde
Cónsort	consórt	Fréquent	fréquént	Prémise	premise
Cóntest	contést	Im'port	impórt	Présage	preságe
Cóntrect	contréct	Im'press	impréss	Présent	presént
Cóntress	contréss	In'cense	incénse	Próduce	prodúce

From		From		From	
Project	project	Résort	resért	Surname	surname
Protect	protést	Subject	subjeet	Survey	survey
Púrpórt	púrpórt	Subsist	subsisit	Tórmént	tórnémnt
Rebél	rebél	Subsört	subsórt	Tránsfér	tránsfér
Refúse	refúse	Súffix	súffix	Tránsport	tránsport
Réprimánd	réprimánd	Súrchárgo	súrchárgo		

Some Active-Intransitive Verbs are made from Active-Transitive Verbs by a change of vowel ; as from lay, *lie* ; from fell, *fall*. The change gives to the neuter the meaning "of being made to do :—" "I lay him down," and thereby he is made to lie down ; "I fell a tree," and thereby it is made to fall.

Active. Transitive.	Active Intransitive.	Active Transitive.	Active Intransitive.	Active Transitive.	Active Intransitive.
Raise	Rise	Sop	Sip	Sow	Seed
Lay	Lie	Tap	Tip	Frost	Freeze
Set	Sit	Slap	Slip	Waken	Wake
Drench	Drink	Rip	Rive	Wear	Waste
Stench	Stink	Dip	Dive	Squeeze	Squash
Bleach	Blink	Quell	Quail	Clap	Clash
Wrench	Wring	Wheel	Whirl	Smite	Smash
Clench	Cling	Clutch	Cling	Cow	Cower
Pain	Pine	Stretch	Strain	Break	Burst
Drip	Drip	Fling	Fly	Smack	Smart
Chop	Chip	Fell	Fall	Spit	Spot
Drive	Drift	Lade	Load	Daze	Doze
Shove	Shift	Dare (dared)	Dare (durst)	Chill	Cool
Mix	Mingle	Wrest	Wrestle	Twine	Twist
Twang	Twinge	Roll	Reel	Strew	Stray
Sway	Swing	Coop	Keep	Spring	Sprain
Hang	Hinge	Fodder	Feed	Draw	Drain

There seems some peculiar law of the formation of Verbs akin with the foregoing, as the following shows :—

Active Transitive.	Active Intransitive.	Active Transitive.	Active Transitive.	Active Intransitive.	Active Transitive.
Raise	Rise	Rouse	Slap	Slip	Slop
Sop	Sip	Sup	Wrench	Wring	Wrack
Drip	Drip	Droop	Strike	Streak	Stroke
Drench	Drink	Drown	Fleet	Filt	Flutter
Tap	Tip	Topple	Twine	Twist	Twirl

Many Active Verbs are made from adjectives and verbs with the particle *Be-*; as *bedew*, *bepaint*, *bespatter*, *bedaub*. They commonly bear the meaning of greater or further action. We say, "She daubed herself with red ochre," "She bedaubed herself with red ochre;" "They spattered him with mud," "They bespattered him with mud." The past participles of the Verbs are much used. We say "bedecked and bedizened," rather than "decked and dizenod," though we may say "decked out and dizenod out."

The following are Neuter or Intransitive; most of which, however, are not true compounds of this kind :—

Bechance	Begin	Belong
Befall	Behave	Betide
Betide	Behoove	Betray

The particle *en* is used in some English words seemingly with the meaning of *in*, as—to enthrall, entwine.

The following Verbs, expressing a continuous or stronger action, are formed by putting first the letter *s*:—

To	From to	To	From to	To	From to
saunter	haunt	scar, score	carve	scrunch	crunch
saw	hew	scowl	cow	screak	creak
sawm	hem	scramble	ramble	scud along	cut
scethe	beat	scratch	crack	shave	have

To	From to	To	From to	To	From to
skip	hop	snarl	gnarl	strew	throw
shove	heave	snatch	knock	stride	tread
shout	hoot	snap	knap	strip	rip
shred	rend	sniggle	niggle	stroll	troll
shrivel	rive	snip	nip	stumble	tumble
sift	heave	splutter	patter	stun	thump
slacken	lag	spread	broad	swag	wag
slash	lash	squeich	quell, kill	swagger	waggle
slink	lag	starve	die	sway	weigh
slaver	lap, lick	stave	heave	sweal	weal
smash	mash	steep	dip	sweat	wet
smear	mire	stem	dam	sweep	whip or whiff
smite	meet	stick	tack, tag	swell	well up
smelt	melt	stoop	dip	swelter	welter
smoulder	moulder	straddle	tread	swerve	warp
snack	knack	strain	drain	swing	wing
snag	knag	stretch	reach	swoop	whip

Some few Verbs are made with *C, K, S,* and *Q*, at the beginning, representing the old particle *Ge*, and having the power of collecting together; as *Crumble*, to rub together; *Coop*, to heap together.

To	From to	To	From to	To	From to
Clinch	link	Crawl	roll	Grind	rend or rub
Clog	lock	Crinkle	wrinkle	Grumble	rumble
Clump	lump	Crowd	rush	Quake	wag
Coop	heap	Crumble	rub	Quaver	waver
Crack	wrack	Crumple	rumple	Quease	weeze
Cram	ram	Crust	rush	Scramble	ramble
Crash	rush	Coop	heap	Scream	rick
Creak	rick	Glitter	light	Scratch	wrack
Crib	rob	Gloze	leese, lie		

Verbs ending in *ck* are commonly Active Transitives, as *Shock, Knock, Knick, Kick, Peck, Pick, Wrack, Smack, Pluck, Buck, Lock, Lack, Lick, Suck, Whack, Tuck, Chuck, Stick, Hack.*

A verb is further varied in meaning by putting before it or after it several prepositions; as *Betake, Mistake, Overtake, Retake, Take, Take on, Take off, Take up.* Further, adverbs are thus put after verbs; as *Take away.*

The prepositions so used will be found under the head of Prepositions.

The further formation of verbs will be shown in the list of verbs.

Verbs have two Numbers, the Singular and the Plural; as "I love, we love."

They have three Persons in each number; as—

	Singular.	Plural.
First Person,	I love	We love
Second Person,	Thou lovest	You or ye love
Third Person,	He loves	They love

Verbs have three Inflections—the Simple, the Auxiliary, and the Participial; as "I strike, I do strike, I am striking."

The Simple or Radical Inflection, in its conjugation, refers to time indefinitely, and is chiefly made from the radical part or root of the verb; as "I strike, I struck him, I have stricken; I work, I worked."

The Auxiliary Inflection is made by means of the auxiliary *do*, as "I do love him, I did strike him," and is only applied to active and neuter verbs. It is likewise used in asking, as (instead of "Love you him?") "Do you love him?"

The Participial, Definite, or Continuous Inflection, shows continuous being, *doing, or bearing*; as "I am striking the iron; he is writing." This inflection is made with the active participle and the auxiliary verb *to be*.

The Passive Simple Inflection is made with the past participle and the auxiliary verb *to be*; as "I am loved, they were loved, he is washed."

The Passive Participial Inflection is made with the past participle and the auxiliary verb *to be* and its active participle; as, "I am being shaved, he is being washed."

The Mood or Mode of the Verb shows the manner of the being, doing, or bearing; as "I do it, I may do it, If I were to do it."

The moods are the INDICATIVE, IMPERATIVE, POTENTIAL, SUBJUNCTIVE, CONDITIONAL, and INFINITIVE.

The Indicative Mood only indicates or shows a thing; as "I love, I loved, I have loved."

The Imperative Mood is used for bidding, asking, or allowing; as "Go thou, mind ye, let us stay."

The Potential Mood shows possibility, power, will, or obligation; as "It may rain, he may go or stay, I can walk, they should learn, he might write."

The Subjunctive Mood shows a thing under a condition, motive, or wish, and has a conjunction before it, and is connected by another verb; as "Though he chide me, I will love him."

The Conditional Mood is another form of the Subjunctive, in which the auxiliary is put before the pronoun; as "Had I loved," "did it rain," "were I loved;" "might he see how I have striven, he would know my truth."

The Infinitive Mood shows a thing in a general and unbounded way, without distinction of number or person; as "Strike, to strike, to be struck."

The PARTICIPLE is a form of the verb, so called from participating in the properties not only of a verb, but likewise of an adjective and substantive; as "I had no thought of striking him;" "*Beloved* as he was, all wept his loss;" "*Having begun* this work, he thought it right to go through with it."

The Participles have two simple forms, one for the present in *-ing*, and the other for the past in *-ed*; and from these, compounds are formed. That in *-ing* shows unfinished or continuous action, as "I am writing a letter;" that in *ed* a finished action, as "I had written a letter."

The chief forms of the Participles are—The Radical Active Present Participle; as "He was earnest in seeking her." The Participial Active Present Participle; as "*Being fighting*, he heard not the orders;" this is little used. The Passive Present Participle; as "*Being loved*, he met with friends." The Radical Imperfect Participle; as "*Hated* by all, he took his own life." The Radical Active Perfect Participle; as "*Having brought* him forth, he felt his unthankfulness the more." The Participial Active Perfect Participle; as "*Having been working* all day, I feel weary." The Passive Perfect Participle; as "*Having been asked*, he answered the call."

A participle put before a substantive has commonly the power of an adjective, and after a substantive the power of a participle. Thus we say, "*A thinking* man," and "*a man thinking*;" "*A fast-sailing* ship," and "*a ship sailing fast*." The adjective form conveys the meaning of a lasting property; the participial, that of a temporary action or property.

When the simple participles are used as adjectives, they have the same construction, and are compared with adverbs; as "More loving;" "Less loving;" "Very drunk;" "A most taking likeness."

When participles are used as substantives, they have the construction of the latter, but seldom take a plural, though we have "takings, earnings." The participle in *ed* has the singular and plural alike; the participle in *ing* is commonly in the singular and without an article.

A participial adjective ending in *able* is formed from many verbs; as

*drinkable, eatable, movable, undrinkable, uneatable, immovable.* This sometimes becomes a substantive, and takes the plural; as *eatables, drinkables*.

Many Old English verbs have more than one form of past participle, one form being kept with a verbal meaning, and the other more used as an adjective. Thus we say, "The timber has *rotted* away," "The timber is *rotten*," "A *rotten* timber." With some intransitive verbs a passive is made with the adjectival participle. Thus we say, "It is *rotten*," and not "It is *rotted*."

The following is a list of some of these Participles:—

PARTICIPLES most used Adjectively.	PARTICIPLES most used Verbally.	PARTICIPLES most used Adjectively.	PARTICIPLES most used Verbally.	PARTICIPLES most used Adjectively.	PARTICIPLES most used Verbally.
Barren	Bared	Flotten	Fleeted	Pent	Penned (pend)
Blessed	Blest	Graven	Graved	Roast	Roasted
Bounden	Bound	Hot	Heated	Rotten	Rotted
Burnt	Burned (burnd)	Joint	Joined	Sodden	Seethed
Cloven	Cleft	Learn-ed	Learnt	Shapen	Shaped
Cold	Cooled	Beloved	Loved	Shaven	Shaved
Craven	Craved	Lorn, lost,		Shotten	Shot
Accursed	Curst	forlorn	Lost	Stringed	Strung
Dead	Died	Molten	Melted	Wet	Wetted
Drunken	Drunk				

Some of the words, which are called adjectives, in *y*, seem to be only forms of the Participle in *ing*. Thus we say, "That is clammy, hungry, needy, thirsty," rather than "clamming, hungering, needing, thirsting." We say, "a *loving* man," "a man *loving* others;" but we say, "a *needy* man," "a man *needing* help." We say, a spinny-jenny, or a spinning-jenny.

To the class in *y* belong Blowy, Clammy, Cracky, Dirty, Dreamy, Frisky, Hungry, Lusty, Musty, Needy, Quaky, Shaky, Shifty, Shiny, Showy, Slippery, Smoky, Spinny, Sticky, Stingy (from Stint), Sweaty, Thirsty, Touchy, Tricky, Wary, Wavy, Weary, Wily.

An adverbial form is likewise used for some Participles: thus we may say, He is *living* or *alive*; he is *thirsting*, *thirsty*, or *athirst*; he is *tilting* or *atilt*; he is *dripping* or *adrip*.

TENSE shows time in what now is, has been, and will be—in the Present, the Perfect, and the Future.

The Present Tense shows what is now going on; as—I love; I am thinking; I do love him; I am struck; the child is being dressed; I am gradually being destroyed.

The Present Tense shows any deed which is now being done; therefore, it may show what has been begun but is not ended; as "He often rides," "He rides every day," "I meet him walking every day."

This Tense is used, speaking of a dead writer, but whose book is in being; as "Seneca thinks and says well;" "Solomon tells us truly."

This Tense may, on the same ground, show what is to come, the prepositions *when*, *before*, *after*, &c., being set before it; as "When he comes he will hear the news;" "Before he hears of this, many things may happen;" "He will hear this *before* he comes, or *as soon as* he comes, or, at farthest, *soon after* he comes."

In the warmth of speech this Tense is sometimes taken instead of the Imperfect; as "He is borne over the wide seas—he seeks a home in the wilderness, and harvests from the wastes."

The Imperfect Tense has not the same meaning for each inflection:

1. In the Radical Inflection, it shows the action or event as past or finished; as "I *loved* her for herself."
2. In the Auxiliary Inflection, it shows this more strongly; as "I *did* love dearly."
3. In the Participial Inflection, it shows the action as being unended at a certain time past; as "They were *walking* when I met them."

1. This is the Perfect of the Latin and the tongues which are its offspring; as—*Amavi, Latin; J'ai aimé, French; Amai, Italian; Amo, Spanish; Amel, Portuguese.* It is the Imperfect of the Germanic tongues; as—Ik beminde, *Flemish; Ich liebte, High Dutch.* In the Passive, *Amatus sum, Latin; Je fus aimé, French; Fui amato, Italian; Fui amado, Spanish and Portuguese; Ik werd bemind, Flemish; Ich ward geliebet, High Dutch.*

2. This is the Imperfect or Preter-imperfect of the Latin tongues; as—*Amabam, Latin; J'aimois, French; Amava, Italian and Portuguese; Amaba, Spanish.* And for the Passive—*Amabar, Latin; J'étois aimé, French; Era amato, Italian; Era amado, Spanish and Portuguese.*

The Perfect Tense refers to what is past, but likewise bears with it an allusion to the present; as “I have written my letter; I have been walking all day; I have been loved.”

The Pluperfect Tense speaks of a thing not only as done, but as before some other time named in the saying; as “I had done my letter when he came; I had been writing when he came.”

The First Future shows the action as yet to come, either with or without naming the time when; as “The sun will rise to-morrow; I shall be writing when he comes; I shall be loved hereafter.”

The Second Future shows that the action will be fully done at or before the time of some other action; as “I shall have travelled twenty miles when I reach there;” “I shall have been travelling for three days when I arrive.”

The Conjugation of a Verb is the regular setting forth and working out of its several persons, numbers, tenses, moods, inflections, and voices.

Verbs may be either PRINCIPAL or leading Verbs, or AUXILIARY or helping Verbs.

The Auxiliary and Active Verb To HAVE is conjugated as follows:—

## TO HAVE.

### RADICAL INFLECTION.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### PRESENT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I have. 2 Thou hast. 3 He, she, or it hath or has.  
*Plu.* 1 We have. 2 Ye or you have. 3 They have.

##### IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I had. 2 Thou hadst. 3 He had.  
*Plu.* 1 We had. 2 Ye or you had. 3 They had.

##### PERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I have had. 2 Thou hast had. 3 He has had.  
*Plu.* 1 We have had. 2 Ye or you have had. 3 They have had.

##### PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I had had. 2 Thou hadst had. 3 He had had.  
*Plu.* 1 We had had. 2 Ye or you had had. 3 They had had.

##### FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I shall or will have. 2 Thou shalt or wilt have. 3 He shall or will have.  
*Plu.* 1 We shall or will have. 2 Ye or you shall or will have. 3 They shall or will have.

##### SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I shall have had. 2 Thou wilt have had. 3 He will have had.  
*Plu.* 1 We shall have had. 2 Ye or you will have had. 3 They will have had.

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Sing.* 1 Let me have. 2 Have thou or Do thou have. 3 Let him have.  
*Plu.* 1 Let us have. 2 Have ye or you, or Do ye have. 3 Let them have.

#### POTENTIAL MOOD.

##### PRESENT AND FUTURE TENSES.

*Sing.* 1 I may, can, must, need, or dare have. 2 Thou mayst, canst, must, needst, or darést have. 3 He may, can, must, need, or dares have.  
*Plu.* 1 We may, can, must, need, or dare have. 2 Ye or you may, can, must, need, or dare have. 3 They may, can, must, need, or dare have.



## IMPERFECT TENSE.

- Sing.* 1 I might, could, must, or durst have. 2 Thou mightst, couldst, must, or durst have.  
3 He might, could, must, or durst have.  
*Plu.* 1 We might, could, must, or durst have. 2 Ye or you might, could, must, or durst have.  
3 They might, could, must, or durst have.

## CONDITIONAL IMPERFECT.

- Sing.* 1 I should or would have. 2 Thou shouldst or wouldst have. 3 He should or would have.  
*Plu.* 1 We should or would have. 2 Ye or you should or would have. 3 They should or would have.

## PERFECT TENSE.

- Sing.* 1 I may, can, or needst have had. 2 Thou mayst, needst, or canst have had. 3 He may, need, or can have had.  
*Plu.* 1 We may, need, or can have had. 2 Ye or you may, need, or can have had. 3 They may, need, or can have had.

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

- Sing.* 1 I might, could, must, or durst have had. 2 Thou mightst, couldst, must, or durst have had.  
3 He might, could, must, or durst have had.  
*Plu.* 1 We might, could, must, or durst have had. 2 Ye or you might, could, must, or durst have had. 3 They might, could, must, or durst have had.

## CONDITIONAL PLUPERFECT TENSE.

- Sing.* 1 I should or would have had. 2 Thou shouldst or wouldst have had. 3 He should or would have had.  
*Plu.* 1 We should or would have had. 2 Ye or you should or would have had. 3 They should or would have had.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT AND FUTURE TENSES.

- Sing.* 1 If I have. 2 If thou have. 3 If he have.  
*Plu.* 1 If we have. 2 If ye or you have. 3 If they have.

Other forms of the Present:—If I may, can, must, or dare have. If thou may, can, must, or dare have, &c.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

- Sing.* 1 If I had. 2 If thou had. 3 If he had.  
*Plu.* 1 If we had. 2 If ye or you had. 3 If they had.

Other forms of the Imperfect:—If I might, could, must, durst, should, or would have. If thou mightst, couldst, must, durst, shouldst, or wouldst have, &c.

## PERFECT TENSE.

- Sing.* 1 If I have had. 2 If thou have had. 3 If he have had.  
*Plu.* 1 If we have had. 2 If ye or you have had. 3 If they have had.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

IMPERFECT TENSE (*First Form*).

- Sing.* 1 Were I to have. 2 Wert thou to have. 3 Were he to have.  
*Plu.* 1 Were we to have. 2 Were ye or you to have. 3 Were they to have.

IMPERFECT TENSE (*Second Form*).

- Sing.* 1 Might, could, durst, or should I have. 2 Mightst, couldst, durst, or shouldst thou have. 3 Might, could, durst, or should he have.  
*Plu.* 1 Might, could, durst, or should we have. 2 Might, could, durst, or should ye have. 3 Might, could, durst, or should they have.

## PERFECT TENSES OF THIS MOOD.

- Sing.* 1 Let me have had. 3 Let him have had.  
*Plu.* 1 Let us have had. 3 Let them have had.

- Sing.* 1 Had I had. 2 Hadst thou had, &c.  
*Sing.* 1 Might I have had. 2 Mightst thou have had, &c.  
*Sing.* 1 Could I have had. 2 Couldst thou have had, &c.  
*Sing.* 1 Durst I have had. 2 Durst thou have had, &c.

## OPTATIVE PRESENT, AND FUTURE TENSES.

- Sing.* 1 May I have! 2 Mayst thou have! 3 May he have!  
*Plu.* 1 May we have! 2 May ye or you have! 3 May they have.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

P <small>RESENT</small> T <small>ENSE</small> ,	To have.
P <small>ERFECT</small> T <small>ENSE</small> ,	To have had.
F <small>UTURE</small> T <small>ENSE</small> ,	To be going to have, or To be about to have.
S <small>ECOND FUTURE</small> T <small>ENSE</small> ,	To be about to have had.

PARTICIPLES.

P <small>RESENT</small> ,	Having.*
P <small>ERFECT</small> ,	Had.
C <small>OMPOUND P<small>ERFECT</small></small> ,	Having had.
F <small>UTURE</small> ,	About having, About to have, or Being about to have.
S <small>ECOND FUTURE</small> ,	Being about to have had.

TO HAVE.

PARTICIPIAL INFLECTION.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1 I am having. 2 Thou art having. 3 He is having.
<i>Plu.</i> 1 We are having. 2 Ye or you are having. 3 They are having.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1 I was having. 2 Thou wast having. 3 He was having.
<i>Plu.</i> 1 We were having. 2 Ye or you were having. 3 They were having.

PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1 I have been having. 2 Thou hast been having. 3 He has been having.
<i>Plu.</i> 1 We have been having. 2 Ye or you have been having. 3 They have been having.

*To Have* is likewise sometimes conjugated Passively, as *To be had*.

The Neuter and Auxiliary Verb *To Be* is conjugated as follows:—

TO BE.

RADICAL INFLECTION.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1 I am. 2 Thou art. 3 He is.
<i>Plu.</i> 1 We are. 2 Ye or you are. 3 They are.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1 I was. 2 Thou wast. 3 He was.
<i>Plu.</i> 1 We were. 2 Ye or you were. 3 They were.

Many persons say "You was," to a single person; and some grammarians think it right. The old way was "Thou wast;" then "You were," was said to a single person; and some come to "You was" to one, and "You were" to several. "You was" is something like "You am," or "You is."

PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1 I have been. 2 Thou hast been. 3 He hath or has been.
<i>Plu.</i> 1 We have been. 2 Ye or you have been. 3 They have been.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1 I had been. 2 Thou hadst been. 3 He had been.
<i>Plu.</i> 1 We had been. 2 Ye or you had been. 3 They had been.

FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1 I shall or will be. 2 Thou shalt or wilt be. 3 He shall or will be.
<i>Plu.</i> 1 We shall or will be. 2 Ye or you shall or will be. 3 They shall or will be.

SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1 I shall have been. 2 Thou wilt have been. 3 He will have been.
<i>Plu.</i> 1 We shall have been. 2 Ye or you will have been. 3 They will have been.

\* The Participle *Having*, when used as a substantive, takes the plural; as "His having in board was small;" "His having was not great;" but it is seldom used as a substantive, and not at all as an adjective.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.\*

- Sing.* 1 Let me be. 2 Be thou, or Do thou be. 3 Let him be.  
*Plu.* 1 Let us be. 2 Be ye or you, or Do ye or you be. 3 Let them be.

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

## PRESENT AND FUTURE TENSES.

- Sing.* 1 I may, can, must, need, or dare be. 2 Thou mayst, canst, must, needst, or dardest be. 3 He may, can, must, need, or dares be.  
*Plu.* 1 We may, can, must, need, or dare be. 2 Ye or you may, can, must, need, or dare be. 3 They may, can, must, need, or dare be.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

- Sing.* 1 I might, could, must, or durst be. 2 Thou mightst, couldst, must, or durst be. 3 He might, could, must, or durst be.  
*Plu.* 1 We might, could, must, or durst be. 2 Ye or you might, could, must, or durst be. 3 They might, could, must, or durst be.

Another form is—1 I had need be. 2 Thou hadst need be, &c.

## CONDITIONAL IMPERFECT TENSE.

- Sing.* 1 I should or would be. 2 Thou shouldst or wouldst be. 3 He would or should be.  
*Plu.* 1 We should or would be. 2 Ye or you should or would be. 3 They should or would be.

## PERFECT TENSE.

- Sing.* 1 I may, need, or can have been. 2 Thou mayst, needst, or canst have been. 3 He may, need, or can have been.  
*Plu.* 1 We may, need, or can have been. 2 Ye or you may, need, or can have been. 3 They may, need, or can have been.

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

- Sing.* 1 I might, could, must, or durst have been. 2 Thou mightst, couldst, must, or durst have been. 3 They might, could, must, or durst have been.  
*Plu.* 1 We might, could, must, or durst have been. 2 Ye or you might, could, must, or durst have been. 3 They might, could, must, or durst have been.

## CONDITIONAL PLUPERFECT TENSE.

- Sing.* 1 I should or would have been. 2 Thou shouldst or wouldst have been. 3 He should or would have been.  
*Plu.* 1 We should or would have been. 2 Ye or you should or would have been. 3 They should or would have been.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT AND FUTURE TENSES.

- Sing.* 1 If I be. 2 If thou beest or be. 3 If he be.  
*Plu.* 1 If we be. 2 If ye or you be. 3 If they be.

PRESENT AND FUTURE TENSES (*Other Forms*).

- Sing.* 1 If I may, can, must, need, or dare be. 2 If thou may, can, must, need, or dare be. 3 If he may, can, must, need or dare be.  
*Plu.* 1 If we may, can, must, need, or dare be. 2 If ye or you may, can, must, need, or dare be. 3 If they may, can, must, need, or dare be.

"If thou beest," may be heard among country people, who keep up the thee and thou, and may be found in our old writers. In Anglo-Saxon, as in new English, the person and tense had a future meaning. Most new grammarians write, "If thou be."

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

- Sing.* 1 If I were. 2 If thou wert. 3 If he were.  
*Plu.* 1 If we were. 2 If ye or you were. 3 If they were.

IMPERFECT TENSE (*Other Forms*).

- Sing.* 1 If I might, could, must, need, or dare be. 2 If thou might, could, must, need, or dare be. 3 If he might, could, must, need, or dare be.  
*Plu.* 1 If we might, could, must, need, or dare be. 2 If ye or you might, could, must, need, or dare be. 3 If they might, could, must, need, or dare be.

"If I were," &c., commonly has the meaning, when used with an adjective, of "If I had become;" as in "If he were good."

\* We can also say "Do let me be, Do let him be, Do let us be, Do let them be." This is as such as "Do let me alone," &c.

CONDITIONAL IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 If I should or would be. 2 If thou should or would be. 3 If he should or would be.  
*Plu.* 1 If we should or would be. 2 If ye or you should or would be. 3 If they should or would be.

PERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 If I have been. 2 If thou have been. 3 If he have been.  
*Plu.* 1 If we have been. 2 If ye or you have been. 3 If they have been.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 Were I. 2 Wert thou. 3 Were he.  
*Plu.* 1 Were we. 2 Were ye or you. 3 Were they.

IMPERFECT TENSE (*Other Forms*).

*Sing.* 1 Might, could, durst, or should I be. 2 Mightst, couldst, durst, or shouldst thou be. 3 Might, could, durst, or should he be.  
*Plu.* 1 Might, could, durst, or should we be. 2 Might, could, durst, or should ye or you be. 3 Might, could, durst, or should they be.

PERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 Let me have been. 3 Let him have been.  
*Plu.* 1 Let us have been. 3 Let them have been.

PERFECT TENSE (*Other Forms*).

*Sing.* 1 Had I been. 2 Hadst thou been. 3 Had he been.  
*Plu.* 1 Had we been. 2 Had ye or you been. 3 Had they been.

PERFECT TENSE (*Other Forms*).

*Sing.* 1 Might, could, or durst I have been. 2 Mightst, couldst, or durst thou have been. 3 Might, could, or durst he have been.  
*Plu.* 1 Might, could, or durst we have been. 2 Might, could, or durst ye or you have been. 3 Might, could, or durst they have been.

OPTATIVE PRESENT AND FUTURE TENSES.

*Sing.* 1 May I be. 2 Mayst thou be. 3 May he be.  
*Plu.* 1 May we be. 2 May ye or you be. 3 May they be.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, To be.  
 PERFECT TENSE, To have been.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT,	Being.
PERFECT,	Been.
COMPOUND PERFECT,	Having been.
FUTURE,	About being, or About to be.
SECOND FUTURE,	About to have been.

The participle Being, is not used as an adjective: when used as a substantive, it is used in a general or individual sense; as "Being, a being, human beings."

TO HAVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I have. 2 Thou hast. 3 He hath or has.  
*Plu.* 1 We have. 2 Ye or you have. 3 They have.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I had. 2 Thou hadst. 3 He had.  
*Plu.* 1 We had. 2 Ye or you had. 3 They had.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT, Having. PERFECT, Had.

TO BE.

PRESENT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I am. 2 Thou art. 3 He is.  
*Plu.* 1 We are. 2 Ye or you are. 3 They are.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I was. 2 Thou wast. 3 He was.  
*Plu.* 1 We were. 2 Ye or you were. 3 They were.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT, Being. PERFECT, Been.

Nearly all the Tenses of the verb To Be, are used in conjugating the Passive Voice, and many of them in conjugating the Participial Inflection of the Active Voice.

## SHALL.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I shall. 2 Thou shalt. 3 He shall.  
*Plu.* 1 We shall. 2 Ye or you shall. 3 They shall.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I should. 2 Thou shouldst. 3 He should.  
*Plu.* 1 We should. 2 Ye or you should. 3 They should.

## TO WILL.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I will. 2 Thou wilt. 3 He will.  
*Plu.* 1 We will. 2 Ye or you will. 3 They will.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I would. 2 Thou wouldst. 3 He would.  
*Plu.* 1 We would. 2 Ye or you would. 3 They would.

Will is likewise a verb "to wish, bid, or order," and is then conjugated otherwise, and like verbs making the participle in *ed*; as "Thou *wildest* it, and it shall be done;" "He *wills* it to be so;" "He *willed* it to be so." The participle *willing*, and the participial inflection I am *willing*, I was *willing*, &c., have a meaning nearer to the auxiliary *will*, *would*, and are much used with verbs; as "I am willing to work;" "He was willing to learn." "I will to work," and "He willed to learn," have not the same meaning of readiness as the other sayings.

Willing is not used as a substantive, but much used as an adjective; as "A willing helpmate."

The helping verbs Shall and Will, are used to give the meaning of the future or hereafter. Shall is from *scealan*, to owe; Should is taken with the meaning, "he ought to do it;" and formerly, should or shuld, stood for what was owing, a debt or obligation, as now in Low Dutch.

Will commonly means willing action; Shall, unwilling or forced action; but all the shades of meaning cannot be shown, and can only be learned by use from Englishmen. The simple use of Shall and Will is well enough shown in the tale of the Frenchman, who, sinking in the water, is said to have lost his life from having said to those who came to help him, "I will be drowned; nobody *shall* help me," instead of "I *shall* be drowned (I must be drowned), nobody will help me (is willing or ready to help me)."

Should and Would follow the law of Shall and Will.

The following are sayings in which these words are wrongly put one for another, and are Irishisms or Scotisms.

I will be after speaking to him (for I shall speak to him).

"Will I see you?" "Will I help you?" "Will I be wanted?"

## MAY.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I may. 2 Thou mayst. 3 He may.  
*Plu.* 1 We may. 2 Ye or you may. 3 They may.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I might. 2 Thou mightst. 3 He might.  
*Plu.* 1 We might. 2 Ye or you might. 3 They might.

# CAN.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I can. 2 Thou canst. 3 He can.  
*Plu.* 1 We can. 2 Ye or you can. 3 They can.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I could. 2 Thou couldst. 3 He could.  
*Plu.* 1 We could. 2 Ye or you could. 3 They could.

# TO DO.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I do. 2 Thou dost. 3 He doth or does  
*Plu.* 1 We do. 2 Ye or you do. 3 They do.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I did. 2 Thou didst. 3 He did.  
*Plu.* 1 We did. 2 Ye or you did. 3 They did.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Sing.* 2 Do thou. *Plu.* 2 Do ye or you.

The verb *To Do*, is likewise conjugated as a full verb. The participle *Doing*, is used as a substantive in the singular and plural, but not as an adjective. *Thou doest*, is not used as an auxiliary.

The verb *To Do*, is used in several tenses as an auxiliary. "I have done fighting," speaks of an action as wholly passed by. We cannot say "I have done fight;" "It has done snow;" "It has done rain;" though some wrongly say "I have done work to day," meaning they have got through their work, when they should say "I have done working to-day."

# TO DARE.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I dare. 2 Thou darest. 3 He dares.  
*Plu.* 1 We dare. 2 Ye or you dare. 3 They dare.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I durst. 2 Thou durst. 3 He durst.  
*Plu.* 1 We durst. 2 Ye or you durst. 3 They durst.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT, Daring. PERFECT, Dared.

The verb *to dare*, can be used as an auxiliary in several tenses; as "Thou darest not strike him;" "I dare do all that man can;" "Thou durst not fight;" "I durst have fought;" "Once having dared ride, he tried again many times;" "Durst I have struck him, he should not have got off;" "I shall dare stand, whenever he comes forward."

The participle *daring*, is used as an adjective, and not as a substantive; as "A daring man;" "The daring leader."

*Dare*, "to challenge," takes "to" after it, and makes *dared* in the past tense; "I dared him to fight." "*I dare fight*," is from the auxiliary verb.

# LET.

*LET* is used as an auxiliary, without change of ending, and is most used for the Imperative Mood; as "Let me strike;" "Let us love." It is used likewise in a past sense in the Conditional Mood; as "Let them have done it or not, they shall be none the less doomed."

*Let*, as a principal verb, is conjugated throughout; as "I let, thou lettest, he lets. The participle *letting*, is used as a substantive with the article *the*. *Let*, having another verb after it, does not need to have to before it; "I will let you seek your friend."

*Bid* and *make* may be used in the Imperative Mood as well as Let; as "Bid me love him;" "Make him love me;" "Make us love him;" "Make us be loved." Verbs following these two verbs do not take the word *to* before them.

## MUST.

MUST is used as an auxiliary, without change of ending, and is the same in its present and imperfect. It is used in several tenses of the active and passive; as "I must love;" "It must be raining;" "I must be loved;" "I must have forgotten;" "I must have been dreaming;" "I must have been bled."

## NEED.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I need. 2 Thou need or needst. 3 He need or needs.  
*Plu.* 1 We need. 2 Ye or you need. 3 They need.

This verb is used as an auxiliary in several ways; "I need love him;" "I had need love him;" "He need not have shrunk from me. Perhaps, before *must*, the form is *need's*, of need; "He must needs fight."

As a principal verb, it is conjugated throughout; as "I need, thou needst, he needs, I needed," and takes *to* with a verb after it; as "I needed to have his help." *Needing* is not used either as a substantive or adjective; *Needy* being the participle so used.

Need, as an auxiliary, means *ought*; as a principal word, *want*; "I had need love him;" "I have need of his help."

## OUGHT.

## PRESENT AND IMPERFECT TENSES.

*Sing.* 1 I ought. 2 Thou oughtst. 3 He ought.  
*Plu.* 1 We ought. 2 Ye or you ought. 3 They ought.

*Ought* takes *to* after it, but seems to be a true auxiliary, and to be only used as an auxiliary. We do not say "I have ought, I had ought, I shall ought."

Hardly one of the auxiliary words is spoken as written: thus,

He is, <i>is spoken is</i>	Thou doest,	Done, <i>is spoken dun</i>
We are <i>ar</i>	<i>is spoken dooest</i>	I could <i>cood</i>
We were <i>ware</i>	Thou dost <i>dust</i>	I would <i>wood</i>
If I were <i>wer</i>	He doeth <i>dooeth</i>	I should <i>shood</i>
Been <i>bis</i>	He doth <i>duth</i>	Thou couldst <i>coodst</i>
He has <i>has</i>	He does <i>dus</i>	Thou wouldst <i>woodst</i>
I do <i>doo</i>	Doing <i>doeing</i>	Thou shouldst <i>shoodst</i>

A great number of Verbs Active and Neuter form the imperfect tense of the indicative mood and their perfect participle in *-ed*, unless the verb ends in *e*, when it takes *d* only. In some verbs the last consonant is doubled before the ending *ed*.

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PERFECT PARTICIPLE.
I hoot	I hooted	Hooted
I love	I loved	Loved
I whet	I whetted	Whetted

Where the consonant is doubled, unless the ending makes another syllable, as in *whet*, *whetting*, the imperfect and participle are sounded with *t*; as "whip, whipt; hop, hopt; toss, tost;" although they are written by some "whipped, hopped, tossed," thinking that is "more regular." Some words *make the imperfect and participle both in t and d*, as *dream, dreamt, dreamed; but when this should be done must be settled by the ear. Long vowels commonly take the d, and short ones the t.*

The formation of persons is as follows :—

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I hoot. 2 Thou hootest. 3 He hooteth or hoots.  
*Plu.* 1 We hoot. 2 Ye or you hoot. 3 They hoot.

*Sing.* 1 I love. 2 Thou lovest. 3 He loveth or loves.  
*Plu.* 1 We love. 2 Ye or you love. 3 They love.

*Sing.* 1 I whet. 2 Thou whettest. 3 He whetteth or whets.  
*Plu.* 1 We whet. 2 Ye or you whet. 3 They whet.

*Sing.* 1 I ply. 2 Thou pliest. 3 He plieth or plies.  
*Plu.* 1 We ply. 2 Ye or you ply. 3 They ply.

*Sing.* 1 I delay. 2 Thou delayest. 3 He delayeth or delays.  
*Plu.* 1 We delay. 2 Ye or you delay. 3 They delay.

The rule for the change of ending in Verbs ending with *y* is the same as for substantives ending in *y*.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I hooted. 2 Thou hootedst. 3 He hooted.  
*Plu.* 1 We hooted. 2 Ye or you hooted. 3 They hooted.

*Sing.* 1 I loved. 2 Thou lovedst. 3 He loved.  
*Plu.* 1 We loved. 2 Ye or you loved. 3 They loved.

*Sing.* 1 I whetted. 2 Thou whettedst. 3 He whetted.  
*Plu.* 1 We whetted. 2 Ye or you whetted. 3 They whetted.

*Sing.* 1 I plied. 2 Thou pliedst. 3 He plied.  
*Plu.* 1 We plied. 2 Ye or you plied. 3 They plied.

*Sing.* 1 I delayed. 2 Thou delayedst. 3 He delayed.  
*Plu.* 1 We delayed. 2 Ye or you delayed. 3 They delayed.

TO WEIGH [spoken *Wai*].

## RADICAL INFLECTION.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I weigh. 2 Thou weighest. 3 He weigheth or weighs.  
*Plu.* 1 We weigh. 2 Ye or you weigh. 3 They weigh.

The third person singular may be conjugated with *He, She, It, One, None*; and the third person plural with *They, Both, Some, Several, All*.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I weighed. 2 Thou weighedst. 3 He weighed.  
*Plu.* 1 We weighed. 2 Ye or you weighed. 3 They weighed.

In speaking we say, *I waid or wai-ed*.

## PRESENT AND FUTURE TENSES.

*Sing.* 1 I have weighed. 2 Thou hast weighed. 3 He hath or has weighed.  
*Plu.* 1 We have weighed. 2 Ye or you have weighed. 3 They have weighed.

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I had weighed. 2 Thou hadst weighed. 3 He had weighed.  
*Plu.* 1 We had weighed. 2 Ye or you had weighed. 3 They had weighed.

## FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I shall or will weigh. 2 Thou shalt or wilt weigh. 3 He shall or will weigh.  
*Plu.* 1 We shall or will weigh. 2 Ye or you shall or will weigh. 3 They shall or will weigh.

## SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I shall have weighed. 2 Thou wilt have weighed. 3 He will have weighed.  
*Plu.* 1 We shall have weighed. 2 Ye or you will have weighed. 3 They will have weighed.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Sing.* 1 Let him weigh. 2 Weigh thou. 3 Let him weigh.  
*Plu.* Let us weigh. 2 Weigh ye. 3 Let them weigh.



We may say, likewise, "Bid me weigh, Bid him weigh, Bid us weigh, Bid them weigh; Make me weigh, Make him weigh, Make us weigh, Make them weigh."

We cannot say, "Let thee weigh, Let ye weigh, Make thee weigh," without shifting the meaning. Thus, "Let thee fight! Never!" "Let thee be lost! Never, whilst I live!"

#### POTENTIAL MOOD.

##### PRESENT AND FUTURE TENSES.

*Sing.* 1 I may weigh. 2 Thou mayst weigh. 3 He may weigh.

*Plu.* 1 We may weigh. 2 Ye or you may weigh. 3 They may weigh.

And thus :—

*Sing.* 1 I may, can, must, need, or dare weigh. 2 Thou mayst, canst, must, needst, or darcest weigh. 3 He may, can, must need, or dares weigh.

*Plu.* 1 We may, can, must, need, or dare weigh. 2 Ye or you may, can, must, need, or dare weigh. 3 They may, can, must, need, or dare weigh.

##### IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I might, could, or durst weigh. 2 Thou mightst, couldst, or durst weigh. 3 He might, could, or durst weigh.

*Plu.* 1 We might, could, or durst weigh. 2 Ye or you might, could, or durst weigh. 3 They might, could, or durst weigh.

Another form is, 1 I had need weigh. 2 Thou hadst need weigh, &c.

##### CONDITIONAL IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I should or would weigh. 2 Thou shouldst or wouldst weigh. 3 He should or would weigh.

*Plu.* 1 We should or would weigh. 2 Ye or you should or would weigh. 3 They should or would weigh.

##### PERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I may, can, or need have weighed. 2 Thou mayst, canst, or needst have weighed.

3 He may, can, or need have weighed.

*Plu.* 1 We may, can, or need have weighed. 2 Ye or you may, can, or need have weighed. 3 They may, can, or need have weighed.

##### PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I might, could, must, or durst have weighed. 2 Thou mightst, couldst, must, or durst have weighed. 3 He might, could, must, or durst have weighed.

*Plu.* 1 We might, could, must, or durst have weighed. 2 Ye or you might, could, must, or durst have weighed. 3 They might, could, must, or durst have weighed.

##### CONDITIONAL PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I should or would have weighed. 2 Thou shouldst or wouldst have weighed. 3 He should or would have weighed.

*Plu.* 1 We should or would have weighed. 2 Ye or you should or would have weighed. 3 They should or would have weighed.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

##### PRESENT AND FUTURE TENSES.

*Sing.* 1 If I weigh. 2 If thou weigh. 3 If he weigh.

*Plu.* 1 If we weigh. 2 If ye or you weigh. 3 If they weigh.

#### CONDITIONAL MOOD.

##### IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 Were I to weigh. 2 Wert thou to weigh. 3 Were he to weigh.

*Plu.* 1 Were we to weigh. 2 Were ye or you to weigh. 3 Were they to weigh.

##### IMPERFECT TENSE (*Other Forms*).

*Sing.* 1 Might, could, durst, or should I weigh. 2 Mightst, couldst, durst, or shouldst thou weigh. 3 Might, could, durst, or should he weigh.

*Plu.* 1 Might, could, durst, or should we weigh. 2 Might, could, durst, or should ye or you weigh. 3 Might, could, durst, or should they weigh.

##### PERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 Let me have weighed. 3 Let him have weighed.

*Plu.* 1 Let us have weighed. 3 Let them have weighed.

PERFECT TENSE (*Other Forms*).

*Sing.* 1 Had I weighed. 2 Hadst thou weighed. 3 Had he weighed.  
*Plu.* 1 Had we weighed. 2 Had ye or you weighed. 3 Had they weighed.

PERFECT TENSE (*Other Forms*).

*Sing.* 1 Might, could, or durst I have weighed. 2 Mightst, couldst, or durst thou have weighed. 3 Might, could, or durst he have weighed.  
*Plu.* 1 Might, could, or durst we have weighed. 2 Might, could, or durst ye or you have weighed. 3 Might, could, or durst they have weighed.

## OPTATIVE PRESENT AND FUTURE TENSES.

*Sing.* 1 May I weigh! 2 Mayst thou weigh! 3 May he weigh!  
*Plu.* 1 May we weigh! 2 May ye or you weigh! 3 May they weigh!

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE,	To weigh.
PERFECT TENSE,	To have weighed.
FIRST FUTURE TENSE,	To be going to weigh, or To be about to weigh.
SECOND FUTURE TENSE,	To be about to have weighed.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT,	Weighing.
PERFECT,	Weighed.
COMPOUND PERFECT,	Having weighed.
FIRST FUTURE,	About to weigh, or Being about to weigh.
SECOND FUTURE,	About to have weighed, or Being about to have weighed.
PARTICIPIAL ADJECTIVE,	Weighable.

## TO WEIGH.

## AUXILIARY INFLECTION—ACTIVE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I do weigh. 2 Thou dost weigh. 3 He doth or does weigh.  
*Plu.* 1 We do weigh. 2 Ye or you do weigh. 3 They do weigh.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I did weigh. 2 Thou didst weigh. 3 He did weigh.  
*Plu.* 1 We did weigh. 2 Ye or you did weigh. 3 They did weigh.

## PERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I have done weighing. 2 Thou hast done weighing. 3 He hath or has done weighing.  
*Plu.* 1 We have done weighing. 2 Ye or you have done weighing. 3 They have done weighing.

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I had done weighing. 2 Thou hadst done weighing. 3 He had done weighing.  
*Plu.* 1 We had done weighing. 2 Ye or you had done weighing. 3 They had done weighing.

## SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I shall have done weighing. 2 Thou wilt have done weighing. 3 He will have done weighing.  
*Plu.* 1 We shall have done weighing. 2 Ye or you will have done weighing. 3 They will have done weighing.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Sing.* 1 Do let me weigh. 2 Do weigh, or do thou weigh. 3 Do let him weigh.  
*Plu.* 1 Do let us weigh. 2 Do weigh, or do ye or you weigh. 3 Do let them weigh.

We may say, likewise, "Do make him weigh, Do make them weigh."

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

## PERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I may or need have done weighing. 2 Thou mayst or needst have done weighing.  
 3 He may or need have done weighing.  
*Plu.* 1 We may or need have done weighing. 2 Ye or you may or need have done weighing. 3 They may or need have done weighing.

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I might, could, must, or should have done weighing. 2 Thou mightst, couldst, must, or shouldst have done weighing. 3 He might, could, must, or should have done weighing.

*Plu.* 1 We might, could, must, or should have done weighing. 2 Ye or you might, could, must, or should have done weighing. 3 They might, could, must, or should have done weighing.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 If I do weigh. 2 If thou do weigh. 3 If he do weigh.

*Plu.* 1 If we do weigh. 2 If ye or you do weigh. 3 If they do weigh.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 If I did weigh. 2 If thou did weigh. 3 If he did weigh.

*Plu.* 1 If we did weigh. 2 If ye or you did weigh. 3 If they did weigh.

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 If I had done weighing. 2 If thou had done weighing. 3 If he had done weighing.

*Plu.* 1 If we had done weighing. 2 If ye or you had done weighing. 3 If they had done weighing.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 Did I weigh. 2 Didst thou weigh. 3 Did he weigh.

*Plu.* 1 Did we weigh. 2 Did ye or you weigh. 3 Did they weigh.

COMPOUND PERFECT PARTICIPLE, Having done weighing.

## TO WEIGH.

## PARTICIPIAL INFLECTION—ACTIVE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I am weighing. 2 Thou art weighing. 3 He is weighing.

*Plu.* 1 We are weighing. 2 Ye or you are weighing. 3 They are weighing.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I was weighing. 2 Thou wast weighing. 3 He was weighing.

*Plu.* 1 We were weighing. 2 Ye or you were weighing. 3 They were weighing.

## PERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I have been weighing. 2 Thou hast been weighing. 3 He has been weighing.

*Plu.* 1 We have been weighing. 2 Ye or you have been weighing. 3 They have been weighing.

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I had been weighing. 2 Thou hadst been weighing. 3 He had been weighing.

*Plu.* 1 We had been weighing. 2 Ye or you had been weighing. 3 They had been weighing.

## FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I shall be weighing. 2 Thou wilt be weighing. 3 He will be weighing.

*Plu.* 1 We shall be weighing. 2 Ye or you will be weighing. 3 They will be weighing.

The Irish say, "I will be working, I will be eating," for "I shall work, I shall eat."

## SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I shall have been weighing. 2 Thou wilt have been weighing. 3 He will have been weighing.

*Plu.* 1 We shall have been weighing. 2 Ye or you will have been weighing. 3 They will have been weighing.

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

## PRESENT AND FUTURE TENSES.

*Sing.* 1 I may be weighing. 2 Thou mayst be weighing. 3 He may be weighing.

*Plu.* 1 We may be weighing. 2 Ye or you may be weighing. 3 They may be weighing.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I should be weighing. 2 Thou shouldst be weighing. 3 He should be weighing.  
*Plu.* 1 We should be weighing. 2 Ye or you should be weighing. 3 They should be weighing.

## PERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I may have been weighing. 2 Thou mayst have been weighing. 3 He may have been weighing.  
*Plu.* 1 We may have been weighing. 2 Ye or you may have been weighing. 3 They may have been weighing.

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I might or must have been weighing. 2 Thou mightst or must have been weighing. 3 He might or must have been weighing.  
*Plu.* 1 We might or must have been weighing. 2 Ye or you might or must have been weighing. 3 They might or must have been weighing.

We can say "He cannot be weighing now;" "He need not be weighing all day long;" "He must be dying;" "I must be dreaming;" "I should be dreaming to do so;" "It must be raining;" "It must have been raining;" but the application of the potential mood in the participial inflection is guided by the meaning of each verb and by practice. The Irish make a great use of this mood of the inflection in forms rejected by the English; as "He must be loving;" "I would be dreaming;" "You would be going;" "I would have been dying."

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 If I be weighing. 2 If thou beest weighing. 3 If he be weighing.  
*Plu.* 1 If we be weighing. 2 If ye or you be weighing. 3 If they be weighing.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 If I were weighing. 2 If thou wert weighing. 3 If he were weighing.  
*Plu.* 1 If we were weighing. 2 If ye or you were weighing. 3 If they were weighing.

## CONDITIONAL IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 If I should be weighing. 2 If thou should be weighing. 3 If he should be weighing.  
*Plu.* 1 If we should be weighing. 2 If ye or you should be weighing. 3 If they should be weighing.

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 If I had been weighing. 2 If thou had been weighing. 3 If he had been weighing.  
*Plu.* 1 If we had been weighing. 2 If ye or you had been weighing. 3 If they had been weighing.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

## PERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 Had I been weighing. 2 Hadst thou been weighing. 3 Had he been weighing.  
*Plu.* 1 Had we been weighing. 2 Had ye or you been weighing. 3 Had they been weighing.

We say, "Let us be going;" "Let us be moving."

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE,	To be weighing.
PERFECT TENSE,	To have been weighing.
FIRST FUTURE TENSE,	About to be weighing.
SECOND FUTURE TENSE,	About to have been weighing.

## PARTICIPLES.

COMPOUND PERFECT,	Having been weighing.
FIRST FUTURE,	About weighing, or Being about weighing.

## TO BE WEIGHED.

## PASSIVE RADICAL INFLECTION.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I am weighed. 2 Thou art weighed. 3 He is weighed.  
*Plu.* 1 We are weighed. 2 Ye or you are weighed. 3 They are weighed.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I was weighed. 2 Thou wast weighed. 3 He was weighed.  
*Plu.* 1 We were weighed. 2 Ye or you were weighed. 3 They were weighed.

## PERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I have been weighed. 2 Thou hast been weighed. 3 He hath or has been weighed.  
*Plu.* 1 We have been weighed. 2 Ye or you have been weighed. 3 They have been weighed.

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I had been weighed. 2 Thou hadst been weighed. 3 He had been weighed.  
*Plu.* 1 We had been weighed. 2 Ye or you had been weighed. 3 They had been weighed.

## FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I shall or will be weighed. 2 Thou shalt or wilt be weighed. 3 He shall or will be weighed.  
*Plu.* 1 We shall or will be weighed. 2 Ye or you shall or will be weighed. 3 They shall or will be weighed.

## SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I shall have been weighed. 2 Thou wilt have been weighed. 3 He will have been weighed.  
*Plu.* 1 We shall have been weighed. 2 Thou wilt have been weighed. 3 He will have been weighed.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Sing.* 1 Let me be weighed. 2 Be thou weighed, or Do thou be weighed. 3 Let him be weighed.  
*Plu.* 1 Let us be weighed. 2 Be ye or you weighed, or Do ye be weighed. 3 Let them be weighed.

We may say "Do let me be weighed," "Do let him be weighed," "Do let us be weighed," "Do let them be weighed," "Bid him be weighed," "Bid them be weighed," "Make him be weighed," "Make them be weighed."

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

## PRESENT AND FUTURE TENSES.

*Sing.* 1 I may be weighed. 2 Thou mayst be weighed. 3 He may be weighed.  
*Plu.* 1 We may be weighed. 2 Ye or you may be weighed. 3 They may be weighed.

## And thus :

*Sing.* 1 I may, can, must, need, or dare be weighed. 2 Thou mayst, canst, must, needst, or dardest be weighed. 3 He may, can, must, need, or dares be weighed.  
*Plu.* 1 We may, can, must, need, or dare be weighed. 2 Ye or you may, can, must, need, or dare be weighed. 3 They may, can, must, need, or dare be weighed.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I might, could, or durst be weighed. 2 Thou mightst, couldst, or durst be weighed. 3 He might, could, or durst be weighed.  
*Plu.* 1 We might, could, or durst be weighed. 2 Ye or you might, could, or durst be weighed. 3 They might, could, or durst be weighed.

Another form is—1 I had need be weighed. 2 Thou hadst need be weighed, &c.

## CONDITIONAL IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I should or would be weighed. 2 Thou shouldst or wouldst be weighed. 3 He should or would be weighed.  
*Plu.* 1 We should or would be weighed. 2 Ye or you should or would be weighed. 3 They should or would be weighed.

## PERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I may, can, or need have been weighed. 2 Thou mayst, canst, or needst have been weighed. 3 He may, can, or need have been weighed.  
*Plu.* 1 We may, can, or need have been weighed. 2 Ye or you may, can, or need have been weighed. 3 They may, can, or need have been weighed.

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

- Sing.* 1 I might, could, must, or durst have been weighed. 2 Thou mightst, couldst, must or durst have been weighed. 3 He might, could, must, or durst have been weighed.
- Pla.* 1 We might, could, must, or durst have been weighed. 2 Ye or you might, could, must, or durst have been weighed. 3 They might, could, must, or durst have been weighed.

## CONDITIONAL PLUPERFECT TENSE.

- Sing.* 1 I should or would have been weighed. 2 Thou shouldst or wouldst have been weighed. 3 He should or would have been weighed.
- Pla.* 1 We should or would have been weighed. 2 Ye or you should or would have been weighed. 3 They should or would have been weighed.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT AND FUTURE TENSES.

- Sing.* 1 If I be weighed. 2 If thou beest weighed. 3 If he be weighed.
- Pla.* 1 If we be weighed. 2 If ye or you be weighed. 3 If he be weighed.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

- Sing.* 1 If I were weighed. 2 If thou wert weighed. 3 If he were weighed.
- Pla.* 1 If we were weighed. 2 If ye or you were weighed. 3 If they were weighed.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

- Sing.* 1 Were I to be weighed. 2 Wert thou to be weighed. 3 Were he to be weighed.
- Pla.* 1 Were we to be weighed. 2 Were ye or you to be weighed. 3 Were they to be weighed.

IMPERFECT TENSE (*Other Forms*).

- Sing.* 1 Might, could, durst, or should I be weighed. 2 Mightst, couldst, durst, or shouldst thou be weighed. 3 Might, could, durst, or should he be weighed.
- Pla.* 1 Might, could, durst, or should we be weighed. 2 Might, could, durst, or should ye or you be weighed. 3 Might, could, durst, or should they be weighed.

## PERFECT TENSE.

- Sing.* 1 Had I been weighed. 2 Hadst thou been weighed. 3 Had he been weighed.
- Pla.* 1 Had we been weighed. 2 Had ye or you been weighed. 3 Had they been weighed.

PERFECT TENSE (*Other Forms*).

- Sing.* 1 Could or durst I have been weighed. 2 Couldst or durst thou have been weighed. 3 Could or durst he have been weighed.
- Pla.* 1 Could or durst we have been weighed. 2 Could or durst ye or you have been weighed. 3 Could or durst they have been weighed.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, Being weighed.

PERFECT TENSE, To have been weighed.

FUTURE TENSE, To be going to be weighed, or To be about to be weighed.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT, To be weighed.

COMPOUND PERFECT, Having been weighed.

FIRST FUTURE, About to be weighed, Being about to be weighed, or About being weighed.

SECOND FUTURE, About to have been weighed.

## TO BE WEIGHED.

## PARTICIPIAL INFLECTION.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

- Sing.* 1 I am being weighed. 2 Thou art being weighed. 3 He is being weighed.
- Pla.* 1 We are being weighed. 2 Ye or you are being weighed. 3 They are being weighed.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Sing.* 1 I was being weighed. 2 Thou wast being weighed. 3 He was being weighed.  
*Plu.* 1 We were being weighed. 2 Ye or you were being weighed. 3 They were being weighed.

Other tenses of this inflection are sometimes used, as "Were I now being weighed."

Another form of the participial inflection of the passive is made with the participle in *ing* and the prefix *a*; as "I am a weighing;" "The book is a publishing;" "The paper is a printing."

Where the action concerns several persons mutually, we say "They are a-fighting, a-quarreling, a-riding; but then the sense is active, and means "They are fighting together, or quarreling together; they are riding out."

As this form is not clear, the participial inflection of the passive, "The goods are being weighed," is commonly used, although most of the grammarians say, that we cannot speak of "am being," "is being," "are being." These rest on the same law as other idiomatic or usual expressions, where custom overrides logical accuracy. The objections are as hypercritical as when we are told we must not say "The kettle boils," "the saucepan boils over;" inasmuch as the kettle does not boil, but the water in the kettle boils, and so does that in the saucepan. The cook, who has on the fire a pot, a boiler, a saucepan, and a kettle, will however say, "The pot boils," "the kettle is boiling," "the saucepan is boiling over;" though it may be right to say, "that the water or chemical substance, containing hydrogen and oxygen, which has been put into the kettle, is at this time boiling, or is beginning to boil, or about to boil." Perhaps, after all, it may be found out some day that even the water does not boil, and we shall have to start anew for the right path. Overrefining and overdefining can seldom reach their wishedfor end, and never in words; for speech, so far from having its groundwork in narrow and straight definitions, is an instrument for cutting short both definitions and descriptions. When we say a "man," "mammoth," "fly," how short the word to define and point out a wonderful work of the Almighty; how short, on the other hand, the longest life to describe or comprehend thoroughly one of these works!

In speaking, two things seem to be needful, not only that one man should be willing to speak so as to be understood, but that the other should be willing to understand what is said; carping about words being much idler and much more to be blamed than speaking loosely. If men thought more about the things they say and hear, and less about the words, we should hear less of these objections.

The conjugation heretofore given is in the affirmative form; but for denying, some slight modification takes place. Most commonly, the auxiliary inflection is taken rather than the radical. Though we say "I care not," "I do not care" is more common.

In speaking, the words are run together, shortened, and the accents shifted. The following are the leading forms:—

"I do [*doo*] not weigh," made *I dōnt* weigh, "*He dōnt* or *dáz-ent*, *we dōnt*;" "I did not weigh," made *did-ent*; "I weigh not," "I weighed not," "I have not weighed," made *I hānt*; "He has not," made *He hāz-ent*; "I had not weighed," made *I hād-ent*; "I shall not weigh," made *I shānt*; "I will not weigh," made *I wōnt*; "Let me not weigh," "Weigh not," "Do not weigh," made *Dōnt* weigh.

"I máynot weigh," made *I maynt*; "I cánnnot weigh," made *I carnt*; "I místnot weigh," made *I mús-ent*; "I néednot weigh," made *I néed-ent*; "I míghtnot weigh," made *I myt-ent*; "I cōldnot weigh," made *I cōld-ent*; "I dúrstnot weigh," made *I dúrs-ent*; "I shōldnot weigh," made *I shōld-ent*; "I wōldnot weigh," made *I wōd-ent*.

"I am not weighing," made *I aynt, He is-ent, We aynt or arnt*; "I was not weighing," made *I woz-ent, He woz-ent, We ware-ent*; "I am not weighed," made *I aynt*.

Most of these spoken forms have been doomed by the grammarians as *vulgar*, which they are, being spoken by the great body of the English, and being in accordance with the genius of the English tongue. Even the straightest of the grammarians in speaking will say, "I cannot," instead of "I can not," running the words together, and it seems difficult to draw the line.

With the past participle, instead of *not*, the prefix *un* is much used. Thus, instead of "It is not weighed," we may say "It is unweighed."

With the negative *never* we do not commonly use either the auxiliary or participial form. We do not say, "I do never work, I am never working, He was never working;" but "I never work, I never worked."

In asking questions, the auxiliary inflection is most used; as "Do I weigh? Dost thou weigh? Does he weigh? Do we weigh? Do they weigh? Did I weigh? Have I weighed?" and so forth.

In the world, we see around us the wonderful variety of an Almighty hand; in the works of man we witness narrowness of thought; but to make the works and thoughts of men more worthless, learned men have striven everywhere to bring all things under one uniform simple law. Thus the knowledge of the stars was kept back for hundreds of years, while learned men were laying down laws as to round balls, round paths, threes, sevens, and wonderful numbers. Their great endeavour has been not to see the world as it is, but as wise men think it ought to be; though the more we know of the Almighty laws, the further are the bounds of knowledge carried. When it was laid down that the path or orbit of Saturn was not a simple and uniform round, the learned began to look for other stars, which, unseen and unknown, acted upon that path of Saturn. Hence the finding of Uranus and Neptune. So long as it was believed the path of Saturn was a round, no outward influence was looked for.

Grammar—but above all, English grammar—has smarted under the attempts to bring everything under the great law, as it is held, of uniformity. At one time, English verbs were almost put out of being, inasmuch as they were not like Latin and Greek verbs, the tenses were held down to the lowest number, and every auxiliary was kept out of the list as long as might be. It has been laid down that the plural and participle in *-en* are irregular, as the one does not end, the same as the substantive, in *a*, nor the other as the verbs, in *ed*; and thus an inroad was sought to be made on the English tongue, ending in the cutting off of most of the leading words. A further evil comes from these attacks, which is, that by blotting out a word, our old and best books are likewise blotted, and many a saying of Shakspeare is blurred, that the law of grammar may be set even and straight, so as to have the fewest laws and the fewest exceptions. Indeed, if the new laws of English grammar held good, the works of the Elizabethan writers would no longer be standards to be looked up to, but rather to be shunned.

It seems a small thing to "regularise" and bring under another law a few words, but the worth of words is not to be reckoned by numbers, but by the way in which they are brought to bear. One word may be spoken or written ten times or a hundred times oftener than another, and may be spoken oftener than written; and this is most true as to what have been named the irregular substantives and verbs. They are the heart and lungs of English speech, always at work, and forming its greatest strength. The so-called irregular verbs "To Have, To Be, and To Do," are used oftener than all the other twenty thousand regular verbs put together, and thus it is with the other irregular verbs.

After all, the so-called regularization, or simplification, is only one of writing, for the spoken tongue remains untouched. We may write "passed" and "sipped" as often as we like, but in speaking we shall still say "past" and "sipt."

Instead of a list of Irregular Verbs, there is here given a list of common English verbs, showing most of those of Old English stock, with the way in which they are conjugated and spoken, and of the other verbs, substantives, adjectives, and adverbs made from them. Without these verbs are well understood, no one can get a good knowledge of the English tongue, spoken or written.



<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
Abide	abode	abiding	abode, abided
Acquit	acquitted	acquitting	acquitted, acquit
Ado		adoin	adone
Ake, ache	aked	aking	aked
Arise	arose	arising	arisen
Ask	asked	asking	asked
Awake	awoke	awaking	awaken
Bake	baked, bakt	baking	bakt, baked, baken
Ban	banned	banning	banned
Bare	bared	baring	bared, barren
Be	was	being	been
Bear, to bring forth	bare	bearing	born
Bear, to carry	hore	bearing	borne
Beat	beat	beating	beaten
Beclip	beclipt	beclipping	beclipt
Become	became	becoming	became
Bedeck	bedecked, bedight, bedeckt	bedecking	bedeckt, bedecked, bedight, bedridden, bedrid
Befall	befell		befallen
Beg	begged	begging	begged
Beget	begot	begetting	begotten
Begin	began	beginning	begun

**ABIDE** has for its verbal noun *Abode*. We say, an *abiding* sin. *Abide* is likewise used with the meaning of *bear*; as I cannot abide him. *Acquit* makes for its verbal nouns, *Acquittal*, *Acquittance*; as an adjective, *Unacquitted*. *Ado* is thus used: "Much *ado* about nothing." (To do is, however, so used—A great to do.) "There is nothing *adoin*g;" "Adone with that;" "Have you *adone*?" "What are you *adoin*g?"

**AWAKEN** is sometimes used for *Awake*; it makes *Awakening*, *Awakened*.

*Awake* is used as an adverb.

**BAKE** has for its verbal nouns, *Baker*, one who bakes; *Baxter*, a woman baker; *Batch*, what is baked—as A *Batch* of rolls, of bread; *Bacon*, what has been baked or smoked; *Baconhog*; *Bakehouse*.

*Baking* is used in *Baking pear*. The participle *Baken* is only applied to hogflesh. *Unbaked*.

**BARE** has for its verbal adjective *Bare* [*Barely*, *bareness*]. The participle *Barren* is used only adjectively; it makes *Barrenly*, *Barrenness*.

*Be*—*Being* is used as a substantive.

**BEAR** [*bare*], to bring forth, has for its verbal nouns, *Birth*, what is born, or the time of bearing [*Birthright*, *Birthday*, *Birthnight*, *Birthnote*, *Birthwort*, *Birthstrangled*]; *Berry*; *Barn*, a child born; *Barm*, yeast.

We speak of a tree in *bearing*; *childbearing*.

The participle *born* is used in *born* fool, *born* knave, *born* idiot; *unborn*.

*Bear* is conjugated I *bare*, thou *bärst* or *bare-est*, he *bärth*, *bare-eth*, or *bärs*; I *bare*, thou *bärst*, or *bare-est*, he *bare*.

**BEAR** [*bare*], to carry, to suffer, has for its verbal nouns, *Bearer*, one who bears; *Burthen*, what is borne; *Bier*, *Barrow* [hand barrow, wheel barrow], a thing which bears; *Bearing*, *Bearings*, situation.

We say "This is beyond *bearing*," that is, "not to be borne."

The verbal adjectives and adverb are, *Bearable*, *Unbearable*, *Burthensome*, *Unbearably*.

The compounds of *Bear* are *Forebear*, *Overbear*.

It is said sometimes, "I cannot a-bear that," after the English-Saxon *abearan*.

*Bear* is conjugated "I *bare*, thou *bärst* or *bare-est*, he *bärth*, *bare-eth* or *bärs*; I *bore*, thou *börst* or *bore-est*, he *bore*."

**BEAT** [*beet*], makes *Beat* substantive, and *Unbeaten* adjective; *Bat*, a stick for beating; *Battle*, a beating; *Beagle* or *Beetle*, a hammer. [Butter is perhaps from this root.]

*Beat* is conjugated I *beet*, thou *beetst* or *beet-est*, he *beet'h*, *beet-eth*, or *beets*; I *beet* or *bat*, thou *beetst*, *beet-est*, *betst*, or *bet-test*, he *beet* or *bet*.

**BECOMING** is used adjectively, and makes *Becomingly*, *Unbecoming*, *Unbecomingly*, *Becomingness*, *Misbecoming*. It is from the verb *cuceman*, to please, and not from *cuman*, to come.

**BEDECK** is from *Deck*, to cover.

**BEG** makes *Beggar*, *Beggary*, *Beggarly*, *Beggarliness*.

We say "Only begotten son;" "Unbegotten;" "Begotten."

**BEGIN** is conjugated I *begin*, thou *beginnest* or *begin'st*; he *begin-neth*, *be-gin'th*, or *begins*; I *began*, thou *be-gan-nest* or *be-gan'st*, he *began*, we *begun*, ye or you *begun*, they *begun*; I have *begun*.

*Beginning* is used as a substantive. The old form, "*gan*," is sometimes used in poetry.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
Begird	begirt	begirding	begirt
Behave	behaved	behaving	behaved
Behold	beheld	beholding	beholden
Belay	belaid	belaying	belain, belaid, belayed
Belle	belled		belled
Believe	believed	believing	believed
Bend	bent	bending	bent
Bequeath	bequeathed	bequeathing	bequeathed
Bereave	bereft	bereaving	bereft
Beseech	besought	beseeching	besought
Beset	beset	besetting	beset
Bespeak	bespoke	bespeaking	bespoken
Bespit	bespat	bespitting	bespitten
Bespread	bespread	bespreading	bespread
Bestead	bestead	besteading	bestead
Bestick	bestuck	besticking	bestuck
Bestrew	bestrewed	bestrewing	bestrown
Bestride	bestrode, bestrid	bestriding	bestridden
Bet	bet, betted	betting	bet, betted
Betake	betook	betaking	betaken
Bethink	bethought	bethinking	bethought
Betide	betid, betided	betiding	betid
Betroth	betrotht, betrothed	betrothing	betrotht, betrothed
Beweep	bewept	beweeping	bewept
Bewray	bewrailed	bewraying	bewrailed
Bid	bade	bidding	bidden
Bide	bided	biding	bided
Bind	bound	binding	bound, bounden
Bite	bit	biting	bitten
Blaze	blazed	blazing	blazed, blast
Bleed	bled	bleeding	bled
Blench	blencht, blenched	blenching	blancht, blanchied
Blend	blent, blended	blending	blent
Bless	blest, blessed	blessing	blest, blessed

Behave, Misbehave, Behaviour, Illbehaviour, make the *a* long, as *ay*, throughout their conjugations and derivatives.

To be beholden, means To be under obligation.

BELIEVE [*beleeve*] makes Belicf, Believer, Believing, Unbelief, Unbeliever, Unbelieving.

BEND has for its verbal substantives Bent, Bender, Bandiness.

Bending, Bent, Bendable, Bendy, and Bandy are used as adjectives. We say, "On his *banded* knees." Bend is connected with *bind* in meaning.

BEQUEATH makes Bequeathal, Bequest.

We say, "A *besetting* sin."

BET has for its substantives Bet, Better, Betting.

BETROTH makes Betrothal, the Betrothed, Unbetrothed.

BID has for its substantives Bid; Bidder; Bode, a messenger [which makes the verbs To Bode, Forbode]; Bidding; Beadle, a crier, messenger.

Bidden makes Unbidden; as "An *unbidden* guest."

BIDE has for its substantive Bed. This verb is most used in its derivative, Abide.

BIND makes for its substantives Binder, one who binds; Band [this makes a verb]; Bond, a thing which binds [Bonded]; Bound, that by which something is bound; Bondsman; Bundle, what is bound up, and its compounds; Bine, Bind, a twisting plant.

Binding makes an adjective and compounds: shoebinding, bookbinding. Bounden is chiefly used as an adjective: "His *bounden* duty." Bound and Unbound are used.

BITE makes for its substantives Biter, one who bites; Bite, the act of biting; Bit, what is bitten, a horse's bit; Bittock, a little bit; Beetle, an insect that bites.

ITS adjective is Bitter, making Bitterly, Bitterness, Embitter, Bittersweet.

The participles are used as adjectives; as Fleabitten, A biting sarcasm.

Bite is conjugated *Thou bytest* or *by-test*, he *byth*, *by-teth*, or *byts*; thou *bittest* or *bit-test*.

BLAZE, to blow up a fire, makes Blast, a blowing; Bluster; Blasted, what has been blazed; Blister.

BLEED has for its substantives, Bleeder; Blood [Bloodgullitness, Bloodshed, Bloodstone, Bloodhound]; Bleeding.

Its adjectives are Bloody, Bloodless [Bloodily, Bloodthirsty, Bloodthirstily, Bloodiness].

BLEND [from the old verb *blinnan*, to cease, to leave off] makes Blind, Blunt, and their derivatives; Unblench.

BLESS, to make happy, makes Bliss, Blessing, Blessedness, substantives; and Blissful, adjective. Blessed, Blithe, Blithesome, Blissome, and Unblest, are used as adjectives. Bless is conjugated I *bless*, thou *bles-sest*, he *bles-seth* or *bles-ses*; I *blest* or *bles-sed*, thou *bles-sest*.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
Blot	blotted	blotting	blotted
Blow	blew	blowing	blown
Boil	boiled	boiling	boiled
Bore	bored	boring	bored
Bow	bowed	bowing	bowed
Braid	braided	braiding	braided
Break	broke	breaking	broken
Breed	bred	breeding	bred
Brew	brewed	brewing	brewed
Bring	brought	bringing	brought
Brook	brookt, brooked	brooking	brookt, brooked
Brush	brusht, brushed	brushing	brusht, brushed
Build	built	building	built
Burn	burnt, burned	burning	burnt, burned
Burst	burst	bursting	burst, bursten
Bury	buried	burying	buried
Busy	busied	busying	busied
Buy	bought	buying	bought
Call	called	calling	called
Carry	carried	carrying	carried
Cast	cast	casting	cast
Catch	caught	catching	caught
Chew	chewed	chewing	chewed, chawn

**BLot**, to blot out, makes Blot, Blotch, Blotter, Blottingpaper, Unblotted.

**BLow** [*blo*] makes for its substantives, Blow, a shock; Blowth, the state of blowing; Blower, one who blows; Blight, what is blown upon [which makes a verb]; Blossom; Bloom, what is blown [this makes a verb]; Bladder, what is blown up; Blain; Bloat [this makes a verb]; Blore, act of blowing; Blot.

Blowing, Blown, and Unblown, Blowy, Blowzy, Blue, are used as adjectives.

Blow is conjugated I *blo*, thou *blözt* or *blo-est*, he *blöth*, *blö-eth*, or *blöz*; I *blöo* or *blu*, thou *blöest*, *blöost*, or *blu-est*.

**BORe** makes Bore, Borer, Bury, Boring tool, Well boring, Borable.

**BOw** is two verbs—Bow [*bo*], active transitive, to bend; Bow [*bow*], active intransitive, to be made to bend. This root makes Pow [*bow*], a salutation, front part of a ship; Bough, a bending twig; Bower [*bouer*], one who bows; Bound, a spring; Bight, a bend; Bow [*bo*], a bent stick; Bowyer, a maker of bows; Bowl [*bole* or *boul*] and its derivatives; and perhaps Boom, a bending tree; Boat, a tree hollowed out; Box, wood hollowed out; Board, a blade of wood bowed out with a wedge; Bog, bending quaking ground.

Its adjectives are Buxom, bending, pliant, obedient; Bowlegged.

**BRAID** is now used only in the sense of to make wider by plaiting. It makes Braid, Braider, Braided, Broad [spread out], Abroad, Bradawl [a wide awl]. Spread is from this root.

**BREAk** [*brake*] makes Breaker; Break; Brake, a broken piece of bush; Breach; Brick, a single piece of pottery; Brake, for stopping a carriage; Brook, a spring breaking out; Brush, a skirmish; Broach; Breaker, Breakers; Bruise [what is broken]; Bray in a mortar. The adjectives, &c., are Broken, Unbroken, Abroach, Brittle.

Break is sometimes made the imperfect of *break*. Break is conjugated I *brake*, thou *bräkt* or *brake-est*, he *bräktth*, *brake-eth*, or *brakes*; I *bröke*, thou *brökt* or *bröke-est*.

**BREED** [from the same root as Braid], makes Brat; Brood, what is bred [this makes a verb]; Bride, what is to breed, and its derivatives Bridal, &c.; Breeding; Breeder. Breeding and Bred make adjectives. Breed is conjugated I *brede*, thou *breedt* or *brede-est*, he *breedth*, *brede-eth*, or *breeds*; I *bred*, thou *breedt* or *bred-est*.

**BREW** makes Brewer, Brewery, Broth, Brewis, Bread.

**BROOK**, to bear, makes Broker and its derivatives.

**BUILD** makes Builder, Building, Unbuilt, Bold. It is from the verb *buam*, to inhabit, which makes Booth, Bothy, By [in the names of towns], Bide, Borough or Burgh, Burgher, Boor, Neighbour.

**BURN** makes Burner, Brown, Brand, Unburnt.

**BURY** [*ber-re*] makes Burial; Burrow [with the sound of short *u*]; Bury or Burrow, a place of burial; Unburied.

**BUSY** [*bis-se*] makes Busy [adjective], Busily, Business, Busybody.

**BUY** is spoken *by*. It is conjugated I *by*, thou *byst* or *by-est*, he *byth*, *by-eth*, or *bys*; I *bort*, thou *bortst* or *bortest*.

**CALL** is spoken *cawl*, and makes Call, Calling, Recall.

**CARRY** [*car-r-re*] makes Cart, Carriage, Carrier, Miscarry.

**CAST** [*cast*] makes Cast, Casting, Cast up, Caster. It is conjugated I *cast*, thou *cast-est*, he *cast-eth* or *casts*.

**CATCH** makes Key, Uncaught.

**CHAW** makes Chew, Unchawed, Chaw, and their derivations; Cud, what is chewed.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
Chide	chide, chode	chiding	chidden
Chine	chined	chining	chined
Choose	chose	choosing	chosen
Chop, <i>to cut</i>	chopt, chopped	chopping	chopped, chapped
Chop, <i>to change</i>	chopt, chopped	chopping	chopped
Clam	clam	claming	
Clap	clapt, clapped	clapping	clapt, clapped
Cleave, <i>to stick</i>	clave	cleaving	cleaved
Cleave, <i>to split</i>	clove	cleaving	cleven, cleft
Climb	climbed, clamb	climbing	climbed
Cling	cling, clang	clinging	clung
Clink	clinked	clinking	clinked
Clothe	clad	clothing	clad
Come	came	coming	come
Con	conned	conning, cunning	conned
Cool	cooled	cooling	cooled, cold
Cost	cost	costing	cost
Crack	crackt, cracked	cracking	crackt, cracked
Cram	crammed	cramming	crammed
Crave	craved	craving	craved, craven
Creep	crept	creeping	crept
Cross	crost, crossed	crossing	crost, crossed
Crow	crew	crowing	crown, crowed
Crush	crusht, crushed	crushing	crusht, crushed
Cry	cried	crying	cried
Curse	curst, cursed	cursing	curst, cursed
Dab	dabbed	dabbing	dabbed
Dam	dagmed	damming	dammed

**CHIDE**, to split, gape, makes *Chine*. *Chink*.

**CHOOSE** [*chooz*] makes *Choice* [*chois*], *Chooser*, *Choiceness*, *Unchosen*.

Its adjectives are *Chosen*, *Choice*, *Choiely*. It is conjugated I *chooz*, thou *chooz-est*, he *chooz-eth* or *chooz-es*; I *choze*, thou *choz-est*.

**CHOP**, to change, makes *Chapman*, a dealer; *Chapbooks*; *Chipping*; *Cheap*, as in *Cheapside*; *Cheap*, adjective; *Cheapen*, to deal, to make cheap. *Chop* is conjugated I *chop*, thou *chop-est* or *chop-est*, he *chopth*, *chop-eth*, or *chopz*; I *chopt*, thou *chop-est*.

**CHOP**, to cut, consists of two verbs—*Chop*, to cut; and *Chap*, to hew with or cut; and makes *Chopper*; *Chap*, a blow; *Kibe*, a cut; *Chap*, a cut made.

**CLAM** is most used in its derivatives, *Clam*, a fish; *Clamp*, a holdfast; *Clammy*, sticky; *Clamminess*; *Clammily*.

**CLAP** makes *Clap*, *Clapper*, *Clappers*.

**CLEAVE**, to stick, makes *Clip*, anything which holds; *Clip*, to embrace; *Club*, to hold together.

**CLEAVE**, to split, makes *Cleaver*; *Cleft*, what is cut; *Clover*, split grass; *Claw*, a split foot, and its derivatives; *Clough*, *Clip*, to cut; *Clip* of wool; *Clippers*; *Clove* of Garlic; *Clee* of a split hoof. *Cloven* [split] hoof, tongue, &c.; *Uncloven*.

**CLING** makes *Clutch* and its derivatives; *Clinging*; *Clinker*. *Cling* is conjugated I *cling*, thou *clingst* or *cling-est*, he *clingth*, *cling-eth*, or *clings*; I *clang*, thou *clangst* or *clang-est*.

**CLINK** makes *Clank*, sometimes written *Clang*; *Clinking*.

**CLOTHE** makes *Cloth* [*dorth*], *Clothes* [*cloth*], *Cloed*, *Clothing* [*clothe-ing*], *Clothier*, *Clout*, *Unclad*.

**COME** is conjugated I *cum*, thou *cumst* or *cum-est*, he *cumth*, *cum-eth*, or *cums*; I *came*, thou *cāst* or *came-est*; *cum-ing*.

**COW** is akin to the verb *Ken*; its participle *Cunning* is used only as a substantive and adjective. *Kute*, knowing; *Cute*, *Cuteness* [*cute-nes*], knowledge; *Cutely*; *Uncooth*; *Unknowing*—are from this verb.

**COOL** makes *Cold* [substantive and adjective], *Coldly*, *Coldness*, *Cool* [adjective], *Coolly*, *Coolness*, *Chill*, *Chilly*, *Chillness*. The participle *Cold* is only used as an adjective.

**COST** makes *Cost*, *Costly*.

**CRACK** makes *Crack*, *Cracker*, *Cracky*, to *Crackle*.

**CRAVE** makes *Craving*, as a substantive. *Craven* is only used for one who has asked his life, or given in.

**CREEP** makes *Creeper*, *Crawl* and its derivatives, *Croop*, *Cripple* and its derivatives.

**CROW** is conjugated I *cro*, thou *crost* or *cro-est*, he *croth*, *cro-eth*, or *croz*; I *croo*, thou *croost* or *croo-est*; he had *croze*; *cro-ing*.

**CRY** makes *Cry*, *Crow* and its derivatives, *Crier*, *Crying*. It is conjugated I *cri*, thou *crist* or *cri-est*, he *crieth*, *cri-eth*, or *crize*.

**CURSE** makes *Curse*, *Cursing*, *Curst*, *Cursed*, *Accursed*.

**DAB** makes *Dab*, *Daub*, *Dabble*, *Dabster*, and their compounds.

**DAM**, to stop, makes *Dam*, *Dumb*, and its derivatives.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
Dare, to venture	durst	daring	dared
Dare, to challenge	dared	daring	dared
Dase	dazed	dazing	dazed
Deal	dealt	dealing	dealt
Decry	decried	decrying	decried
Deem	deemed	deeming	deemed
Deive	deift, deived	deiving	deift, deived
Die	died	dying	died, dead
Dig	dug	digging	dug
Dim	dimmed	dimming	dimmed
Din	dinned	dinning	dinned, dint
Dine	dined	dining	dined
Dip	dipt, dipped	dipping	dipt, dipped
Dirt	dirted	dirting	dirted
Dive	dove or dived	diving	dived, diven
Do	did	doing	done
		downbearing	downborne
		downcasting	downcast
		downfalling	downfallen
Drag	dragged	dragging	dragged, dredged
Draw	drew	drawing	drawn
Drawl	drawled	drawing	drawled
Dread	dreaded	dreading	dreaded
Dream	dreamt, dreamed	dreaming	dreamt, dreamed
Dress	drest, dressed	dressing	drest, dressed
Drink	drank	drinking	drunk, drunken
Drip	dript, dripped	dripping	dript, dripped
Drive	drove	driving	driven
Drop	dropt, dropped	dropping	dropt, dropped
Drown	drowned	drowning	drowned, drent
Drub	drubbed	drubbing	drubbed
Drudge	drudged	drudging	drudged
Dry	dried	drying	dried

**DASE** makes Dase, Dose, Dased, to Dase's, Day, Dawn.

**DEAL** [deaf] makes Deal; Dole, a part; Deal, a plank; Dealer; Dealing. It is conjugated *I deal, thou dealest or deal'st, he dealeth, dealeth, or deale; I delt, thou delst or dell'st; dealing.*

**DREAM** makes Dream, a judgment; Dreamer, a judge.

**DIE** makes Death [death], Deadly [deadly], Deaden, Undying, Deathlike, Deathless, Dwindle. It is conjugated *I dy, thou dyest or dy'st, he dyeth, dyeth, or dyes; I died, thou dydest or dyed'st.* The passive form is made with *dead* [dead]: He is dead, &c. This is used in preference to the auxiliary form, Have died, Had died.

**DIGO** makes Dike, Ditch, and their compounds.

**DIM** makes Dim, Dun, Dark, and their derivatives.

**DIN**, to knock, strike, makes Din, the noise of knocking; Dent, a hole; Dint, continuous striking.

**DINE** makes Dinner, Dine, Dining.

**DIP** makes Deep, Depth, Dip, Dipper, Steep, &c.

Do is spoken *doo*; it makes *I do* [doo], thou dost [dust], he doth [duth], does [dus] or doeth [doo-eth], we, ye, or they do [doo]; I did, &c.; I have done [dus].

Do makes Deed, Dough [do], Doer [doo-er], Doing [doo-ing], Doinga.

In the imperative, Have done and Bedone are sometimes used for Do thou or ya.

We say Downcast, a Downfall, a Downdraught, a Downbidding, a Downhanging branch, Downheaving.

**DRAO** makes Drag, Draggles, Dredge.

**DRAW** makes Draft or Draught [what is drawn], Drawer, Drawing, Drain, Drega, Dry.

**DRAWL** makes Drone.

**DREAD** makes Dread, Dreading, Dreadful, Dreadfully, Dreadless, Dreadfulness, Dreadlessness, Drearly, Drearly, Dreariness.

**DREAM** [dream] makes Dream, Dreamy, Dreaminess. Dreamt is spoken *dremt*; Dreamed, *dreemed*.

**DRESS** makes Dress, Dressing, Dresser, Dressy, Dressiness.

**DRINK** is akin to Drench and Drown, and makes Drink, Drinkable, Undrinkable, Drinker. It is conjugated *I drink; I drank, thou drankest, he drank, we drunk, ye or you drunk, they drunk.* Drunken is most used as an adjective.

**DRIP** makes Dripper, Drip, Droop, Drop, Dripping, Dribble, Drivel, and their compounds.

**DRIVE** [drive] makes Drive, Driver, Driving, Drove, Drovers, Dray, Drift, Adrift, and their compounds.

**DRUB** and **THROB** are akin.

**DRY** makes Drowth, Drought, Dry [adjective], Drily, Adry, Drier.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
Dab	dabbed	dabbing	dabbed
Dull	dulled	dulling	dulled
Dwell	dwelt, dwelled	dwelling	dwelt, dwelled
Dye	dyed	dyeing	dyed
Earn	earnt, earned	earning	earnt, earned
Eat	ate	eating	aten
Eke	eked, eked	eking	eked, eked
Ebb	ebbed	ebbing	ebbed
End	ended	ending	ended
Engrave	engraved	engraving	engraved, engraven
Entrap	entrapt, entrapped	entrapping	entrapt, entrapped
Fain	fained	faining	fained
Faint	fainted	fainting	fainted
Fall	fell	falling	fallen, falln
Fang	fangd	fanging	fangd
Fare	farred	faring	farred
Farm	farmed	farming	farmed
Fat	fatted	fating	fatted
Fear	feared	fearing	feared
Feed	fed	feeding	fed
Feel	felt	falling	felt
Fetch	fetcht, fetched	fetching	fetcht, fetched
Fight	fought	fighting	fought
Fill	filled	filling	filled
Find	found	finding	found
Fit	fitted	fitting	fitted
Flag	flagged	flagging	flagged
Flay	flaid, flayed	flaying	flaid, flayed
Flee	fled	fleeing	fled
Fleet, to skim	fleeted	fleeing	fleeted, flotten
Flick	flicked	flicking	flickt, flicked
Fling	flang	flinging	flung
Float	floated	floating	floated
Flow	flowed	flowing	flowed
Fly	flew	flying	flown
Fold	folded	folding	folded
Forbear	forbore	forbearing	forborne
Forbid	forbade	forbidding	forbidden

DULL makes Dolt, Dull [adjective], Dully, Dulness, Dullard, Doltish.

DWELL makes Dwelling, Dweller. We say commonly, He *dwelt* there, He *dwelled* on that subject.

DYE [dy] makes Dye, Dyer, Dyeing, Dyery.

EARN [ern] makes Earning; Earner; Earnest, what is earned, and the adjective from it.

EAT [et] makes Eater, Eatable, Uneatable, Uneaten.

EATS is, perhaps, from this root.

EAT is conjugated I *eat*, thou *eatst* or *eat-est*, he *eat-eth* or *eats*; I *ate*, thou *didst* or *ate-est*; *eat-ing*; *eat-en*.

FALL [fawl] makes Fall, Falter, Fold, Foal, Offal.

FANG, to take, makes Fang, Finger.

FARE makes Fare, Ford, Forth, Far, Ferry, and their compounds.

FAT makes Fat [substantive and adjective], Fatner, Faling, Fatten.

FEAR [fer] makes Fearful, Fearless, Fright, Frighten, Afeard, Unfeared, Afraid, and their compounds.

FEED makes Feed, Feeder, Food, Fodder, Fuddle, Foster, a Feeder, and their compounds.

FIGHT [fy] makes Fighter, Fighting, Foe, Foeman, Foud, Fiend [an enemy].

FILL makes Fill, Full, Fold [many, as Threefold].

FIND [fynd] makes Finding, Finder, Founding.

PLAY makes Flayer, Fleece, Floss, Flax [a plant which is flayed], Flitch of bacon.

FLIES makes Flight, Flea, Flighly.

FLICK or FLECK, to hit, makes Flick, Flaw, Flint.

FLING makes Flinch, Fling, Flinger. It is conjugated I *fling*; I *flang*, thou *flangest* or *flangst*, he *flang*, we *flung*, ye or you *flung*, they *flung*.

FLOAT makes Float; Floating; Fleet, a place where vessels float; Fleet, a body of vessels.

FLOW [flo], makes Flow, Flowing, Flush, Flood, and their compounds; Flame, a channel.

FLY makes Fly, a period of flying; Fly, an insect; Flock, animals flying together; Flitter; Flicker; Flutter; Flux, something which has flown off; Fledge; Flier; Flight; Fliz; to Flag; and their compounds.

Fly is conjugated I *fly*, thou *flyst* or *fly-est*, he *flyth*, *fl-eth*, or *flies*; I *flew* or *flu*, thou *flewst*, *flew-est*, or *flu-est*.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
Forego			forgone
Forerun	foreran	forerunning	forerun
Forget	forgot	forgetting	forgotten
Forgive	forgave	forgiving	forgiven
Foreknow	foreknew	foreknowing	foreknown
Forsake	forsook	forsaking	forsoaken
Foresee	foresaw	foreseeing	foreseen
Forswear	forsovere, forswore	forswearing	forsovere
Foretell	foretold	foretelling	foretold
Foul	fouled	fouling	fouled
Frame	framed	framing	framed
Fray	frald, frayed	fraying	frald, frayed
Free	freed	freeing	freed
Freeze, froze	froze	freezing	frozen
Freight	freighted	freighting	fraught, freighted
Fret	fretted	fretting	fretted
Frisk	friskt, frisked	frisking	friskt, frisked
Fulfil	fulfilled	fulfilling	fulfilled
Gainsay	gainsaid	gainsaying	gainsaid
Gainsand	gainstood	gainstanding	gainstood
Gainstrive	gainstrove	gainstriving	gainstriven
Game	gamed	gaming	gamed
Gape	gaped	gaping	gaped
Gather	gathered	gathering	gathered
Geld	gelt	gelding	gelt
Get	got	getting	gotten, got
Gild	gilt, gilded	gilding	gilt, golden
Gird	girt, girded	girding	girt
Give	gave	giving	given
Gleam	gleamed	gleaming	gleamed
Glide	glided	gliding	glided
Glow	glowed	glowing	glowed
Gnaw	gnawed	gnawing	gnawed
Go	went	going	gone

We say Forerunning, Forethought, Forecast, a Forerunner.

For the conjugation of Forerun, see Run.

**FOUL** makes Filth, Foul, Foully, Fulsome, Filthy, Filthily, Fuller [one who gets rid of filth, a cleaner], to Full, and their compounds.

**FRAME** makes Frame, Framework, Framers, Framing, Form.

**FRAY**, to frighten, makes Fright, Afraid, Frightful, Frightfully. Fray, to rub, makes Fraying.

**FREE** makes Freedom; Freeman; Frolic, a freeday, a holiday; Frolicsome; to Frolic; Friend, with whom one is free; and their compounds.

**FREEZE** makes Frost. Frore is used by Milton, and Frome by Spenser.

**FRAUGHT** is used chiefly as an adjective.

**FRET** makes Fretwork, Fretful, Fretfully, Fretfulness, Frit, Fritter, and their compounds. **FULFIL** takes a French ending, and makes Fulfilment, Unfulfilled.

**GAME** makes Game, Gamble, Gamester, Gambler, Gamesome, Gay, and their compounds. **GAPE** makes Gap, Gaper.

**GATHER** makes Gather, Gathers, Gathering, Gatherer, Together, Ungathered.

This verb is pronounced Gather and Gether.

**GILD** makes Gilder; Golden; Guild, where payment is made in common; Gilding; Gilt.

**GIRD** [gird] makes Girth, Girdle, Girder, Garden [what is girt].

**GIVE** [give] makes Gift, Gavel, Giver, Gifted.

The *a* in Gave is long. Give is conjugated Thou *givest* or *giv-est*, he *giveth*, *giv-eth*, or *gives*; Thou *gavest* or *ga-vest*.

**GLEAM**, to shine suddenly, makes Glimmer, Gleam, Glass, Gloom or Gloaming [whence Gloom], and their compounds.

**GLOW** [glo] makes Glow, Glowing, Glitter, Glisten, Glare, Gloss, and their compounds.

Glow is conjugated I *glo*; thou *glōst* or *glo-est*, he *glothe*, *glo-eth*, or *gloze*; I *glode*, thou *glo-edst*.

**GNAW** makes Gnawing, Gnat, Gnash, and their compounds.

**GO** [with the long *o*] makes Gate, a way through; Gait, way of going; Gang; Going; fuzee; Gangway; Bygone.

**WENT** is from the verb *wend*. Begone! is often said in the imperative.

**GO** is conjugated I *go*, thou *go-est* or *gōst*, he *goth*, *go-eth*, or *goes*; thou *went-est* or *wentst*; *go-er* or *be-gone*, let him *go*, let us *go* or let us be *go-ing*, *go* or *be-gone*, let them *go*; *go-ing*; *gone*.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
Grave	grove	graving	graven, graved
Greet	greeted	greeting	greeted
Grin	grinned	grinning	grinned
Grind	ground	grinding	ground
Grip	gript, gripped	gripping	gript, gripped
Groan	groaned	groaning	groaned
Grope	groped	groping	groped
Grow	grew	growing	grown
Gush	gushed, gusht	gushing	gushed, gusht
Guess	guest, guessed	guessing	guest, guessed
Hack	hacked, hactt	hacking	hactt, hacked
Hale	haled	haling	haled
Hang	hung	hanging	hung
Hap	hanged	hanging	hanged
Harpy	happed	happing	happed
Hate	harried	harrying	harried
Have	hated	hating	hated
Heal	had	having	had
Heap	healed	healing	healed
Hear	heaped, heapt	heaping	heaped, heapt
Heat	heard	hearing	heard
Heave	heated	heating	heated, hot
Heed	hove	heaving	hoven, heaved
Heel	heeded	heeding	heeded
Help	heeled	heeling	heeled
Hew	helped	helping	helped, holpen
Hide	hewed	hewing	hewn
Hie	hid	hiding	hidden
Hinder	hied	hying	hied
Hire	hindered	hinderling	hindered
	hired	hiring	hired

GRAVE makes Grave, Graver, Graft, Groove, and their compounds.

GRIND makes Grinder, Grind, Grinding, Grist [what is ground], Grit, Greet, Grout, Groat [dust of grinding].

GRIP makes Grip, Gripe, Grapple, Gripling, Gripper, Grapnel, Grasp, and their compounds.

GROAN makes Groan, Grunt, Grumble.

GROPE and GRUB seem to be the same verb, and make Grub [an insect], Grubber.

GROW [gro] makes Growth, Growing, Grower, Grass, Green, Ground, Root.

GUSH [with u short] makes Gush, Gushing, Gut, Gutter, Guzzle.

HACK makes Hackle.

HALE makes Haul and its compounds.

HANG, to hang a man, makes Hanged. Hang has for its compounds Hanging, Hanger, Hangman, Hook. Hang, to hang anything, also makes Hanging, Hung.

HAP makes Hap, Happen, Happy, and their compounds.

HARRY makes Harm and its compounds.

For this verb Harrow and Harass are sometimes used.

HATE makes Hate, Hatred, Hated, Hater, Hateful, Hatefully.

HAVE makes Having, Haft [haft], Haven [hay-ven]. (See the auxiliary verbs.)

HEAL [heal] makes Health, Healer, Healing, Hale, Whole, Unhealed, Wholesome, and their compounds.

HEAR [hear, from ear] makes Hearing, Harken, Unheard.

Harken, in the imperative, sometimes makes Hark! for Hear thou or ye.

Hear is conjugated I hear, thou heerst or hear-est, he hear-eth or heers; I herd, thou herdst or herd-est; hear-ring.

HEAT [heat] makes Heat, Heating, Heater, Hot, Heated.

HEAVE [heav] makes Heaven [heven], Heavy [hevy], Heaver, Heaving, and their compounds.

HEED makes Heed, Heedful, Heedless, Unheeding, Unheeded, and their compounds.

HEEL makes Halt, one who heels over; Hilding, a weak mean fellow.

HELP makes Helpful, Helpless, Unhelped.

HEW [hu], to shape, makes Hewn; Hue, shape and colour; Hewer; Unhewn.

Hew is conjugated I hu; thou heust or hu-est, he hu-eth or huse; I hude, thou hewdst or hu-est; hu-ing; hune.

HIDE makes Hiding, Hood.

HIE, to go, makes Haste, Hasty, Hasten, Hith [a place to which ships go], and their compounds.

HINDER makes Hindrance.

HIRE makes Hire, Hirer, Hireling, Hiring, Herd [one who is hired], Unhired.

Hire is conjugated I hyr, thou hyrst or hy-rest, he hy-eth or hyrs; I hyrd, thou hyrdst or hy-red; hyring; hyrd or hy-red.



<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
Hiss	hist, hissed	hissing	hist, hissed
Hit	hit	hitting	hit
Hold	held	holding	holden, held
Hop	hopt, hopped	hopping	hopt, hopped
Hope	hoped	hoping	hoped
Hug	hugged	hugging	hugged
Hunger	hungered	hungering	hungered
Hunt	hunted	hunting	hunted
Hurry	hurried	hurrying	hurried
Hurt	hurt	hurting	hurt
Inlay	inlaid	inlaying	inlaid
Inweave	inwove	inweaving	inwoven
Interweave	interwove	interweaving	interwoven
Inn	inued	inning	
Join	joined	joining	joined
Keep	kept	keeping	kept
Ken	kenned	kenning	kenned, kent
Kindle	kindled	kindling	kindled
Kiss	kist, kissed	kissing	kist, kissed
Knap	knapt, knapped	knapping	knapt, knapped
Kneel	knelt	kneeling	knelt
Knip	knipt	knipping	knipt
Knit	knit	knitting	knit, knitten
Knock	knockt, knocked	knocking	knockt, knocked
Know	knew	knowing	known
Lack	lackt, lacked	lacking	lackt, lacked
Lade	laded	lading	laden
Lash	lasht, lashed	lashing	lasht, lashed
Lag	lagged	lagging	lagged
Lap	lapt, lapped	lapping	lapt, lapped
Last	lasted	lasting	lasted
Laugh	laught, laughed	laughing	laught, laughed
Lay	laid	laying	laid
Lead	led	leading	led
Lean	leant, leaned	leaning	leant, leaned
Leap	leapt, leaped	leaping	leapt, leaped
Learn	learnt, learned	learning	learnt, learned

HIT makes Hit, Hitch, Hatch, Unhit.

HOLD makes Hold, Holder, Holding, Hilt, Halter, Holster.

HOP makes Hobble.

HOPE makes Hope, Hopeful, Hopeless, Hoping, Unhoped for, and their compounds.

HUNGER makes Hunger, Hungry, Hungrily.

INN is used for the imperative, Inn [go in], and Inning, Innings [an abode, a making in]. Its substantive is Inn.

JOIN makes Join, Joint, Joiner.

KEEP makes Keep, Keeping, Keeper, Coop.

KEN, to know, makes Canny. See CON.

KNAP [Nap] makes Knob.

KNIP [Nip], to make a short cut, makes Knip, Nippers, Knipping, Snip, Knife.

KNIT makes Knot, Knead or Need, Knitter, Net, and their compounds.

KINDLE, to beget, makes Kin, Kith, Kindred, Akin, Unkindled.

KNOW [no] makes Knowledge [nolled], Knowing, Known [nome], Unknown.

It is conjugated I *kno*, thou *kno-est* or *knowst*, he *nôz*, *kno-eth*, or *noth*; I *nu* or *noe*, thou *newst*, *nu-est*, or *noo-est*; *no-ing*; *none*.

LADE makes Load and its compounds, Last [a burthen], Ladle, Lading, Laden.

LAG makes Laggard.

LAUGH [karf] makes Laughter, Laugh, Laughing, Laughable, Laughably.

LAY makes Law, what is laid down; Layer, who lays; Lath, what is laid; Laid; Lid; Load.

It is conjugated I *kai*, thou *kayst* or *kay-est*, he *kathe*, *kai-eth*, or *kaze*; I *kade*, thou *koydst*; *kai-ing*; *kade*.

LEAD [led] makes Lead, Leading, Led, Lode or Lead of metal, Loadstone [a leading stone], Ladder. Led makes Ledst, Leddest, Leddeth, Ledth.

LEAN [leen]. The imperfect and past participle are spoken *leant*, *leend*, and *leen-ed*.

LEAP [leep]. The imperfect and past participle are spoken *lept*, *leapt*, and *leep-ed*. Leap makes Leap, Leaper, Lapwing.

LEARN [lern]. The imperfect and participle are spoken *lurnt*, *lurned*, *lurned*. Learn makes Learner, Learning, Learned, Lore [what is learned], Unlearned, Unlearned. The participle *Learn-ed* is most used as an adjective.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
Leave	left	leaving	left
Lend	lent	lending	lent
Let	let	letting	let
Lick	lickt, licked	licking	lickt, licked
Lie, to tell a lie	lied	lying, lying	lied
Lie, to lie down	lay	lying	lain
Lift	lifted	lifting	lifted
Light, to set fire	lit, lighted	lighting	lit, lighted
Light, to get down	lighted	lighting	lighted
Like, to love	liked	liking	like
Liken, to make like	likened	likening	likened
Link	linkt, linked	linking	linkt, linked
List	listed	listing	listed
Live	lived	living	lived
Loathe	loathed	loathing	loathed
Lock	locked, lockt	locking	locked, lockt
Lodge	lodged	lodging	lodged
Look	looked, lookt	looking	looked, lookt
Lop	lopt, lopped	lopping	lopt, lopped
Lose	lost	losing	lost, lorn
Lot	lotted	lotting	lotted
Love	loved	loving	loved
Lug	lugged	lugging	lugged
Lust	lusted	lusting	lusted
Make	made	making	made
Man	manned	manning	manned
Mar	marred	marring	marred
Mark	markt, marked	marking	markt, marked
Mean	meant	meaning	meant

LEAVE [*leeve*] makes Leave, Leaving.

LEND makes Lending, Lender, Loan.

LICK makes Licker, Licking, Leech.

LIE or LYE, to tell a lie, makes Lie or Lye, Liar, Lying.

LIE, to lie down, makes Lay, Lair, Layer, and Lager, places of lying down; to Lag; to Lay; Low, what is lying down; Slow, Slouch, Slug, Slough.

It is conjugated I *ly*, thou *lyst* or *ly-est*, he *lyth*, *ly-eth*, or *lys*; I *lai*, thou *layst* or *lai-est*; *ly-ing*; *lane*.

LIFT makes Lift, Lifter, Loft, Lofty, Loaf.

LIGHT, to set fire [*lyte*]. The imperfect and perfect participle make *lit* and *ly-ted*. Light makes a Light, Lighter, Alight [adverb], Lightning, Lighten [to *diase*], Unlighted, and their compounds.

LIGHT or ALIGHT, to get down, makes Light, adjective; Lightly; Lighten, to make lighter. Alighted is most used; it sometimes makes *Alit*.

LIST is sometimes used for *Listest*; thus, "As thou list." List makes Listless, Lust.

LIYE [spoken *lie*, *lied*, *lie-ed*, *lie-ing*] makes Living, Liver; Life, Lives [*lyfe*, *lyves*]; Life-like [*lyftic*], Lifeless, Lifelessly, Liven or Enliven [*ly-ven*], Alive [*ai-lye*], Lively [*lye-le*].

LOATHE [spoken with a long *o* and flat *th*] makes Loathing, Loath-ed, Loath or Loth [with a sharp *th*], Unwilling, Loathesome [hateful].

LOOK is spoken with the short *oo* like book, rook; it makes Look, Looker on, Looking-glass, Unlooked for. In the imperative, Lo! is sometimes used for Look thou or ye, and Lookee for Look ye.

LOSE [looz] makes Losest, Loseth, Losea, Losing, Loser—all with the long *oo*. Lost, Lostest, Loss, are spoken *lozt*, &c.

LOSE makes Loss, Loser, Losing, Lost, Loose [loos, adjective] and its compounds, Loosen [loosen], Loosely, Looseness, Loost or Loosed, Unloost or Unloosed.

Lorn and Forlorn are more used as adjectives than as participles.

LOT makes Lot, Lottery. Allot is conjugated like Lot, and makes Allóttment, Allóttée, Allóttér.

LOVE [spoken *luv* throughout its compounds] makes Love, Lover, Loved, Beloved, Lovely, Loveliness, Loving, Lovable, Unloved.

Love is conjugated I *luv*, thou *luvst* or *luv-est*, he *luvth*, *luv-eth*, or *luvs*; I *luvd* or *luv-ed*, thou *luvdst* or *luv-edst*; *luv-ing*.

MAKE makes Make, Maker, Making. It is conjugated I *mayc*, thou *mayest* or *mayc-est*, he *mayth*, *mayc-eth*, or *maycs*; I *maid*, thou *maidst* or *maid-est*; *mayc-ing*.

MAR makes Marring, Marrer, Mire, Murder and its compounds, Unmarried.

It is conjugated I *mar*, thou *marst* or *mar-rest*, he *marth*, *mar-reth*, or *marz*; I *mar-d* or *mar-red*, thou *mar-redst*; *mar-ring*.

MEAN [*meen*] makes Meaning, Mind, Mood, Mindful, Mindless, and their compounds; *Un-meant*. Meant is spoken *ment*.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
Meddle	meddled	meddling	meddled
Meet	met	meeting	met
Melt	melted	melting	molten, melted
Mess	mest, messed	messing	mest, messed
Mete	meted	meting	meted
Mill	milled	milling	milled
Misbecome	misbecame	misbecoming	
Miscast	miscast	miscasting	m'cast
Mischoose	mischose	mischoosing	mischosen
Misdo	misdid	misdoing	misdone
Misfall	misfell	misfalling	misfallen
Misgive	misgave	misgiving	misgiven
Mishear	misheard	mishearing	misheard
Mislay	mislaid	mislaying	mislaid
Mislead	misled	misleading	misled
Mismark	mismarkt, mismarked	mismarking	mismarkt, mismarked
Mismatch	mismatcht, mismatched	mismatching	mismatcht, mismatched
Miss	mist, missed	missing	mist, missed
Missay	missaid	missaying	missaid
Missend	missent	missending	missent
Misshape	misshaped	misshaping	misshapen
Mispeak	misspake	misspeaking	misspoken
Misspell	misspelt, misspelled	misspelling	misspelled
Mispend	misspent	misspending	misspent
Mistake	mistook	mistaking	mistaken
Misteach	mistaught	misteaching	mistaught
Mistell	mistold	mistelling	mistold
Misunderstand	misunderstood	misunderstanding	misunderstood
Miswed	miswedded	miswedding	miswedded
Mix	mixt, mixed	mixing	mixt, mixed
Moan	moaned	moaning	moaned
Mourn	mourned	mourning	mourned
Molder	moldered	moldering	moldered
Mow	mowed	mowing	mown
Mulct	mulcted, mulct	mulcting	mulcted, mulct
Nap, to sleep	napped	napping	napped
Need	needed	needing	needed
Nim, to take	nimmed	nimming	nimmed
Offer	offered	offering	offered
Ooze	oozed	oozing	oozed
Ope	oped	oping	oped

**MEDDLER** makes Meddler, Meddling, Meddlesome, Meddle, Mid, Middle. **Muddle** is perhaps from this verb.

**MEET** makes Mate [one who meets], Meet, Meeting, Mote or Moot, and their compounds. We say, a Meeting will be held; a Mote [Wardmote, Folknote] was held.

**MELT** makes Melting, Melter, Mould. Molten is most used as an adjective.

**MESS** makes Mess, Meat, Messmate, Mouth, and their compounds.

**METE** makes Meta, a bound; Meter, a measurer, a rhyme; Meet, fit; Unmetted.

**MILL** makes Mill, Miller, Malt, Meal.

Many participial adjectives are made with **Mis**—as Misbegotten, Misborn.

We say Misbegotten, Misshapen, Missing.

**MISS** makes Miss, Missing, a Mist, Misty, and their compounds; Amiss.

**MIX** and **MINGLE** are verbs akin. They make Mixer; Mingler; Monger, a dealer; Mixture; Among; Unmixed, common.

**MOAN** [*mo-ne*] makes Bemoan.

**MOLDER** [*moie-der*] makes Mold, Moldy, Moldering, and Smolder.

**MOURN** is spoken as if written *mörn* with a long o.

**MOW** [*mo*] makes Math, Aftermath, a Mowing; Mow, a heap of mown hay; Mower; Nead; Meadow, a field which is mown; Mown, Unmown; and perhaps Smooth.

It is conjugated I *mo*, thou *môst* or *mo-est*, he *moeth*, *mo-eth*, or *moez*; I *modet*, thou *môdest* or *mo-dest*; *mo-ing*, *mone*.

**NEED** makes Need, Needing, Needless, Needful, and their compounds.

**NIM** makes Nimbling; Num; Nimble, quick at taking; Benum or Benumb, and their compounds.

We say, an Offset, an Offcut, to Outdeal, an Outlet, an Outlay.

We say An outburst, but To burst out. To go out, is more used than To outgo.

**OPEN** is spoken *orf-fer*.

**ORE** makes Open [adjective and verb], Unopened.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
Out	outed	outing	outed, out
Outbid		outbidding	outbidden
Outbreak		outbreaking	
Outburst		outbursting	outburst
Outbuy	outbought		outbought
Outcast		outcasting	outcast
Outdo	outdid	outdoing	outdone
Outdress	outdrest	outdressing	
Outfall		outfalling	
Outgo	outwent	outgoing	
Outgrow	outgrew	outgrowing	outgrown
		outlying	
Outride	outrode		outridden
Outrun	outran	outrunning	outrun
Outsell	outsold	outselling	outsold
Outset		outsetting	
		outspreading	outspread
Outspring			
Outstand	outstood	outstanding	outstood
Outswear	outswore		
Outswim	outswam		
Overbear	overbore	overbearing	overborne
Overbid	overbid		
Overbreed	overbred	overbreeding	overbred
Overbuild	overbuilt	overbuilding	overbuilt
			overcast
Overcome	overcame	overcoming	overcome
Overdo	overdid	overdoing	overdone
Overdraw	overdrew	overdrawing	overdrawn
Overdress	overdressed	overdressing	overdrest
Overeat	overate	overeating	overeaten
Overfeed	overfed	overfeeding	overfed
Overflow	overflowed	overflowing	overflowed
Overgrow		overgrowing	overgrown
Overhang		overhanging	overhung
Overhear	overheard	overhearing	overheard
Overlade	overladed	overlading	overladen
Overlap	overlapt	overlapping	overlapt
Overlay	overlaid	overlaying	overlaid
Overleap	overleapt	overleaping	overleapt
Overlie	overlay	overlying	overlain
Overpass		overpassing	overpast
Overpay	overpaid	overpaying	overpaid
Overreach	overreached	overreaching	overreacht
Override	overrode	overriding	overridden
Overroast	overroasted	overroasting	overroast, overroasted
Overrun	overran	overrunning	overrun
Oversee		overseeing	overseen
Oversell	overmold	overselling	oversold
Overset	overset	oversetting	overset
Overleep	overslept	oversleeping	overslept
Overshoot	overshot	overshooting	overshot, overshooten
Overspill	overspilt	overspilling	overspilt
Overspread	overspread	overspreading	overspread
Overspring	oversprang	overspringing	oversprung
Overstand	overstood	overstanding	overstood
Overstay	overstaid	overstaying	overstaid
Overstride	overstrode	overstriding	overstridden
Overtake	overtook	overtaking	overtaken
Overteach	overtaught	overteaching	overtaught
Overthrow	overthrew	overthrowing	overthrown
Overtop	overtopt, overtopped	overtopping	overtopt, overtopped
Overwind	overwound	overwinding	overwound
Overwork	overwrought or overworked	overworking	overwrought
Overwrite	overwrote	overwriting	overwritten
Owe	owed, ought	owing	owed

*Owe* is conjugated *I o*, thou *ost* or *o-est*, he *oth*, *o-eth*, or *ow*; *I ode*, thou *odst* or *o-odst*; *o-ing*. *OUGHT* [*ort*] and *OWE* are now used as verbs by themselves.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
Own	owned	owning	owned
Pad, <i>to travel, to stuff</i>	padded	padding	padded
Partake	partook	partaking	partaken
Pass	past, passed	passing	past, passed
Pay	paid	paying	paid
Pen, <i>to inclose</i>	penned, pent	penning	pent, penned
Pen, <i>to write</i>	penned	penning	penned
Pick	pickt, picked	picking	pickt, picked
Pine	pined	pining	pined
Plant	planted	planting	planted
Play	plaid, played	playing	plaid, played
Plead	pleaded, pled	pleading	pleaded
Pledge	pledged	pledging	pledged, plight
Pluck	pluckt, plucked	plucking	pluckt, plucked
Pop	popt, popped	popping	popt, popped
Pound	pounded	pounding	pounded
Praise	praised	praising	praised
Prepay	prepaid	prepaying	prepaid
Press	prest, pressed	pressing	prest, pressed
Prick	prickt, pricked	pricking	prickt, pricked
Prove	proved	proving	proved, proven
Puff	pufft, puffed	puffing	pufft, puffed
Pull	pulled	pulling	pulled
Push	pusht, pushed	pushing	pusht, pushed
Put	put	putting	put
Quaff	quaft, quaffed	quaffing	quaft, quaffed
Quake	quakt, quaked	quaking	quakt, quaked
Quash	quasht, quashed	quashing	quasht, quashed
Quell	queld, quelled	quelling	queld, quelled
Quench	quencht, quenched	quenching	quencht, quenched
Quill	quilled	quilling	quilled, quilt
Quit	quit, quitted	quitting	quitted, quit
Raise	raised	raising	raised
Rake	raked	raking	raked
Rap	rapt, rapped	rapping	rapt, rapped
Reach	reacht, reached	reaching	reacht, reached
Read	read	reading	read

OWN [*one*] makes Owning, Owner, Ownership, Unowned. It is conjugated I *own*, thou *ownst* or *ownest*, he *owneth*, *owneth*, or *owns*; I *owned*, thou *ownest* or *ownest*; *owning*; *owned*.

PAD, to travel, makes Path [*parth*], Pathway, Footpad, Paddle.

PASS, to go by, is a French word, *Passer* [*pas-say*], and makes Pass [*pars*], Passer, Passage, Passenger [*pas-sen-jer*]. *Passed* is very little used in speech.

PAY is a French word, and makes Payment, Payer, Payee, Payable, Prepayment, Repayment, Unpaid. Pay is conjugated I *pay*, thou *payest* or *payest*, he *payeth*, *payeth*, or *pays*; I *paid*, thou *paidst* or *paidst*; *paying*.

PEN, *to inclose*, makes Pen, Pent, Pond, Pound, Pin.

PINE makes Pain, Painful, Painless, Unpained, Pining, and their compounds.

PLANT makes Plant, a herb, a stock; Planted; Planter; Unplanted. It likewise takes the Latin ending, as Plantation.

PLAY makes Play, Player, Playing, Playful, Playfully, Unplayed.

PLEAD [*pled*] makes Plea, Pleader, Pleading.

PLEDGE and PLIGHT are nearly akin. They make Pledge, Pledged, Plighted, Unpledged.

POUND makes Pounder; Pounce, what is pounded.

PRESS makes Press, Pressure, Presser, and to Impress.

PRICK makes Prick, Pricker, Prickle, Prickly, Prickliness.

PROVE [*proov*] makes Proof, Prover, Approve, &c., Approval, Reprove, &c., Reproof, Unproved, Unproven.

PULL, PUSH, and PUT have the sound of *oo* short, as in *bull*. Pull makes Pull, Puller, Pulley.

PUT makes Putty. Put, a game, is spoken with *u* short, and so is *put-ty*.

QUAKE makes Quaker, Quaking, Quaky. QUASH is spoken *quash*.

QUEL, to put down, to kill, makes Queller, Qualm, Kill, Unquelled, Qualmish, Quelch, and their compounds.

QUILL makes Quill, Quilt, Quilter.

QUIT, being a French word, makes Quittance.

RAKE makes Rake, Raking, Rick.

READ [*reed*] makes Reading; Reader; Riddle; Rode, counsel; Readable; Unread [*un-red*]. It is conjugated I *read*, thou *readest* or *readest*, he *readeth*, *readeth*, or *reads*, we, you, or *they read*; I *read*, thou *readest* or *readest*; *reading*; *read*.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
Reap	reapt, reaped	reaping	reapt, reaped
Rear	reared	rearing	reared
Reason	reasoned	reasoning	reasoned
Rebuild	rebuilt	rebuilding	rebuilt
Recast	recast	recasting	recast
Reck	reckt, recked	recking	reckt, recked
Reckon	reckoned	reckoning	reckoned
Reclothe	reclothed	reclothing	reclothed
Redress	redrest	redressing	redrest
Reek, <i>to smell</i>	reekt, reeked	reeking	reekt, reeked
Reave or Reeve, <i>to take</i>	reaved	reaving	reaved, reft, roven
Rehear	reheard	rehearing	reheard
Regild	regilt	regilding	regilt
Regrind	reground	regrinding	reground
Relay	relaid	relaying	relaid
Relearn	relearn't	relearning	relearn't
Relet	relet	reletting	relet
Relie	relied	relying	relied
Relight	relit	relighting	relit
Remake	remake	remaking	remade
Rend, <i>to split</i>	rent	rending	rent
Repass	repast	repassing	repast
Repay	repaid	repaying	repaid
Reprove	reproved	reproving	reproved
Resell	resold	reselling	resold
Reset	reset	resetting	reset
Rest	rested	resting	rested
Reshoe	reshod	reshoeing	reshod, reahodden
Retake	retook	retaking	retaken
Rewrite	rewrote	rewriting	rewritten
Rhyme	rhymed	rhyming	rhymed
Rid	rid	ridding	rid
Ride	rode	riding	ridden
Rig	rigged	rigging	rigged
Ring	rang	ringing	rung
Rip	ript, ripped	ripping	ript, ripped
Rise	rose	rising	risen
Rive, <i>to split</i>	rived	riving	riven, rift
Roar	roared	roaring	roared
Roast	roasted	roasting	roasted, roast
Rob	robbed	robbing	robbed
Roll	rolled	rolling	rolled
Rot	rotted	rotting	rotted, rotten
Row	rowed	rowing	rowed
Rue	rued	ruing	rued

REAP makes throughout reap.

REAR is spoken rare and rear.

RECK makes Reckless, Recklessness.

REAVE [reev] makes Reaving; Reever; Reef, what is taken in; to Rife; and their compounds.

REND makes Rent, Rind, Render, Lathrender, Rending.

REPASS makes Repassage; Repay—Repayment, Repayable; Reprove—Reproof; Resell—Resale.

REST makes Rest, Roost, Restless, Restlessness, Rust, Unrested, and their compounds.

RHYME makes Rhyme, Rhyming, Rhymed, Rhymster.

RID makes Riddance, Ridder, Riddle.

RIDE makes Ride, Rider, Road, Unridden.

RIG, to dress, makes Rig, Rigging, Rigger, Rug, Unrigged.

RING is conjugated I ring, thou ringst or ringest, he rings, we, you, or they ring; I rang, thou rangest or rangst, he rang, we rung, ye or you rung, they rung.

RIP makes Rip, Ripper, Ripple, and perhaps Ripe and Ropa.

RISE is spoken ryz, röz, throughout.

RIVE, Rived, Riving, are spoken ryz, &c.; but Riven, Rift, with i short.

RIVE makes River (ryver), Raft, Roving, Unravel, and their compounds.

ROLL (rols) makes Roll, Reel, Roller, Rolling, Unroll.

ROTTEN is used only as an adjective and for the passive.

ROW (ro) makes Row, Rower, Rudder.

RUE makes Ruth, Rueful, Ruthful. Rued is commonly spoken rood.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfed.</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Perfed Participle.</i>
Run	ran	running	run
Rush	rufht, rushed	rufhing	rufht, rushed
Sag	saggd	sagging	saggd
Sail	sailed	sailing	sailed
Sap	sapt, fupped	sapping	sapt, fupped
Saw	sawd	sawing	sawn
Say	said	saying	said
Scathe	feathed	feathing	feathed
Scoop	fcoopt, fcooped	fcooping	fcoopt, fcooped
Sore	foured	fourcing	foured
Scorch	fcorcht, fcorched	fcorching	fcor. ht. fcorched
Scour	fscoured	fscouring	fscoured
Scrape	fscrapd	fscraping	fscrapd
Seal	fsealed	fsealing	fsealed
Sear	fseared	fsearing	fseared
See	faw	fseeing	fseen
Seek	fought	fseeking	fought
Seethe	fseethd, fod	fseething	fseethd, fsodden
Sell	fold	felling	fold
Send	fent	fending	fent
Set	fet	fetting	fet
Few	fewed	fsewing	fsewed
Shake	fhook	fshaking	fshaken
Shame	fshamed	fshaming	fshamed
Shape	fshaped, fshope	fshaping	fshaped, fshapen
Shave	fshaved	fshaving	fshaven
Shear	fshore, fshare, fsheared	fshearing	fshorn
Shed	fshed	fshedding	fshed
Sheer, to more off	fshereed	fsheering	fsheered
Shend, to chide	fshent	fshending	fshent
Shine	fhone	fshining	fhone
Ship	fshipt, fshipped	fshipping	fshipt, fshipped
Shoe	fshod	fshoeing	fshod, fshodden
Shoot	fshot	fshooting	fshot, fshotten
Shove	fshoved	fshoving	fshoved
Show	fshowed, fshew	fshowing	fshown

Run makes Run, Runner, Running, Runnel, Rill, Reindeer.

It is conjugated I run, thou runnest, he runs, we, you, or they run; I ran, thou rannest, he ran, we run, ye or you run, they run.

Rush makes Rush, Rustling, Rustle, Arrow.

Say makes Saw [a saying], Sayer, Said, Aforesaid, Unsay, &c.

Said is spoken *sed* or *sade*. Said, as an adjective, always makes *sade*.

Say is conjugated I *sai*, thou *sest*, *said*, or *sai-est*, he *seth*, *saieth*, *sai-eth*, or *see*, we, you, or they *sai*; I *sed*, thou *seid* or *sade-est*; *sai-ing*.

Scathe makes Scathe, Scathed, Unscathed, Scatheless.

Scrape makes Scrap, Scraper, Scraping. Scrape up is sometimes used.

SEAR [seer] makes Sere and Sore, adjectives. Sorrow and Sorry are perhaps from this root.

SEE makes Sight [sife], Seer, Unseeing, Unseen.

SEETH is from the verb Sadian, to saturate, weary; whence Sad.

SELL makes Sale, Seller, Selling, Unsold.

SET makes Set, Setting, and the verb to Settle.

SEW [so] makes Sewing; Sewer; Unsewed; Seam [seem], what is sewed; Seamer; and Seamster or Seamstress [seamstress], a woman sewer.

It is conjugated I *so*, thou *soid* or *so-est*, he *sothe*, *so-eth*, or *sore*, we, you, or they *so*; I *sode*, thou *soid* or *so-des*, he, we, you, or they *sode*; *so-ing*.

SHAKE makes Shake, Shock, Shaker, Shocking, Shaky, Shakiness, Unshaken.

SHAME makes Shame, Shameful, Shameless, Ashamed, Unshamed.

SHAPE makes Shape, Shaped, and Ship, Shapeless.

SHAVE makes Shaving, Chip, Unshaven, Shaveling, Shaver, and perhaps Shaft.

SHEAR [sheer] makes Share, Shire, Sherd; Shore, what is shorn; Shears, Shearer, what shears; Shorn, Unshorn. Sharp and Sheer are perhaps from this verb.

SHEED makes Shade, what is shed from a body, and its compounds, Shadow, &c.; Shell, Shower, Sheath.

SHINE makes Sheen, Shininess, Shining, Shiny, Shiner, Shine, Reahone, and to Shimmer.

SHOE [shoo] makes Shoe, Shoer, Shoemaker, Shod, Unshodden.

SHOOT makes Shot, Shuttle, Shooter, and to Shut.

SHOVE [shoo] makes Shove, Shovel, Shift, Unshifted, and their compounds.

SHOW [shoo] makes Show, Showing, Shown, Unshown, Showman.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
Shred	shred	shredding	shred
Shrink	shrank	shrinking	shrunk
Shun	shunned	shunning	shunned
Shut	shut	shutting	shut
Sift	sifted	sifting	sifted
Sigh	sighed	sighing	sighed
Sin	sinned	sinning	sinned
Sing	sang	singing	sung
Singe	singed	singeing	singed
Sink	sank	sinking	sunk
Sip	sipt, sipped	sipping	sipt, sipped
Sit	sat, sate	sitting	sat, sitten
Skink	skinkt, skinked	skinking	skinkt, skinked
Slap	slapt, slapped	slapping	slapt, slapped
Slay	slew	slaying	slain
Sleep	slept	sleeping	slept
Slide	slid	sliding	slidden
Sling	slang	slinging	slung
Slink	slank	slinking	slunk
Slip	slipt, slipped	slipping	slipt, slipped
Slit	slit	slitting	slit
Slive	alived	aliving	alived
Smack	smackt, smacked	smacking	smackt, smacked
Smart	smarted	smarting	smarted
Smear	smear	smearing	smear
Smell	smelt, smelled	smelling	smelt, smelled
Smirk	smirkt, smirked	smirking	smirkt, smirked
Smite	smote	smiting	smitten
Smoke	smokt, smoked	smoking	smokt, smoked
Smother	smothered	smothering	smothered
Snap	snapt, snapped	snapping	snapt, snapped
Snare	snared	snaring	snared
Snatch	snacht, snatched	snatching	snacht, snatched
Sneak	sneakt, sneaked	sneaking	sneakt, sneaked
Snip	snipt, snipped	snipping	snipt, snipped
Snore	snored	snoring	snored
Soak	soakt, soaked	soaking	soakt, soaked
Sob	sobbed	sobbing	sobbed
Soil	soiled	solling	soiled

**SHRINK** makes Shrinking, Unshrinking, Shrunk, Unshrunk.

It is conjugated I shrink, thou shrinkest, he shrinks, we, you, or they shrink; I shrank, thou shrankest or shrankst, he shrank, we shrank, ye or you shrank, they shrank.

**SHUT** makes Shutter, Shuttle.

**SIFT** makes Sieve, Sift, Sifter, Sifting, Sifted, Unsifted.

**SIGH** is spoken *sy*, *syd* or *sy-ed*, *sy-ing*.

**SIN** makes Sin, Sinner, Sinful, Sinless, Unsinning, Sinfulness.

**SING** makes Song, Singing, Singer; Songstress, a female singer; Sung, Unsung.

It is conjugated I sing, thou singest, he singeth or sings, we, you, or they sing; I sang, thou sangest or sangst, he sang, we sang, ye or you sang, they sang.

**SINK** is conjugated like Sing.

**SIT** makes Seat, Saddle, Settle, Sitting, Sitter, Unseat, and their compounds.

**SLAY** to strike, kill, makes Slaughter, Slaying.

**SLEEP** makes Sleep, Sleepy, Asleep, Sleepiness, Sleepless, Sleeplessness, Unsleeping, and the verb to Slumber.

**SLIDE** makes Slide, Slider, Sliding, Sledge [a sliding carriage], Backsliding, and the verb to Slidder.

**SLINK** makes Slinking and Slug. Slow and Sloth are perhaps akin to this verb.

**SLIP** makes Slip, Slop, Slipper, Slippery, Slippy, and their compounds.

**SLIT** makes Slit, Slice.

**SLIVE** [*slive*] makes Sliver and Slip, a cutting; and perhaps Sleeve.

**SMACK** means to taste and to slap.

**SMEAR** [*smear*] makes Smirch and Besmear.

**SMELL** in its imperfect and past participle makes *Smelt*, *Smeld*, and *Smel-led*.

**SMITE** makes Smith, and Smiter, one who smites. Smooth is most likely from this verb.

**SMOKE** makes Smoke, Smut, Smoker, Smoking, Smoky.

**SMOTHER** is spoken *smuther*.

**SNAP** makes Snapper; Snuff, what is snapped off; Snappish.

**SNARE** makes Snare, Snaring, Snarer, Snary, and the verb to Ensnare.

**SNEAK** makes Sneak, Sneaker, Snake, Sneaking, to Sniggle, and to Snuggle.



<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
Sow	sowed	sowing	sown
Span	spanned	spanning	spanned
Spar	sparred	sparring	sparred
Spare	spared	sparing	spared
Speak	spake, spoke	speaking	spoken
Speed	sped	speeding	sped
Speer	speered	speering	speered
Spell	spelt, spelled	spelling	spelt, spelled
Spend	spent	spending	spent
Spill	spilt, spilled	spilling	spilt, spilled
Spin	span	spinning	spun
Spit	spat	spitting	spit, spitten
Split	split	splitting	split
Spoil	spolt, spoiled	spolling	spolt
Spread	spread	spreading	spread
Spring	sprang	springing	spring
Sprout	sprouted	sprouting	sprouted
Spur	spurred	spurring	spurred
Spurn	spurned	spurning	spurned
Squall or Squeal	squalled	squalling	squalled
Squander	squandered	squandering	squandered
Squeeze	squeezed	squeezing	squeezed
Stalk	stalkt, stalked	stalking	stalkt, stalked
Stamp	stampt, stamped	stamping	stampt, stamped
Stand	stood	standing	stood
Stare	stared	staring	stared
Start	started	starting	started
Starve	starved	starving	starved
Stave, <i>to break</i>	slove	staving	stove
Stave <i>off</i>	staved	staving	staved
Stay	staid, stayed	staying	staid, stayed
Steal	stole	stealing	stolen
Steam	steamed	steaming	steamed
Steer	steered	steering	steered
Step	stept, stepped	stepping	stept, stepped
Stick	stack or stuck	sticking	stuck
Still	stilled	stilling	stilled
Stink	stank	stinking	stunk
Stint	stinted	stinting	stinted

Sow [*so*] makes Seed; Sower; Sod, what is sown.

It is conjugated I *so*, thou *sist* or *so-est*, he *sothe* or *soze*, we, you, or they *so*; I *sode*, thou *sodst* or *so-edst*, he, we, you, or they *sode*; *so-ing*, *son*.

SPAR, to bar, makes Spar, Spear, Spilt.

SPEAK [*speek*] makes Speech, Speaking, Spoken, Unspoken, Unspeakable, Speaker.

SPEER, to examine, makes Spore; Spoor, a track of cattle, men.

SPELL, of work, is from *speltian*, to work for another.

PELL, to speak, makes its imperfect and past participle *spelt*, *speld*, *spel-led*.

SPIN makes Spindle, Spinner, Spinster, Spinning wheel, Spinnery.

It is conjugated I *spin*, thou *spinnest* or *spinst*, he *spinneth* or *spins*; I *span*, thou *spannest* or *spanst*, he *span*, we *spun*, ye or you *spun*, they *spun*.

SPIT makes Spittle.

SPREAD [*spred*] makes Spray, Sprig, Spreading, Sprinkle, Widespreading, Sprawl.

SPRING makes Spring, Springer, Bowsprit, Unsprung, Springy. It is conjugated I *spring*, thou *springest* or *springst*, he *springth*, *springeth*, or *springs*; I *sprang*, thou *sprangest* or *sprangst*, he *sprang*, we *sprung*, ye or you *sprung*, they *sprung*.

STALK is often spoken *stork* like *walk*; Squander is spoken *squonder*; Squall, *squawl*.

STAND makes Stand, Standing, Standard. Stood is spoken with the long *oo*, as *wood*, *good*.

START makes Start, Starter, Startle.

STARVE, to *divindle*, makes Starving, Starvation.

STAY makes Stay, Staying [waiting]. Stead [*sted*, a place of staying], Steady, Unsteady, Stay, Staff [*starf*], Staves, Stud, Stalk [*stauk*]; Stem [a support], Stair, Staid [*steady*], Steadfast, Staple.

STEAL [*steel*] makes Stealing, Stealer, Stealth [*stelh*], Stealthy.

STICK, to *cleave*, *adhere*, makes Stickle, Stitch, Sticky, Stickiness, Stickily.

STING is conjugated I *sting*, thou *stingst* or *stingest*, he *stings* or *stingeth*; I *stang*, thou *stangest* or *stangst*, he *stang*, we *stung*, ye or you *stung*, they *stung*.

STINK is conjugated like Sting.

STUNT makes Stint, Stinting, Stinted, Unstinted, Stunted, Stingy, and the verb to Stunt.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
Stir	stirred	stirring	stirred
Stitch	stitcht, stitched	stitching	sticht, stitched
Stoop	stoopt, stooped	stooping	stoopt, stooped
Stop	stopt, stopped	stopping	stopt, stopped
Stray	straid	straying	straid, strayed
Stream	streamed	streaming	streamed
Stretch	stretcht, stretched	stretching	stretcht, stretched
Stride	strode	striding	stridden
Strike	struck	striking	stricken
String	strang	stringing	strung, stringed
Strip	stript, stripped	stripping	stript, stripped
Strive	strove	striving	striven
Stroke, <i>to smooth</i>	stroked	stroking	stroked
Strow or Strew	strowed	strowing	strown
Stuff	stuf, stuffed	stuffing	stuf, stuffed
Stun	stunned	stunning	stunned
Suck	suckt, sucked	sucking	suckt, sucked
Sunder	sundered	sundering	sundered
Sup	supt, supped	supping	supt, supped
Swab	swabbed	swabbing	swabbed
Swamp	swampt, swamped	swamping	swampt, swamped
Swathe	swathed	swathing	swathed
Sway	swaid, swayed	swaying	swaid, swayed
Sweal	swealed	swealing	swealed
Swear	swore, sware	swearing	sworn
Sweat	sweated, sweat	sweating	sweated, sweat
Sweep	swept	sweeping	swept
Swell	swelled, swoll	swelling	swollen
Swerve	swerved	swerving	swerved
Swill	swilled	swilling	swilled
Swim	swam	swimming	swum
Swing	swang	swinging	swung
Swinge	swinged	swingeing	swinged
Swoon	swooned	swooning	swooned
Tack	tackt, tacked	tacking	tackt, tacked
Tag	tagged	tagging	tagged
Take	took	taking	taken
Tame	tamed	taming	tamed
Tap	tapt, tapped	tapping	tapt, tapped

**STIR** makes Stir, Stirring, Storm, and the verb to Struggle.

**STOP** makes Stop, Stopper, Stoppie.

**STRAY** makes Stray; Stream; Straw, what is astray; Strawberry; Straying; Astray; to Straggle.

**STRIDE** makes Stride, Strider, Bestride, Astride, to Straddle.

**STRIKE** makes Strike, Stroke, Streak [*street*], Strake, Striker, Striking, Struck, Stricken, Astrike, Unstricken.

**STRING** makes String, Stringer, Strung, Unstrung, Stringed, &c., Strong, and to Strangle. We say "That lyre is well strung, or unstrung; that is a sevenstringed lyre." We say "A man is strong, or wellstrung."

It is conjugated like Sing.

**STRIFE** makes Strip, Stripling, Stripper, and the substantive and verb Strife.

**STRIVE** makes Strife, Striving.

**STROW** is spoken throughout *stro* and *strow*.

**SUCK** makes Suck, Sucker, Sucking, Suckling, and the verb to Suckle.

**SUNDER** makes Asunder, Sundry.

**SUP** makes Sup, Soup, Supper.

**SWAB** is spoken *swab*, and **SWAMP** *swamp*.

**SWEAL** [*sweel*] makes Sweat [*swee*], Sultry, Sultriness, and the verbs Swelter and Sweat.

**SWEAR** [*sware*], to say, is the root of Answer.

**SWERVE** makes Swerving, Unswerving.

**SWEAT** is spoken *swe*, and makes Sweaty.

**SWEEP** makes Swoop, Sweeping, Sweeper, Swept, Unswept, and to Swap.

**SWIM** is conjugated I swim, thou swimst or swimmeth, he swimmeth or swims; I swam, thou swammest or swamst, he swam, we swum, ye or you swum, they swum.

**SWING** makes Swing, Swinger, Swingle, Swinging.

It is conjugated I swing, thou swingest or swingsst, he swingeth or swings; I swang, thou swangest or swangst, he swang, we swung, ye or you swung, they swung.

**TAKE** makes Take, Taking, Tackle, Taker, Taken, Untaken, Token, Betoken.

**TAP** makes Tap, Tapping, Tapper, Tapster, Untapped.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
Taste	tasted	tasting	tasted
Taw	tawed	tawing	tawed
Teach	taught	teaching	taught
Tear	tore, tare	tearing	torn
Tease	teased	teasing	teased
Teem	teemed	teeming	teemed
Tell	told	telling	told
Thank	thankt, thanked	thanking	thankt, thanked
Thatch	thatcht, thatched	thatching	thatcht, thatched
Thieve	thieved	thieving	thieved
Think	thought	thinking	thought
Thirst	thirsted	thirsting	thirsted
Thrall	thralld	thralling	thralld
Thrash	thrasht, thrashed	thrashing	thrasht, thrashed
Thread	threaded	threading	threaded, threaden
Threat	threatd	threatening	threatd
Thrill	thrilled	thrilling	thrilled
Thrive	throve	thriving	thriven
Throb	throbbd	throbbing	throbbd
Throng	throng, thrang	thronging	thronged
Throttle	throttled	throttling	throttled
Throw	threw	throwing	thrown
Thrum	thrummed	thrumming	thrummed
Thrust	thrust	thrusting	thrust
Thwack	thwackt, thwacked	thwacking	thwackt, thwacked
Thwart	thwarted	thwarting	thwarted
Tie	tied	tying	tied, tight
Till	tilled	tilling	tilled
Tilt	tilted	tilting	tilted
Tire	tired	tiring	tired
Toil	toll'd	tolling	toll'd
Top	topt, topped	topping	topt, topped
Toss	tost, tossed	tossing	tost, tossed
Touch	toucht, touched	touching	toucht, touched
Trap	trapt, trapped	trapping	trapt, trapped
Tread	trod	treading	trod
Trick	trickt, tricked	tricking	trickt, tricked

**TASTE** [*tayst*] makes Taste, Taster, Tasty Tastily, Tasteful, Untasteful, Tastiness, Untastiness, Untasty, Untastily.

**TAW**, to beat leather, makes Tawer, Tawse.

**TEACH** is spoken *teech*; it makes Teaching, Teacher, Token, Betoken.

**TEAR** is spoken *tare*.

**TEASE** is spoken *teeze*.

**TELL** to speak, number, makes Tale, Teller, Toll, Telling, Untold, and Talk. Talk is spoken throughout *tauk*, and makes Talkt, Talked, Talker.

**THANK** makes Thank, Thankful, Thankless, and their compounds.

**THIEVE** makes Thief, Theft, Thieving.

**THINK** makes Thought [*thort*], Thoughtful, Thoughtless, Unthought of, Thinker, Thinking, Unthinking.

**THRALL**, to enslave, makes Thrall, Thralldom, Trull. Enthrall is much used for the verb to Thrall.

**THRASH** makes Thrashing, Thrasher, Trash.

**THREAD** [*thred*] makes Thread, Threaden, Threaded.

**THREAT** [*thret*] makes Threat, Threatful, Threatener, and Threaten, which is most used for the verb.

**THRILL** and **DRILL** are of the same root; but Drill is now used for piercing a substance, and Thrill for piercing the mind. So too Thrive seems to be akin to Drive.

**THRIVE** [*thryv*] makes Thriving [*thryving*], Thrift, Thrifty, Unthrifty, Thriftless.

**TIE** makes Tye or Tie, Tether.

Tight and Taught are used as adjectives, and make Tightness, Tighten.

**TILL**, to work, makes Tilth, Tillage, Tiller, Tool, Untilled, Tillable.

**TIRE** makes Tiresome, Untiring, Untired.

**TOIL** makes Toll, Tollsom.

**TOSS** is spoken *tors*.

**TOUCH** [*tutch*] makes Touch, Touchstone, Touchiness, Toucher, Touchy, Touching, Toucht, Untoucht, Touchily.

**TREAD** [*tred*] makes Tread, Treading, Treadle, Trodden, Untrodden, Stride, Straddle, *tramp* [to trample].

**TRICK** or **TRUCK** makes Trickory, Tricker, Trickster, to Truckle, Tricky, Trickily.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
Trim	trimmed	trimming	trimmed
Troll	trolled	trolling	trolled
Trust	trusted	trusting	trusted
Try	tried	trying	tried
Tug	tugged	tugging	tugged
Tumble	tumbled	tumbling	tumbled
Turn	turned	turning	turned
Tweak	tweakt, tweaked	tweaking	tweakt, tweaked
Twine	twined	twining	twined
Twinkle	twinkled	twinkling	twinkled
Unbend	unbent	unbending	unbent
Unbind	unbound	unbinding	unbound
Undo	undid	undoing	undone
Undraw	undrew	undrawing	undrawn
Undress	undrest	undressing	undrest
Unknit	unknit	unknitting	unknit
Unlade	unladen	unlading	unladen
Unlearn	unlearned	unlearning	unlearned
Unrig	unrigged	unrigging	unrigged
Unsay	unsaid	unsaying	unsaid
Unship	unshipt, unshipped	unshipping	unshipt, unshipped
Unsing	unslang	unslinging	unslung
Untie	untied	untying	untied
Underbreed	underbred	underbreeding	underbred
Undercut	undercut	undercutting	undercut
Underlay	underlaid	underlaying	underlaid
Underlie	underlay	underlying	underlain
Underlet	underlet	underletting	underlet
Underpay	underpaid	underpaying	underpaid
Undersell	undersold	underselling	undersold
Undertake	undertook	undertaking	undertaken
Underwork	underworked	underworking	underworked
Underwrite	underwrote	underwriting	underwritten
Upheave	upheaved	upheaving	upheaved
Uphold	upheld	upholding	upheld
Upset	upset	upsetting	upset
Wade	waded	wading	waded
Wag	wagged	wagging	wagged
Wall	walled	walling	walled
Wake	wakt, woke, awaked	waking	wakt, woke, waked

**TAUST** makes Trust, Trusting, Truster, Trusted, Trustee, Untrusted, Trusty, Untrusty, Trustworthy, True, Truth, Troth, Truthful, Untruthful.

**TAY** makes Trial, Trier, Trying, Tried, Untried.

**TUG** makes Tug; Tow, what is tugged; Tugger, Tough, Tow, and their compounds.

**TURN** makes Turn, Turner, Turnery, Turning, Trundle, Turn-up, and their compounds.

**TWEAK** (*tweek*) makes Twitch, Twitcht, Twang, and their compounds.

**TWINE** makes Twine, Twining, Entwined, Twist, and their compounds.

We say Unborn, Unbegotten, Unbegun, Unbesought, Unbidden, Unbitten, Unblended, Unblest, Unbroken, Unbuilt, Unburnt, Uncast, Uncaught, Unchidden, Unchosen, Unclift, Unclad, Uncut, Uncurst, Undreamt, Undriven, Undying, Uncaten, Unfallen, Unfed, Unfound, Unforgotten, Unforbidden, Unforsaken, Unforeknown, Unforeseen, Unforsworn, Ungotten, Ungilt, Ungrown, Unhung, Unhanged, Unheard, Unhewn, Unhidden, Unhurt, Unknown, Unled, Unleft, Unlet, Unlighted, Unmeant, Unmade, Unmown, Unpaid, Unpent, Unprepaid, Unread, Unsawn, Unseen, Unsought, Unsold, Unsent, Unset, Unshaking, Unshaven, Unshorn, Unshed, Unshod, Unshodden, Unshown, Unshrunk, Unsung, Unsmelted, Unsmitten, Unshown, Unspoken, Unspelled, Unspent, Unsplit, Unspun, Unsplit, Unspoilt, Unspread, Unsprung, Unstolen, Unstring, Unstricken, Unstrung, Untold, Unthought, Unthrown, Untrodden, Unworn, Unwoven, Unwedded, Unwept, Unwelded, Unwon, Unwound, Unwrought, Unwritten.

We say likewise Unbecoming, Unbreaking, Unfeeling, Unforbearing, Unforgetting, Unforgiving, Unforeseeing, Unknowing, Unmeaning, Unsleeping, Unsmiling, Unthinking.

We say Underdrest, Underfed, Underdone.

We say likewise the Upshot.

**WAD**, *to go*, makes Waded. Its words are Way, Wain, Waggon, to Waddle, Wader, Wading, Wide, Width, and their derivatives.

**WAG** makes Waggle, to Wave, to Sway, Weak, Wicked, and perhaps Witch, and their derivatives.

**WAKE** makes Wake, Wakeful, Awake, Waken, Awaken, Watch, Waking, Waits, and their derivatives.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
Walk	walkt, walked	walking	walkt, walked
Wallow	wallowed	wallowing	wallowed
Wamble	wambled	wambling	wambled
Wane	waned	waning	waned
War	warred	warring	warred
Ware, to beware	wared	waring	wared
Ware, to wear	wore	waring	wared
Warm	warmed	warming	warmed
Warp	warpt, warped	warping	warpt, warped
Wash	washt, washed	washing	washt, washed
Waste	wasted	wasting	wasted
Watch	watcht, watched	watching	watcht, watched
Wave, to be moved	waved	waving	waved, waft
Wax	waxt, waxed	waxing	waxen, waxt, waxed
Wean	weaned	weaning	weaned
Wear	wore	wearing	worn
Weave	wove	weaving	woven
Wed	wedded	wedding	wedded
Wedge	wedged	wedging	wedged
Ween	weened	weening	weened
Weep	wept	weeping	wept
Weigh	weighed	weighing	weighed
Welcome	welcomed	welcoming	welcomed
Weld	welded	welding	welded
Weil	welled	welling	welled
Welter	weltered	weltering	weltered
Wend	went, wended	wending	wended
Wet	wetted, wet	wetting	wetted, wet
Whack	whackt, whacked	whacking	whackt, whacked
Whap	whapt, whapped	whapping	whapt, whapped
Wheeze	wheezed	wheezing	wheezed
Whelm	whelmed	whelming	whelmed
Whet	whetted, whet	whetting	whetted, whet
Whiffle	whiffled	whiffing	whiffled
While	whiled	whiling	whiled
Whine	whined	whining	whined
Whip	whipt, whipped	whipping	whipt, whipped
Whirl	whirled	whirling	whirled
Whiz	whizzed	whizzing	whizzed
Wield	wielded	wielding	wielded

WALK is spoken *wawc*; Wallow, *wolla*; Wamble, *wombel*; War, *war*; Wash, *wosh*.

WANE makes Wane, Waning, Wan, Want [*wont*], to Want, and their derivatives.

WARE, to beware, makes Wary, Warily, Unwary, Unwarily, Aware, Ward [*ward*], to Ward, to Warn [*warn*], Warrant [*scar-rent*], and their derivatives. Beware is used in the imperative of Ware.

WARM [*worm* or *wawm*] makes Warmth, Warm, Warmly.

WARP [*worp* or *wawp*], to know, makes Wharf [a place where things are thrown], Warp, Warper, Unwarpt.

WASTE [*scayste*] makes Was-ted. Its words are Waste, Wasting, Wasted, Wasteful, Wastefully.

WATCH [*wootsh*] makes Watch, Watchful, Watchfully, Watching, Watched.

WAVE [*scaye*] makes Wave, Waft [what is waved], to Waver, Wavy, Waving [to Waft], and their derivatives.

WEAN is spoken *ween*.

WEAR is spoken *ware*; Worn, *worne*. Its words are Wear, Wearer, Wearing, Weary [*wear-re*], Worn, Worry [*wur-re*], and their derivatives.

WEAVE is spoken *weeve*; Wove and Woven with the long o. Its words are Web; Weft; Weaver; Webster, a female weaver; Woven; Unwoven.

WED, to pledge, makes Wedding, Wedder, Wedded, Unwedded, Wager, and their derivatives. Wedded is spoken *wed-ded*.

WEEP makes Weeper, Weeping, Unwept, Whoop, and their derivatives.

WEIGH [*way*] makes Weight, Welgher, Weighty, Unwelghed.

WELD makes Welder, Welt, Welding, Unwelded.

WELL, to spring, makes Well, Wale, Welling.

WEND makes to Wander.

WET makes Wet, Wetted [wet-ted], Unwetted, Water.

WHAP is spoken *hwop*; Whetted, *hwet-ted*; Won, *wun*; Wipe, *wyp*.

WHIP makes Whip, Wipe, Whipping, Whipper, Whipster, Unwhipt.

WIELD [*woids*] makes Wielder, Unwieldy.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
Wile	wiled	wiling	wiled
Will	willed	willing	willed
Win	won	winning	won
Wind	wound	winding	wound
Wink (twinkle)	winkt, winked	winking	winkt, winked
Wipe	wiped	wiping	wiped
Wish	wisht, wished	wishing	wisht, wished
Wit	wist	witting	wist
Withdraw	withdrew	withdrawing	withdrawn
Withhold	withheld	withholding	withholden
Withstand	withstood	withstanding	withstood
Wizen, to dry up	wizzened	wizzening	wizzened
Wonder	wondered	wondring, wondering	wondered
Wont	wonted		wonted
Woo	wood, wooed	wooling	wood, wooed
Woold	woolled	woollding	woolled
Work	wrought, workt, worked	working	wrought, workt, worked
Worry	worried	worrying	worried
Worship	worshipt, worshipped	worshipping	worshipt, worshipped
Wound	wounded	wounding	wounded
Wrack	wrackt	wracking	wrackt
Wrap	wrapt, wrapped	wrapping	wrapt, wrapped
Wreak	wreakt, wreaked	wreaking	wreakt, wreaked
Wreath	wreathed	wreathing	wreathed, wreathen
Wrest	wrested	wresting	wrested
Wring	wrang	wringing	wrung
Write	wrote	writing	written
Writhe	writhed	writhing	writhed
Yawn	yawned	yawning	yawned
Yell	yelled	yelling	yelled
Yield	yielded	yielding	yielded
Yoke	yokt, yoked	yoking	yokt, yoked

WILE makes Wile, Willy, Wilely, Willness, Gull [one who is wiled].

WIN is conjugated I win; I won [*wun*], thou wonnest or wonst, he won; we won, ye or you won, they won.

WIND is spoken *wynd*; Wound, *wound*. Wind makes Wind, Winder, Winding, Unwound, Windlass [the *t* being spoken short], Windle [short *t*].

Worry is spoken *wur-re*; Wound, *woond*; Wrap, *rap* and *raup*.

WIT is conjugated I wit or wot, thou wotst, he wots, they wit or wot; I wist; If I had wist.

WIT makes Wit, Witness, Wisdom, Wistful, a Wit, a Witness, Wiseacre, Witting, Wizard, Wittol, Wise [*wyz*], Witty, Unwise, Witless, Wisely, Wittily, Wistfully, Unwisely, Wittingly, Unwittingly, to Witness, and their derivatives.

WORK [*wurc*] makes Work, Wright, Worker [one who works], Working, Wrought [*raue*], Unwrought.

WREAK [*reek*] makes Wreck and its derivatives.

WREST makes Wrestle, Wrist.

WRING makes Wrench, Winger, Wringing, Unwring, Wrong [to wrangle, to wriggle], and their derivatives.

It is conjugated I wring; I wrang, thou wrangest or wrangst, he wrang, we rung, ye or you wrung, they wrung.

WRITE [*ryt*] makes Writing, Writer, Writ [*rit*], Written, Unwritten.

It is conjugated I ryt, thou rytst or ry-test, he ry-teth or rytst; I rote, thou rōst or rote-ed; ry-ting; rit-ten, un-rit-ten.

Abash, Address, Astonish, Banish, Confess, Leech, Preach, Vanish, Vanquish, and all other French and Latin verbs in p, th [*bath*], t, k, f, s, th, and ch, make the imperfect and participle in the spoken language; and, if needful, in poetry in *t*—as *abash*t, *address*t, *astonish*t, &c.

Verbs in *d* and *t* make the imperfect and participle with *ed* as a further syllable. Thus, End, end-ed; Mend, mend-ed; Pit, pit-ted; Waste, wasted.

## VERBS OF ONE PERSON.

Verbs used chiefly in the third person are—

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Present Participle.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle</i>
	befell		befallen
Betides	betided		
Freezes	froze	freezing	frozen
Halls	halled	halling	halled
Rains	rained	raining	rained
Dews	dewed		dewed
Drizzles	drizzled	drizzling	drizzled
Snows	snowed	snowing	snowed
Thaws	thawed	thawing	thawed
Thunders	thundered	thundering	thundered
Lightens	lightened		lightened

*Methinks, Methought*, is used in the first person; *Beware! Fie!* (from *Fian*, to hate,) *Lo! Hark!* only in the second person of the imperative mood.

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>
Can	could	Shall	should
May	might	Will	would
Must	must	Quoth	quoth
Ought	ought		

*Can, May, Must, Ought, Shall, Will*, are used only in auxiliary tenses.

*Quoth* is used in all the persons of the indicative present and imperfect. The pronoun is commonly put after the verb, as "*Quoth I*," "*Quoth he*." The verb *Quote* has taken the place of *Quoth*, from which *Bequeath* is derived.

*May* makes *Might, Mighty, Main* [the chief].

*Wicked, Glad, Yclept* (named), *Hight* (named), are used only in the participle.

To *Wicked* are akin *Wickedness, Wickedly*; to *Glad*—*Glee, Gleesome, Gladsome, Gladden, Gladdening, Gladly*.

The verb to *Nill*, to be *Unwilling*, is now used only in the saying "*Will he, Nill he*," whether he will or will not.

## PREPOSITIONS.

A **PREPOSITION** is a small word put before Names Substantive to show their bearing on each other, and with Verbs to direct their meaning; as "*He went from London to York*;" "*The duck swims in the water*;" "*He went off*;" "*He went by*;" "*Up rose the king of men*."

Prepositions are separable or inseparable.

The separable prepositions may be joined with words or stand alone; as "*To overlook*, to look *over*, to look *over* the hedge; a *downfall*, to fall *down*." Such are—*over, in, under, &c.*

The inseparable prepositions are joined only with words, such as *Be, Fore, Un, &c.*; as in *Became, Bedew, Foresee, Undo*.

Prepositions are put with Names Substantive and Adjective, with Adverbs, and with Verbs; as in *overlooker, over the water, overbold, overweak, overlong, overhead*; to *overset*, to set *over*.

The following are the prepositions most used with names substantive :—

From	About	Until	Among, amongst	Ere
Of	Concerning	In	Amid, amidst, mid	Upon
Off	Anent	With	Betwixt, atwixt	Under
Without	Round	Into	While	Beneath, aneath
But	Against	Within	Throughout	Down
Except	Nigh	Athwart	During	After
Outside	To	Across	Over	Below
Out	Toward, towards	Inside	On	Since
Besides	At	Along	Up	Behind
Near	Unto	Through	Before	Beyond
Beside	Till	Between, atween	Above	Past
By				

The following are sea words :—Aboard, Aboard, Alongside.

Some of the prepositions refer chiefly to time ; as Since, While, Ere, Till, Until.

*Anent* is most used in the English dialects of the Lowlands.

The prepositions can be compounded together ; as *From off* the shore, *from without*, *from within*, *from outside*, *from inside*, *from near* Manchester, *from beside* him, *from about* six years old, *from round* Glasgow, *from against*, *from nigh*, *from across* the Rocky Mountains, *from between*, *from among* the men of Kent, *from over* the Atlantic, *from up* the country, *from before* his birth, *from above*, *from under*, *from down* east, *from after*, *from below*, *from behind*, *from beyond* the Tweed.

*Of about* six feet high, *of near*, *of nigh*, *of over* three years old, *of under*.

*To within* six feet of him, *to about*, *to near*, *to nigh*, *to over*, *to above* six shillings.

*At about*, *at toward*.

*Till before*, *till after*.

*Near by*, *near about*, *near to*, *near upon*.

*Out by*, *out near*.

*By within*, *by about*, *by near*, *by above*.

*Round about*, *round by*.

*Nigh to*.

*In about* six months.

*With about*, *with near*, *with nigh*, *with over*, *with after*, *with beyond*.

*Within about*.

*Along through*.

*Over about*, *over near*, *over nigh*, *over beyond*, *over to*.

*On to*, *on toward*.

*Up to*, *up toward*.

*Down to*, *down toward*, *down upon*.

*Through to*.

*Right* is used with prepositions to strengthen them ; as *Right under* the centre, *right through*, *right above*, *right between*, *right among*, *right amid*, *right behind*, *right over*, *right upon*, *right beneath*, *right after*, *right before*, *right against*, *right round*.

*All* is used with the same meaning ; as *All over* the ship.

Names Substantive, which have a preposition in combination, are mostly derived from verbs. The prepositions separable and inseparable used are—Over, Under, Fore, After, Hind, In, Out, Mid, Up, Down, Off ; as in Overseer, Underling, Foreman, Foreleg, Afterthought, Hindleg, Inlet, Outlet, Midleg, Downfall, Upland, Offcast.

A pronoun put after a preposition must be in the objective case ; as “ I went to him ; ” “ He spake of her ; ” “ He came towards us ; ” “ He walked after them.”

The prepositions put with Names Adjective are the same as those put with substantives and verbs.

Several prepositions are used as adverbs, or in the like way ; as In, Out, Within, Without, Inside, Outside, Off, Near, By, About, Round, Athwart, Across, Along, Through, Throughout, Over, Under, Before, After, Above, Below, On, Beneath, Behind, Beyond, Past.

Of, From, But, Except, To, At, Unto, Into, Towards, Against, With, Among, Amongst, While, Ere, are not used adverbially.

Afore, Atween, Aneath, Atwixt, Alow, Around, are used as adverbs, rather than Before, Between, Beneath, Betwixt, Below, and Round.



*A* is an inseparable preposition used in making adverbs ; as in *abed, ashore, asleep, aloud, acoold*.

Prepositions are used very much with verbs, thereby giving very many meanings ; as to take *off*, to take *to*, to take *in*, to take *up*, to take *down*, to take *on*, to take *out*, to *betake*, to *overtake*, to *undertake*, to draw *in*, to draw *up*, to draw *off*, to draw *down*, to draw *out*, to *overdraw*, to *undraw*, to *with-draw*.

The inseparable prepositions most used are—*An, Be, Down, En, Fore, Gain* (Against), *In, Mis, Off, Out, Over, Re, Un, Under, Up, With*.

*A* is mostly used with participles ; as “The house is *a*-building ;” “The book is *a*-printing.

*Be* gives an active transitive form to the verb, with the meaning of greater or further action.

*Un* has a negative meaning, as in *Undo, Undress, Unsay, Unmake, Unthinking, Unasked*.

*With* and *Gain* have the meaning of *against*, as in *Withstand, Withhold, Gainsay*.

*Mis* stands for *wrong* ; as *Misdo, Misreckon, Misbehave, Mistake*.

*Re* is of foreign root, but sometimes used with English words, standing for *again* ; as *Rebuild, Rehear, Relay*. *Dis* is used with an ill or negative meaning ; as in *Dislike, Dishonour*.

Most of the Latin prepositions are used with the Latin and French words brought into the language.

These take the following forms : *A, Ab, Abs*, from, by ; *Ad, At*, to, at ; *Ante*, before ; *Circa, Circum*, round, about ; *Cum, Con, Co*, with ; *Cis*, on this side ; *Contra, Counter*, against ; *De, Dis, Des*, of, from, away ; *E, Ex, Ec*, out of, from ; *Extra*, beyond ; *In, Im, En, Em*, in, against, not ; *Inter, Entre*, among, between ; *Intro*, within, in ; *Ob, Oc, Op*, for, because of ; *Per*, through, very ; *Pre, Præ*, before ; *Post*, after, since ; *Pro*, for ; *Sine*, without ; *Super, Sur*, above ; *Sub, Suc, Sup*, under ; *Trans, Tra*, beyond ; *Ultra*, beyond.

Of Greek prepositions and particles so used are—*A, un*, without ; *Amphi*, around ; *Anti*, against ; *Apo*, from ; *Ana*, again ; *Cata*, in, within, towards, thoroughly ; *Dia*, through ; *En*, in ; *Epi*, upon ; *Ec, Ex*, from, out of ; *Hypo*, under, from ; *Hyper*, over ; *Meta*, with, after ; *Peri*, around, about ; *Para*, from, near ; *Pro*, before ; *Sun*, with.

#### CONJUNCTIONS.

THE CONJUNCTION, or *yoke-word*, is used to bring together other words so as to make a sentence or saying ; as “The man *and* the woman are happy ;” “The English of the Old World *and* the New are a strong people ;” “A swan or duck swims in the water.”

The Conjunction brings together two or more words, or two or more sayings ; but though it yokes together the words, it does not, therefore, yoke together the meanings. We say, “The man *and* the woman ;” “the man *or* the woman ;” “neither the man *nor* the woman ;” “he is unlucky *and* wicked ;” “he is unlucky, *but* not wicked.”

Conjunctions are called Copulative, as connecting the meaning, or Disjunctive, as breaking it off.

The following are Conjunctions :—

And	so	or	but	save	although
yet	that	nor	either	if	though
as	because	neither	except	unless	nevertheless
therefore	both		whether	lest	notwithstanding
for	likewise				
	also				

Some Conjunctions of comparison work together in pairs:—

1. *Though* — *yet, nevertheless*: “*Though* he was born in America, *yet* he devoted himself to the interests and politics of Ireland, and tried to embroil the United States in a war with England.”

2. *Whether* — *or*: “*Whether* the English or the Warings had the greater share in the settlement of the Russian empire, it is hard to tell.” “*Whether* the Frisians or the Hollanders be nearer of kin to us, may be doubtful; but there can be no doubt *whether* the Highlanders or Manks are of the same race as the Lowlanders and ourselves.”

3. *Either* — *or*: as “He will *either* write or send.”

4. *Neither* — *nor*: as “*Neither* Blake nor Nelson lived to enjoy the honours he had won.”

5. *As* — *as*: thus, “The Irish are *as* clever a people *as* can be found in the world.”

6. *As* — *so*: “*As* the stars, *so* shall be the host of England’s sons.”

7. *As* — *so*: “*As* Woden gave our people their most valued institutions, *so* has he been held in honour.”

8. *So* — *as*: “The English have not been *so* long in this island *as* the Welsh; nor, perhaps, have these been *so* long *as* those Western Irish said to be of Spanish Iberian descent.”

9. *So* — *that*: “He was *so* lazy *that* he would hardly stir.”

*Than* is employed in comparison after the comparative degree; as “Ray was earlier *than* Linnæus in these investigations.”

#### INTERJECTIONS.

AN INTERJECTION is a small word or particle thrown in to show the feeling of the speaker; as “*Lo!* he comes.” “*Hush!* she sleeps.”

The following are some of these words:—

Oh! Ah! Alas! Alack! Welldone! Ha! Whew! Eh! What! Poh! Pahaw! Pish! Tut! Humph! Gammon! Humbug! Fudge! Foh! Fie! Off! Avaunt! Ho! Soho! Hullo! Hoy! Ahoy! Aye-aye! Hip! Hurrah! Huzza! Heave ahoy! Tallyho! Ha, Ha! Hall! All-hail! Wait hall! Drink hall! Lo! Hark! Law! Hush! Hist! Whist! St! Mum! Heigh-ho! Fee-fo-fum! Whoh! Avast! Halt! Gee-up! Gee-ho! Farewell! Good-bye! Ay-ay! Oh! Hey! Ha! All! Aye! No! Hullabaloo! Lillibullero! Hear, hear! Chair, chair! Order! Down, down! Off, off! Oyez, Oyez!

Of this kind are many cries and toasts; as “St. George for England!” “One and all!” “Wellington for ever!” “A Talbot! A Talbot!” “Washington for ever!” “The Land o’ Cakes!” “Lancashire witches!” “Currency lasses!” “Home!” “No Popery!” “Auld Reekie!” “Boyne Water!” “Slieve-a-gammon!” “Paddy!” “Sambo!” “Taffy!” Such are likewise trade and street cries; as “Clo!” “Mow!”

Some of the noises made in the Legislatures of England, America, and Australia, are of the kind of Interjections; as “Hear, hear!” “Aye!” “No!”

O! Oh! Ah! take *me* after them, in the first person singular; as Oh! me! But in the second person, *thou, ye, you*; as “Oh! thou wretch!” “Ah! ye robbers of the poor!” “Oh! you followers of Wellington, who have fought by his side!”

## SYNTAX

SYNTAX means *putting together*, and is that part of grammar which speaks of the putting together of words in a saying or sentence, so as to give a full meaning.

Such saying or sentence may be single or compound; as "Death comes to all." "Death comes to all—to kings as well as thralls."

### I. VERBS.

I. A VERB must agree with its subject in number and person; as "I fight;" "Thou art embittered;" "The man dies;" "The men are slain."

A verb, therefore, must be in the singular number to agree with a single thing as its subject, and in the plural number to agree with more things than one. It must likewise be of the same person of each number as its subject; that is, of the first, of the second, or of the third. We cannot say "I fights;" "The men is slain;" or "He art slain."

You, however, as before named, is said to one as well as to many, but the verb must nevertheless be in the second person plural.

The subject of a verb may be of many kinds, and may be put before or after the verb; as "*He* is blessed who does good;" "Blessed is *he* who does good;" "*He* who does good is blessed."

The subject of a verb may be a single word or several words. As a single word it may be a name substantive, or that which stands for it—a pronoun; as "*Man* lives;" "*He* lives." The subject may be the infinitive mood of another verb; as "*To be good* is to be happy." Or it may be a saying; as "*To do good unto others* is a great happiness;" "*The same fathers, the same speech, the same rights of freedom, the same body of laws, the same learning*, are owned by our English brethren in the United States as by us."

Not only must the subject be in agreement with its verb, but the verb must agree with its subject, and the meaning must be clearly shown.

"A man whose inclinations led him to be corrupt, and had great abilities to manage the business," is a bad saying; forasmuch as it may be understood that the "man's inclinations" "had great abilities." It should be, "and *who* had great abilities."

Sometimes a verb comes between two names substantive, one singular and one plural, and either of which may be its subject, as both are connected in meaning by it. In such case the verb may be put in the singular or plural, to agree with either; but the plural is better, as it is softer, being without the hissing of the *s* or *z* sound. If, however, the neighbouring words are of the same sound as the plural verb, it may be better to put the verb in the singular. We may say, "His meat *was* locusts and wild honey;" or "Locusts and wild honey *were* his meat."

A substantive or pronoun may be put before a participle in the nominative case. This is called the case absolute; as "Shame being lost, all virtue is lost;" "He being lost, the cause is lost."

The subject to the verb is put before, after, or within the parts of the verb, where it will give the strongest meaning and the best sound. If we wish to throw more weight on the meaning of happiness, we may say "*Happy* is *he* who does good;" if to make the meaning of doing good

stronger, "*He* who does good is happy;" and if to show more strongly who is happy, then we may say "*He* is happy who does good."

The subject is very often put before the verb; as "*The man is happy.*"

It is put after the verb, or between the auxiliary and the verb—

1st. When anything is asked; as "*Trustest thou me?*" "*Are you one of our brethren the Frisians?*"

2nd. When the meaning of the imperative mood, of bidding, is given, or when that of wishing is given; as "*Mayst thou be happy!*" "*Be thou happy!*" "*Long live Queen Elizabeth!*"

3rd. When the conditional mood is used; as "*Were I to die,*" "*Could I do this I should be happy;*" "*Had I well weighed this, I should never have done it.*"

In the following the subject may be put either before or after the verb:—

4th. When a saying depends on *neither* or *nor*, so as to be coupled with another saying; as "*I will not do it, neither will he;*" "*Texas was not thoroughly settled by the Spaniards, nor was California.*"

5th. When an intransitive verb is used; as "*All at once down fall the whole building.*"

6th. When the adverbs *here*, *there*, and their compounds, with *then* and *thus*, are used; as "*Here am I;*" "*There was he buried;*" "*Thus was the end brought about;*" "*Hence died he.*"

## II. TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

II. ACTIVE TRANSITIVE VERBS govern the objective case; as "*Gibbon teaches us;*" "*Harvey showed them the circulation of the blood;*" "*The red cross of England has led her sons through the world;*" "*Fielding has given us in Tom Jones the masterpiece of novel writing;*" "*Trevithick made the first locomotive, and ran it on the Merthyr Tydvil railway;*" "*George Stephenson improved it.*"

The pronoun in the objective case commonly follows the verb, but may be set before it; as "*Whom ye unknowingly worship, Him show I unto you.*"

Many phrases stand adverbially after an intransitive active or neuter verb, without a preposition before them; as "*He stood six feet high;*" "*He rode several miles;*" "*He has lived several months in that street;*" "*Spenser was many years in Ireland.*"

Active intransitive verbs are used by some people with a passive form instead of an active; as "*I am come,*" "*I am grown,*" for "*I have come,*" "*I have grown;*" "*I was gone,*" "*I was fallen,*" for "*I had gone,*" "*I had fallen.*"

The verb *To Be*, in its variations, sometimes takes the objective case, and sometimes the nominative; as "*It is me.*" "*Who was it?*" "*It was me.*" "*It cannot be them.*" "*I am he who told you.*"

As this verb, in other tongues, takes the same case after it as before it, writers applied the same law to English, and held, until lately, that the objective could not be used after *to be*.

*Let*, *Bid*, *Make*, used as auxiliaries, take the objective form after them; "*Let us think well of it;*" "*Make him go home;*" "*Bid them hold their tongues.*" We say nevertheless, "*Let who will go.*"

The following verbs take the same case before them as after them:—*To Be*, *Become*, *Grow*, *Live*, *Seem*, *Appear*, *Come*, *Go*, *Wander*, *Return*, *Last*, *Continue*, *Remain*, *Reign*, *Die*, *Expire*, *Begin*, *Commence*, *Stand*, *Sit*, *Lie*, *Turn*.

## III. INFINITIVE MOOD.

III. ONE VERB governs another verb depending upon it in the infinitive mood; as "*Learn to do well;*" "*We should be ready to give up our trade.*"

Instead of a verb in the infinitive, the participle is often used; as for "Cease to do evil—learn to do well," "Cease doing evil—learn to do well."

The verbs Bid, Dare, Need, Make, See, Hear, Feel, Let, take the infinitive mood after them without the sign *to*; as "I bade him *do* it." "I made Kenhelm *go* home;" "I saw her *do* it;" "I heard Algar *say* so."

The infinitive mood may be used as a substantive; as "*To hunger* is hard, *to beg* is sad, *to go abroad* is painful." We may say "It is hard to hunger."

#### IV. NOUNS.

IV. Two or more names substantive or pronouns, each in the singular number, and joined together in meaning, must, as if they made one word in the plural, have verbs, substantives, and pronouns, agreeing with them, put in the plural.

We say "He and she *have* agreed;" "Edward and Edith *have* agreed." "The man and woman *have* agreed;" "The man, woman, and child *have* agreed;" as we say "They *have* agreed;" "The men *have* agreed;" "The Latin book of Bede, that of Orosius, and that of Boethius, *were* put into English by Alfred, that we might have a learning of our own;" "Harold and myself *have* met, and *we* have settled that you shall go with *us* to New Zealand."

If the nouns and pronouns brought together are not of the same person, the plural pronoun to be used must be that of the person speaking, if he have a share in the business; if not, that of the person spoken to. We say "I and he have settled *our* lands;" "We and they have settled *our* lands;" "I and thou have settled *our* lands;" "We and you have settled *our* lands." And likewise, "Thou and Harold have settled *your* lands;" "You and the Stubbings have settled *your* lands."

When two or more names substantive or pronouns are brought together with one verb, but are not joined together in meaning, the verb can be made to agree with only one.

We say, "Edmund, Mildred, or Æthelgiva *means* to go with me to Natal;" "A Waring or an Englishman, being of the same kin and speaking the same tongue, *was* alike taken into the Waringian Guard by the emperors of Byzantium;" "Either Friesland or Jutland *was* the birthplace of Hengist."

When a singular substantive or pronoun stands thus with a plural substantive or pronoun, the verb agrees with the plural; as "Clive or the directors *were* to blame;" "I or they *were* undone."

When the pronouns, or names substantive and pronouns, are not of the same person, the verb must agree with that subject which is nearest to it; as "Thou or Edgar *has* done it;" "I or thou *art* the owner;" "Thou, or I, or Oswald *hath* the right."

The pronoun *them* is sometimes wrongly written for *each*, *either*; as "A man may see a metaphor or an allegory in a picture, as well as read them in a description." It should be read "*either*."

#### V. NOUNS OF MULTITUDE.

V. A name of multitude, or meaning many, may have a verb or pronoun agreeing with it, either in the singular or plural, as will best show the meaning; as "The legislature of Jamaica *have* made a law against it," or "*has* made a law;" "The meeting *was* a great one;" "The Livery of London *are* his strong supporters."

The name being taken to mean one body, the verb may be put in the singular; but should the name refer rather to the several members, then the verb may be put in the plural.

## VI. PRONOUNS.

VI. PRONOUNS must agree with the nouns for which they stand in gender and number; as "Robinson Crusoe is the English book *which* has been most liked in all countries;" "That is the leader in *whom* the Governor-General trusts;" "Franklin and Cobbett spent *their* lives and wrote *their* works in the same lands—*they* were both in England, France, and America;" "Mrs. Chisholm has held out her hand to help our poor brethren at home—*she* has done as much good to New Holland as any one man, whether governor or minister of state."

The relative pronoun is of the same person as the subject for which it stands, and acts upon the verb in the same way; as "I *who am* sent here to speak on behalf of the people of the Cape, *am* myself a witness of what they have borne;" "Thou *who hast* seen his sorrow *canst* forgive his misdeeds."

The relatives *who*, *which*, *what*, and *that*, with their cases and compounds, are always set before the verb; as "I *who* love him;" "*Whatsoever* ye wish ye shall have;" "She *whom* ye loved is dead;" "What you asked for is not to be had."

The pronouns should neither be used too often nor too seldom, nor should two pronouns be used where one will do.

*That* is commonly used after an adjective in the superlative instead of *who*, and sometimes for *which*; as "Our forefathers, who came hither from Jutland in three small keels, were among the boldest men *that* the world ever held."

*That* is used instead of *who* and *which* a great deal too often, as there is a notion among some that it saves the use of the others, as if anything were thereby got.

The relative is often left out in speaking, where the meaning can be well shewn without it, as in the saying above given, "The boldest men the world ever held."

*That* is used after *who* in asking; as "Who *that* has been in Valparaiso does not know that it is almost an English settlement?"

The word *soever* may be combined with the pronouns *who* and *which*, or may be separated from them; as "On which *soever* land the English settled they held their own," or "On which land *soever* the English settled." We cannot, however, separate *whoso*, *whoever*, *whichever*.

*Who* is sometimes employed with names of multitude, including persons; as "Holland, *who* looked to us for help in her need, has been forgotten by us;" "The household *who* loved him as if he were their own child."

*Whose* is used with things as well as persons, though writers tried to set the fashion of keeping it for persons only, and of *which* for things.

*Which* is used of persons in asking questions to show one of several, as *whether* is to show one of two. Thus, "*Which* of them has done it?" "Whether was Hampden or Pim the truer Englishman?" "Whether did Bacon or Newton do most for learning?"

WHEN A RELATIVE is used to ask a question, the noun or pronoun of the answer must be in the same case; as "*Whose* books are these? Edwin's." "*Who* gave them to him? We did." "Of *whom* did you buy them? Of a bookseller—of *him* who lives in Paternoster Row." "Whom did you see in his shop? Both *him* and his shopman."

In answering a question, *Me* is commonly used instead of *I*; as "Who is there? *Me*."

*Them*, *themselves*, and *their*, being of indefinite gender, are sometimes used to correspond with personal pronouns in the singular, to avoid using one gender exclusively; as "Not on outward charm could *he* or *she* build *their* pretensions to please;" "Complimenting either *man* or *woman* on agreeable qualities which *they* do not possess, in hopes of imposing on *their* credulity."

*It* is used as an indefinite pronoun with verbs applied impersonally ; as "*It* happened ;" "*It* befell ;" "*It* was me ;" "*How* is *it* with you ?"

Adjective pronouns must agree with their substantives in number ; as "*This* man, *these* men, *that* man, *those* men, *another* man, *other* men, *those* same men."

*That* and *this* are used in a sentence to point out parts of it, *that* being said of the first part, *this* of the last or nearest part spoken ; as "The empires of England and Russia were founded by the same people, from whom they received common laws ; *this* has lost all remembrance of its rights ; *that* is still free."

WHEN TWO NOMINATIVES not of the same person go before, the relative pronoun and the verb may agree with either ; as "I am the man *who* hold for you Sarawak," or "I am the man *who* holds for you Sarawak." The person once chosen must be kept throughout ; as "I am the man who hold for you Sarawak, who am Governor of Labuan, and who have swept the Malay rovers from the seas," or "I am the man who holds for you Sarawak, who is Governor of Labuan, and who has swept the Malay rovers from the seas."

#### VII. OF THE POSSESSIVE.

VII. ONE SUBSTANTIVE governs another having a different meaning, in the possessive or genitive case ; as "*De Foe's* Robinson Crusoe ;" "*My brother's* settlement ;" "*Your sister's* husband."

The substantive in the possessive, as already seen, is put before the word by which it is governed ; but if, instead of the possessive form, the preposition *of* is used, such substantive is put last ; as "*My brother's* settlement ;" "*The settlement of my brother* ;" "*De Foe's* Robinson Crusoe ;" "*The Robinson Crusoe of De Foe*."

We cannot always use the possessive form for *of*. Thus, we cannot say "*Gold's* crown," as well as "*A* crown of gold ;" but we can say "*A* golden crown." Commonly we can only use the possessive with such words as can rightly take the meaning of possession or ownership.

The possessive form often stands alone ; as "I called at the baker's," or at the bookseller's," or "at my brother's ;" that is, "at the house" or "shop of the baker," "bookseller," or "of my brother." "This book is my brother's," "is my daughter's ;" that is, "This book is the book of my brother," "of my daughter."

When the subject which belongs to nouns in the possessive form, belongs to them jointly or together, the last noun alone has the sign or token of the possessive given to it ; as "Oswald and Elfrida's wedding will be next week." When the subject belongs to them singly, then each noun has the sign of the possessive given to it ; as "The parliament's and the king's forces met each other at Naseby."

In poetry, and sometimes in prose, the *s* of the possessive is left out where its sound would be harsh, and where the meaning can be well enough made out without it ; as "The wrath of Peleus' son ;" "For goodness' sake ;" "For righteousness' sake."

When a noun in the possessive is followed by other words descriptive or explanatory, the possessive sign is put sometimes after one word only, first or last, and sometimes after each ; as "I left the parcel at Smith's, the bookseller's ;" "I left the parcel at Smith the bookseller's ;" "I left the parcel at Smith's, the bookseller."

When the words are closely joined together, the possessive form is given to the last word only ; as "Edward the Confessor's laws ;" "The Lord Mayor's gown ;" "Henry of Monmouth's wars in France ;" "The Duke of Bridgewater's canal ;" "The Lord Mayor of London's gift."

A participle may govern a substantive or pronoun in the possessive; as "What is the reason for the *town's* voting against him?" "I remember *its* being reckoned a great exploit," not "I remember it being reckoned."

## VIII. PARTICIPLES.

VIII. PARTICIPLES govern nouns and pronouns like verbs do; as "I am weary of hearing *him*;" "Mildred was clever in teaching *us*."

The possessive pronouns may be used with participles; as "I object to *his* judging *me*;" a form for "I object that he should judge me."

When participles are put in a substantive form to govern substantives, the articles must be used. We may say, "Seeking gold is hard work," but not "Seeking of gold is hard work;" it must be, "*The* seeking of gold is hard work."

## IX. ADVERBS.

IX. ADVERBS are put mostly before adjectives, after verbs active and neuter, and between the auxiliary and the verb; as "Jefferson made a *very* good speech; he spoke *clearly*, and was *well* listened to by the house."

Sometimes the adverb is put before the verb instead of after; as "Byron *always* writes with boldness;" "Byron writes *always* with boldness." The emphasis and tone have much to do in placing adverbs and other words, and skilled speakers shift them as they best suit the meaning or the sound. Sometimes a false tone or emphasis in a speech, will make a word sound well which reads badly the next day in the newspaper.

*Never* commonly comes before the verb; as "Captain Cook *never* thought to meet his death in Hawaii;" "England and the United States will *never* let the French take Hawaii;" "*Never* was man so beset;" "The British language, laws, and institutions *never* had any influence on the English;" "Drake *never* thought California would be a great settlement of the English people."

## X. NEGATIVES.

X. TWO NEGATIVES cannot be put together in English, for they make an affirmative; as "I *cannot* by *no* means allow him to do so," which is, "I can by some means."

Sometimes two negatives are put together, simply in reference to the negative point of view; as "His book, though with many Germanisms, is *not* altogether *un-English*;" "It is *not unlawful* for a man to bring up his child in his own belief;" "Lothian is *not an un-English* country, for it was settled by the best men of England."

## XI. PREPOSITIONS.

XI. PREPOSITIONS govern the objective case; as "Nelson's battles for England did more for *her* than for *himself*;" "Oliver had with *him*, in his conquest of India, some brave men;" "Wolf, by breaking the French power, gave the supreme rule in America to *us*."

A pronoun in the objective case, after a preposition, may farther take the possessive form, like a substantive after a preposition; as "It is none of *her's*."

The objective form of the pronoun in some cases has the meaning of the preposition *to*; as "Give *him* that;" "Give *me* the child;" "Bring *us* some more beer." This "dative" meaning is simply one of position, for which the pronoun must be set next after the verb, as if the pronoun be shifted it must take the sign *to*; thus, "Give that *to* him;" "Give the child *to* me;" "Bring some more beer *to* us." We cannot say, "Give some more beer *us*."



The preposition is often separated from the relative; as "*Whom wilt thou give it to?*" that is "*To whom wilt thou give it?*" Again, "*This is the best which I know of,*" or "*of which I know.*" When the preposition is put last, the relative is often left out; as "*This is the best I know of;*" though many writers, following the grammarians, always put a relative in.

The compound pronoun *one another*, may have a preposition put before it or between it; as "*They spake to one another,*" or "*They spake one to another.*"

## XII. CONJUNCTIONS.

XII. CONJUNCTIONS connect the same moods and tenses of verbs, and the same cases of nouns and pronouns; as "*Freedom is to be loved and upheld;*" "*The master taught both her and me to write;*" "*He and she are old friends;*" "*If thou look back and peruse the history of Heligoland, thou wilt be surprised to find this Holy Island of our fathers held by their children, as its masters, and peopled by their kinsmen, the Frisians.*"

Although the same tenses are commonly joined together, it is not always so, for there may be a difference of meaning; as "*East Britain is now peopled by English, but it was once peopled by Welsh, who have been swept off or driven into the mountains;*" "*New South Wales is a thriving country, but it will become greater and more populous than many European commonwealths.*"

Conjunctions used with the meaning of doubt or contingency, require the subjunctive mood after them; as "*If I were to write home, I should get no answer;*" "*The growth of the States will go on, until all Mexico be swallowed up.*"

*If, though, although, unless, lest, except, whether*, generally require the subjunctive form after them; but where the meaning is clear and positive, other moods; as "*Though he is an American, he is no foreigner in England; though he was born elsewhere, his fathers were our fathers, and his speech is the same as ours.*"

*That* sometimes needs the subjunctive; as "*Take heed that thou fall not;*" "*Mind that I be not wakened.*"

The conjunction *than* sometimes takes after it the objective case in comparisons; as "*He is older than me;*" "*Alfred, than whom a greater king was never at the head of the commonwealth.*"

## COMPOSITION.

COMPOSITION is the putting together of sayings or sentences in speech and writing, so that they may be understood and sound well.

Rhyme, the law of number in speaking or *prosody*, is commonly understood to bear only on speaking, and on rhymes or poetry; but with our fathers rhyme or number was the law for all writings, as well as speeches.

Spelling, quantity, and accent have been already spoken of in the beginning of this book, under the head of Orthography, or right spelling and writing.

### ON THE WRITING OF WORDS.

The letter used in writing and printing commonly is the small letter. The great or capital letter is used only sometimes, as at the beginning of a saying or sentence, and of some words.

The great or capital letter is set—

1. At the beginning of every saying.
2. After a token of exclamation (!) or of asking (?); as "Who is that? It is he." Unless the saying is unbroken; as "Alas! how different! yet how like the same!" "How long, ye simple ones, will ye love simplicity? and the scornors delight in their scorning? and fools hate knowledge?"
3. Names given to the Almighty.
4. Names of mankind, English and heathen gods and elves, dwellings, towns, streets, rivers, mountains, lands, seas, shores, dogs, horses, ships, and engines; as Edward, Edward Browning, Edith Browning, Weden, Thur, Neptune, Puck, Circe, Boston, Cheapside, New Zealand, Severn, Alleghanies, the Irish Sea, Sydney Heads, Tray, Flying Childers, the Fulton, the Trevithick.
5. Adjectives and Verbs taken from such words; as Elizabethan, Georgian, English, Australian, Jamaican, Barbadian, Bermudian, to Americanize.
6. The first word of a saying taken from some one else; as "Think of the old saying, 'Know thyself;'" "Bear in mind Nelson's watchword, 'England expects every man to do his duty.'" Where, however, the saying is not wholly taken, but is brought in, a great letter is not needed; as "Solomon observes, that pride goes before destruction."
7. In writing out words in the titles of men, lands, towns, books, ships, and companies; as "Offa, King of the Middle English;" "George Washington, President of the United States of North America;" "The Right Honourable George, Lord Byron;" "The Governor-General of the North American Provinces;" "The English Settlements in the East Indies;" "The whole Works of Shakspeare;" "The Witch of the Sea;" "The City of Philadelphia;" "The Worshipful Company of Goldsmiths;" "The Ælfric Society;" "The London and North Western Railway Company."
8. The pronoun I, the interjection O, are made with great letters.
9. The first word of every line in rhyme or poetry:—

How lov'd, how valu'd once, avails thee not;  
To whom related, or by whom begot:  
A heap of dust alone remains of thee;  
'Tis all thou art, and all the proud shall be.

## POINTING OR PUNCTUATION.

In writing, great letters or capitals are put at the head of each saying; but something more is needed to show when a new saying or sentence is begun, and when the saying is long, to mark out its limits. For these ends points (thus , .) are set.

In speaking, however, this is done by resting for a while between each saying, or its limb; this is named a *pause*. The longest halt or pause is between one saying and another, for which the full point or period (.) stands. The others are between the limbs of a saying, the next longest being the colon (:); a shorter one, the semicolon or half colon (;); and the shortest, the small point or comma (,).

It is commonly said, that if the comma (,) reckons one, the semicolon (;) reckons two, the colon (:) three or four, and the full point (.) four or six.

A small point or comma is put between each limb of a saying, unless some stronger point is needed.

If a saying is full in itself, no point is needed within; as "The Irish and their Highland brethren are amongst the bravest nations in the world."

When words are brought in between two limbs of a saying, small points are used to mark them out; as "The English, whatever may be said to the contrary, are unmixed with Celtic blood, unless in the Lowlands of Scotland and on the borders of Wales;" "This man, not even excepting Rosas, is the bloodthirstiest tyrant and usurper now living;" "My son, bethink you of what you owe to God."

Two words yoked together by a conjunction, do not take a comma or small point; as "Ina and Alfred were the great lawgivers and kings of the West Saxons;" "Davy and Faraday have done much for chemistry; they have shown themselves sound and deep observers."

Two substantives, adjectives, pronouns, verbs, or adverbs, brought together without a conjunction, or more than two of each kind with a conjunction, take a small point after each; as "Reason, virtue, answer one great end;" "The father, mother, and children, were driven abroad;" "Ina, Offa, and Alfred, were three of the greatest lawgivers of the English, Waring, Frisians, Saxons, and Jutes, in this island;" "Drake was bold, active, and enterprising;"

"If I dare eat, or drink, or breathe, or live,

I dare meet Surry in a wilderness."

A short title or nickname takes no point after it; as "Adams the President;" "Richard Lionheart;" "Frea the lovely;" "Edith the Swannecked;" "Ethelred the Unready;" "Robert Shorthose;" "John Lackland." But if the title or nickname is a long one, then a point is put after the first substantive or limb of the title; as "Cromwell, the scourge of Ireland;" "John, the great Duke of Marlborough;" "Bentinck, Governor General of India;" "Rosas, the butcher of Buenos Ayres."

The semicolon (;) and colon (:) are set to mark out a saying into parts, not so near in meaning as those between which a comma is set.

Of late the colon (:) is little used.

The full point (.) or period is set—

At the end of a saying.

After every word that is shortened or abbreviated; as P. S.—N. B.—A. D.—£. s. d.

In speaking and reading care must be taken to give each word clearly, to give it its right accent and emphasis, to mark each limb of a saying by a slight rest, and to rest longer at the end of each saying or sentence. This is needful for the speaker himself, so that he may draw his breath; and it is *needful, that the hearer may follow thoroughly what is said.*

There should be that meaning given to everything we speak or read, which is befitting. This is done by *tone*. Thus, sorrow cannot be spoken in a cheerful tone, nor what is lively given in a drawl; neither must what is of weight be hastened and slurred over, nor what is little be made long and loud sounding. While full care is taken on this head, there are bounds to what is right in speech with friends, at a meeting, or in a playhouse. These bounds must not be overstepped; the tone of the playhouse must not be brought to the fireside, nor the tone of the fireside be taken on the platform.

A writing of any length, as a letter, will speak of many things, and will make many heads. In writing or printing these are made to begin a new line, and are called paragraphs. These were formerly marked out with the token ¶, as will be found in old books.

Unless very short, sayings belonging to the same subject should make one paragraph. When, however, what bears upon one limb of the subject is very long, it should be broken up into several paragraphs.

What is above written makes, it will be seen, two sets of words, one beginning "A," and the other "Unless." Each of these sets of words is named a paragraph.

Besides these points most used, others are used, but seldomer. They are as follows:—

The Dash (—) is put where the meaning is carried on, but where there is a halt for the time, some new thought being brought before the mind of the reader:

"Here lies the great—False marble! where!  
Nothing but sordid dust lies here."

The token of asking, or note of Interrogation (?), is a kind of Q. for Question; as "Who is that?" "Who will go with me?" "How many nations are settled in these islands?"

In dialogue, or talking between two or more, Question and Answer are sometimes marked Q., A.; as "Q. Where did you see the prisoner?" "A. At his own house."

The token of calling (!), or note of Exclamation, after words of wonder, glee, hope, fear, &c.: "My son! stand by me."

"What place is here!  
What scenes appear!"

"How many nations are settled in these islands!"

The Parenthesis ( ) is a sign for something put in between, something brought into the body of the saying, and which may be left and the meaning still be full:

"Know then this truth (enough for man to know),  
Virtue alone is happiness below."

Two dashes (— —) are sometimes used for the same end, but sometimes only commas (, ,).

The mark for letters "cut off" (') is called by a Greek name, *Apostrophe*; as in *tho'* for *though*; *'tis* for *it is*; *e'en* for *even*; *e'er* for *ever*; *threat'ning* for *threatening*; *look'd* for *looked*; and so forth.

This cut-off mark is set, but not with the same meaning, to show the possessive case of substantives; as *brother's*, *horse's*; *brothers'*, *horses'*.

Where a letter stands for a word, as P.S. for post-script, a full point (.) stands for a token.

The mark for what is wanting (A) is called *Caret*. This want-mark

more used in writing than in printing, and most commonly the word which has been left out is set over it; as

Harold  
He did this.

At the end of a letter or book, P. S., *Post Scriptum*, Afterwritten, is set to mark something not in the body of the writing.

A Diæresis shows that vowels set together are to be spoken one by one; as—ærial, phaëton, coadjutor, Britannia.

A break -, or Hyphen, breaks syllables, as—hy-phen; but brings compound words together, as—father-in-law.

The Section mark §, or Paragraph mark ¶, shows the beginning of a new division of the subject: they are used in formal documents.

A little star \*, or Asterisk, shows that a note is to be found at the bottom or on the border; as thus:\*

\* Besides this note-mark, these—† ‡ § ¶ ||—are used when more notes than one come within a page. Sometimes figures (1, 2, 3, &c.), sometimes letters (a, b, c), are so put instead.

Two or three stars \*\*\* show that some word or words are left out.

An Ellipsis — likewise marks something left out, as when the first and last letters of a word only are put in, or the end of a rhyme or saying; thus, "J—n B—n."

"— and with him fled the shades of night."

"— thus with the year

Seasons return; but not to me returns

Day, or the sweet approach of even or morn."

Hooks, crotchets, or brackets [ ], show a word or saying which is marked out to be noted, or which is put in by way of explanation; thus, "He said that he [Mr. Freeman] was the one to blame;" "Ethnology [folk-speech or knowledge];" "Syro-Arabian [that is to say, those races heretofore called Semitic]."

A Quotation " " shows something taken from another writer, or some saying by way of example; thus,

"To err is human, to forgive divine."

A Hand or Index ~~✎~~ points out something which should be more especially looked at. N.B. (nota bene, Latin for Mark well! Note well!) stands for the same end.

A Brace ~ is used to bring words or lines together; in rhyme it brings together three lines having the same rhyme words; thus,

English	}	Suevia	}	Germanic.
Frisian				
Flemish	}	Low Dutch		
Flat Dutch				
High Dutch		High Dutch		
Icelandic	}			
Danish		Scandinavian		
Swedish				

#### EMPHASIS.

In a word stress is laid on a syllable—this is called *accent*; in a saying or gathering of several words, stress is laid on one or more words, having more *marked meaning*—this is called *emphasis*:

"Far beyond th' Atlantic floods,  
 Stretch'd beneath the evening sky,  
 Realms of mountains, dark with woods,  
 In Columbia's bosom lie ;  
 Where a tyrant néver tródd,  
 Where a sláve was never known ;  
 But where nature worships God,  
 In the wilderness alóne.  
 Thither, thither, would I roam ;  
 There my children may be free,  
 I for them shall find a hóme,  
 Théy will find a gráve for me."

Before speaking or writing the best thing is to think fully and carefully of what is to be done. Go over this slowly and steadily ; understand it well yourself, and there is good hope others may be made to understand too. The great end of speech is to be understood.

Speak at all times as well as you can, slur nothing over, not even a word, and you will write well.

Take no words you do not understand, neither be ashamed of any homely words that will give your meaning. Sounding and showy words that the speaker does not understand, are like other borrowed and castoff trappings, tokens of shabbiness, and not of wealth.

Never take a Latin or French word when an English one can be found which will do as well, although the English word may be thought "low," "vulgar," or "unfashionable." The English word will nevertheless be better understood, and at any rate children will have the chance of understanding.

Do not be ashamed of taking a short English word, although a long Latin one may be had. Formerly it was thought that short words were low and weak, and therefore long Latin and Greek words were looked after. Pope says sneeringly,

"And ten low words oft creep in one dull line."

Pope and the Latinists are, however, no longer masters ; and Leigh Hunt writes of him,

"But ever since Pope spoil'd the ears of the town  
 With his cuckoo song verses, half up and half down."

Some of the best and sweetest things in any tongue have been written not in ten, but in hundreds of low English words "creeping" together. The huge Greek words are, after all, only made up of small words put together, in the same way as in English.

If a Greek, Latin, or French word must be taken, make it as English as may be. If one may say "usefully," there can be no good ground for not saying "usefulness" instead of *utility*.

Before writing a letter or other long writing, set down the heads of everything on which you are going to write ; so that when you think you have done, you may not have to begin again, and thus make what is afterwritten an unwieldy and slovenly appendage.

Having set down the heads, look over them, and bring together by a mark, as A, B, or C, each of those heads which has a common bearing ; then which of each of these ought to come first, and so forth.

RHYME means number, and hence what the Greeks named *arithmetical* was by our forefathers named rhymecraft. A shope, or one who has shaped or made songs, was the name given for *poet*, which has the same meaning in

Greek. We still say, "the maker of this play or of these songs;" but in Queen Elizabeth's time, "maker" was the common name given to a writer.

Rhyme or meter is the law of songcraft or poetry.

In common speaking or prose we do not mete out our words; but in set speeches some great speakers do so measure their words, that there is much of poetry in what they say. The English tongue so readily lends itself to this, that it is hard to know sometimes where prose ends and where poetry begins.

Rhyme or poetry is made in English—

By head rhymes or alliteration;

By accented syllables;

By end rhymes.

Sometimes all of these are used together.

The earliest poetry in English was made wholly by alliteration, or rhyme letters. In each line the same letter, under the accent, is brought in twice or thrice: thus—

*Burnt barns fear the fire.*

*When the steed is stolen, stopple the stabledoor.*

*Look before you leap.*

*Bushy, bushy, burny bee,*

*Tell me when your wedding be.*

*With this ring I thee wed;*

*With my body I thee worship;*

*With all my worldly wealth I thee endow.*

*I Take Thee To be*

*my Wedded Wife;*

*To have and To hold*

*from this day froward,*

*for better, for worse,*

*for richer, for poorer,*

*in sickness, in health,*

*to love and to cherish,*

*Till death do us part;*

*And thereto I plight thee my troth.*

Among the earliest known works in English rhyme are those of Chedman or Cædman, who died in 680, and was first a cowherd at Whitby, and afterwards a monk. It was then, as now, the way in merry meetings of Englishmen for the song to go round; but when it came to Chedman, he, being dull and witless, always left the room for shame. It is told, that one evening after this had happened to Chedman, he lay down, and, falling asleep, dreamed that a holy maiden came to him and bestowed on him the gift of a song. This coming to the ears of the Abbess Hilda, she had Chedman brought to her, and, finding his skill, asked him to set in rhyme the whole of the holy writings, which he is said to have done. Of these songs Bede and Alfred have given that called "The Beginning of the World, or the Creation," from the Book of Genesis, 'Nu we sceolan,' 'Now we shall,' &c.

The words in which this is given are now hard to be understood; but the following, which is freely made from the Anglo-Saxon, will show the kind of rhyme in which the early masters wrote. The rhyme letters are marked.

"Now shall we sing  
who sways the skies above,  
The Maker's might,  
his mind's high thought—

How, wielder of this wondrous  
 world and man,  
 He, the Lord, the everlasting,  
 laid the new beginning,  
 And for earth's early sons  
*erst* shap'd  
 The heavens as a high-roof  
 did the Father *Holy* ;  
 Then midearth mankind's Ward  
 most kindly,  
 Ere all time, endless,  
 everlasting, did afterwards bring forth."

In the book of Ecclesiastes, or The Preacher, the English writer has, in the following, well enough shown an alliteration like to the Hebrew :

To every thing there is a season,  
 And a time to every purpose under heaven ;  
 A time to be born, and a time to die ;  
 A time to *kill*, and a time to *heal* ;  
 A time to break down, and a time to build up.

The English of The Song of Solomon greatly owes its sweetness to the alliteration, which is as much English as Hebrew :

I am the rose of Sharon and the lily of the valleys.  
 As the lily among thorns, so is my love among the daughters :  
 As the apple tree among the trees of the wood,  
 So is my beloved among the sons.  
 I sat down under his shadow with great delight,  
 And his fruit was sweet to my taste.  
 His left hand is under my head,  
 And his right hand doth embrace me.

Notwithstanding this chiming of letters, this *alliteration*, has been ill-looked upon by so many of the learned, it clings to English works.

The following is from Spenser's Fairy Queen :—

And other whiles, with amorous delights  
 And pleasing toys, he would her entertain ;  
 Now Singing Sweetly to Surprise her Sprights,  
 Now making Lays of Love and Lover's pain,  
 Bransles, Ballads, *vi*relays, and verses vain.

The songs which Shakspeare has given us, show us that they are cast in the old mould, which was not broken in the Elizabethan time. Ariel sings,

Full fathom five thy father lies,  
 Of his bones are coral made ;  
 These are pearls, that were his eyes  
 Nothing of him that doth fade,  
 But doth suffer a sea change  
 Into something rich and strange.  
 Seannymphs hourly ring his knell ;  
 Hark ! now I hear them—*ding, dong*, bell.

Again :—

" Where the bee sucks, there lurk I ;  
 In a Cowslip's bell I lie ;  
 There I Couch when owls do Cry.



On the bat's back *I* do fly,  
 After sunset, merrily;  
*Merrily, merrily shall I live now,*  
 Under the blossom that hangs on the bough."

In *Twelfth Night* the Duke says—

O, fellow! come, the song we had last night—  
 Mark it, Cesario; it is old and plain;  
 The spinsters and the knitters in the sun,  
 And the free maids that weave their thread with bones,  
 Do use to chaunt it.

The song is—

"Come away, Come away, death,  
 And in sad cypress Let me be Laid;  
*Fly away, Fly away, breath,*  
*I am slain by a fair cruel maid.*  
*Not a flower, Not a flower sweet,*  
 On my black coffin let there be strown;  
*Not a friend, Not a friend greet*  
 My poor corse, where my bones shall be thrown."

Another well-known song has taken fast hold of English hearts in all times:—

"Take, oh! Take Those lips away,  
 That So Sweetly were forsworn;  
 And those eyes\* the break of day,  
 lights that do Misdread the Morn;  
 but my kisses bring again,  
 Seals of love, but seal'd in vain."

One, perhaps, older than Shakspeare's time is—

"Sigh no more, ladies, sigh no more;  
 Men were deceivers ever;  
 One foot on sea and one on shore,  
 To one thing constant never:  
 Then sigh not so,  
 But let them go,  
 And be you blithe and bonny."

A verse of "*Blow, blow, thou winter wind,*" will show well enough the working out of a few rhyme letters:—

*Freeze, Freeze, thou bitter sky,*  
*That dost not bite so nigh*  
*As benefits forgot;*  
*Though thou the waters warp,*  
*Thy sting is not so sharp*  
*As friend remember'd not.*

The *F* sound is given five times, the *B* sound four times, the *T*h sound six times, the *N* sound three times, and the *S* sound five times.

It is hard to believe that Shakspeare wrote or took by chance,

"Though thou the waters warp."

"Full fathom five thy father lies."

\* Perhaps spoken *aye*.

"After sunset, merrily ;  
Merrily, merrily, shall I live now,  
Under the blossom that hangs on the bough."

"O ! blessed bond of board and bed."

"They bore him barefac'd on the bier."

"Hark ! hark ! the lark at Heaven's gate sings."

The Shakspearian songs commonly have their first line with head rhymes, if not the others. Perhaps the first line gave the measure in singing.

A part of Milton's Allegro will show well enough how that great writer built upon the olden groundwork :

"Lap me in soft Lydian airs,  
Married to immortal verse,  
Such as the melting soul may pierce,  
In notes, with many a winding bout  
Of linked sweetness, long drawn out ;  
With wanton heed and giddy cunning,  
The melting voice through mazes running,  
Untwisting all the chains that tie  
The hidden soul of harmony ;  
That Orpheus' self may heave his head  
From golden slumber on a bed  
Of heap'd Elysian flowers, and hear  
Such strains as would have won the ear  
Of Pluto, to have quite set free  
His half regain'd Eurydice.  
These delights if thou canst give,  
Mirth, with thee I mean to live.

The structure of the above is very simple.

Gray, in his imitations of the Norse Scalds, freely brought in rhyme letters :

"Ruin seize thee, ruthless king !  
Confusion on thy banners wait !  
Though fann'd by conquest's crimson wing,  
They mock the air with idle state.  
Helm nor hauberk's twisted mail,  
Nor e'en thy virtues, tyrant, shall prevail."  
"Weave the warp, and weave the woof,  
The winding sheet of Edward's race."

In the following, from Byron, alliteration is as unsparingly brought in :—

"Dear object of defeated care !  
Though now of love and thee bereft,  
To reconcile me with despair,  
Thine image and my tears are left.  
'Tis said with sorrow Time can cope ;  
But this, I feel, can ne'er be true ;  
For, by the deathblow of my hope,  
My memory immortal grew."

From Byron, verse after verse may be taken :

"The isles of Greece, the isles of Greece,  
Where burning Sappho lov'd and sung,

Where grew the arts of war and peace,  
 Where Delos rose and Phoebus sprung;  
 Eternal summer gilds them yet,  
 But all except their sun is set.

"The Scian and the Teian muse,  
 The hero's harp, the lover's lute,  
 Have found the fame your shores refuse.  
 Their place of birth alone is mute  
 To sounds, which echo further west,  
 Than your sires' islands of the blest.

"The mountains look on Marathon,  
 And Marathon looks on the sea;  
 And musing there an hour alone,  
 I dreamed that Greece may still be free;  
 For, standing on the Persian's grave,  
 I could not deem myself a slave."

Must we but weep o'er days more blest?  
 Must we but blush? our fathers bled!  
 Fill high the bowl with Samian wine,  
 We will not think of themes like these.

The following is a snatch from Moore:—

Erin! the tear and the smile in thine eyes,  
 Blend like the rainbow that hangs in the skies;  
 Shining through sorrow's stream,  
 Sadd'ning through pleasure's beam;  
 Thy sons with doubtful gleam  
 Weep while they rise!

The lines to his mother show the same:—

They tell us of an Indian tree  
 Which, howsoe'er the sun and sky  
 May tempt its boughs to wander free,  
 And shoot and blossom wide and high,  
 Far better loves to bend its arms  
 Downward again to that dear earth,  
 From which the life that fills and warms  
 Its grateful being, first had birth.  
 'Tis thus, though woo'd by flatt'ring friends,  
 And fed with fame (if fame it be),  
 This heart, My own dear Mother, bends,  
 With love's true instinct, back to thee.

Campbell, in his Battle of Hohenlinden, has—

On Linden, when the sun was low,  
 All bloodless lay th' untrodden snow;  
 And dark as winter was the flow  
 Of Iser rolling rapidly.  
 But Linden saw another sight,  
 When the drum beat at dead of night,  
 Commanding fires of death, to light  
 The darkness of her scenery.

Throughout this poem, *L*, *D*, and *T*, are the leading rhyme letters.  
*Head rhyming* is quite unlike end rhyming. In the latter, at the end of  
*each two or three lines*, like words must answer each other, and this goes

little way towards poetry, as, indeed, French writers well enough show us. In head rhyming, as in blank verse, no two lines need answer in sound, and the end of the verse need not be of the same make as the beginning. Thus line after line may follow in endless rhythm.

Blank verse is tied down by the whole number of syllables in a line, and by accentuation; but in head rhyming, the lines may be of many lengths, so that rhythm be kept to the ear.

Head rhymes, not being tied by the number of syllables, have, therefore, the power of the classic quantitated lines, or, truly speaking, greater power.

English poetry, in end rhymes, owes much to alliteration or head rhymes. The English tongue takes so readily to alliteration, that any one with a good ear can hardly help falling into it, for one word summons up, as it were, another. Even blank verse is strengthened by alliteration, as the works of our greatest masters show.

To an English ear, such common saws as the following, which have no end rhymes, are as well understood to be verses, as a Latin hexameter is by an old Roman or by a classical scholar; by the latter of whom so many trials at English hexameter have fruitlessly been made.

Every Jack shall have his Jill.

Burnt barns  
fear the fire.

With this ring I thee wed,  
With my body I thee worship,  
With all my worldly goods I thee endow.

Having is having,  
however men catch.

Head rhyming is the best meter for lyric poetry, for new songs as for old, for hymns, for recitative in operas and oratorios, and for church worship; but little has been done with it, unless by taking the works of the old masters, or by chance.

The chance alliterations in the Church Service strike the ear; and some of them, it may be, are taken from the early writings before the Reformation.

Our Father, which art in Heaven, hallowed be thy name;  
*Thy kingdom come;*  
*Thy will be done on earth, as it is in heaven.*  
Give us *this day* our daily bread;  
And forgive us our trespasses  
As we forgive them that trespass against us.  
And lead us not into temptation,  
But deliver us from evil.

#### VENITE EXULTEMUS DOMINO.

O! come, let us sing unto the Lord,  
And heartily rejoice in the strength of our salvation;  
For he is the Lord our God,  
And we are the people of his pasture, and the sheep of his hand.

O! God, make speed to save us.  
O! Lord, make haste to help us.

#### MAGNIFICAT.

For he that is mighty hath magnified me,  
And holy is his name:  
He hath shown strength with his arm.

## CANTATE DOMINO.

O sing unto the Lord a new song,  
 For he hath done marvellous things;  
 With his own right hand, and with his holy arm,  
 Hath he gotten himself the victory.

Head rhyming was used by our fathers as a help to memory, inasmuch as one sound being known, it would be remembered there were two others of the same kind.

In that early work, Widsith, or the Traveller's Song, which is by some thought to be thirteen hundred years old, long strings of names of Germanic kings and folk are thus given:—

And Chelic (swayed) the Fins,  
 Haken Holmrick,  
 And Henda Glemming  
 Witta wielded the Swedes  
 Wada the Helsings  
 Meach the Murgings  
 Marcwolf the Hundings  
 Theodric wold\* Frankings  
 Thyla the Rendings  
 Brocca the Brondings  
 Billing the Warings.

Fin Folkwolding wold† Frisenkin.

The argument of the Menechmi of Plautus, is thus given by W. W. in 1595:—

"Two twinborn sons a Sicil merchant had,  
 Menechmus one, and Sosicles the other;  
 The first his father lost, a little lad;  
 Grandfather named the latter like his brother."

The old saws or proverbs, and nursery songs, take hold of the mind by the same power.

Shakspeare has fully used head rhyming in his scenes of magic, keeping up to the spirit of the old runes and magic rhyme-staves. In *Macbeth* he makes the witches say—

I will drain him dry as hay;  
 Sleep shall neither night nor day  
 Hang upon his penthouse lid;  
 He shall live a man forbid.  
 Weary sennights, nine times nine,  
 Shall he dwindle, peak, and pine.  
 Thrice to thine and thrice to mine,  
 And thrice again to make up nine.  
 Double, double, toil and trouble,  
 Fire-burn and cauldron bubble.  
 Fillet of a fenny snake  
 In the cauldron boil and bake:  
 Eye of newt and toe of frog,  
 Wool of bat and tongue of dog,  
 Adder's fork and blindworm's sting,  
 Lizard's leg and owl's wing,  
 For a charm of powerful trouble,  
 Like a hell-broth, boil and bubble.

\* Swayed.

† Wielded, swayed over.

Gray has well brought this to bear in *The Bard* :—

*Weave the warp and weave the woof,  
The winding sheet of Edward's race.*

Alliteration is at any rate not found ill in singing; for, besides alliterative burdens and choruses like the old "*Hey Nonny, Nonny*," the same words are sung over again.

From this power of alliteration the English tongue readily lends itself to punning; and to alliteration many of the jingles of the Elizabethan dramatists are to be attributed, rather than to punning.

It is the more needful to attend to the laws of head or letter rhyming, as they are the groundwork of English poetry. On the English Saxon model was founded the poetry of the middle ages. This again exercised its influence on the Elizabethan school; and by the example of this, modern poets have been guided and thus have insensibly followed the ancient practice. That Shakspeare purposely followed the old practice can hardly be gainsaid; his songs bear the strongest witness to this. We cannot, however, speak to the intentional practice of Milton and the moderns; but their ears had been so trained to the old routine, that in the result their works are as rigidly formed as those of the English Saxon time.

IN HEAD RHYMING the rhymes should be of accented syllables. The meters used are many.

*First.* Correspondence of simple consonants :

*Full fathom five thy father lies.*

*Second.* Correspondence of double consonants or partial syllables :

*Burnt Barns.*

By the later writers this is often made a full rhyme.

*Third.* Correspondence of vowels :

*There I c-ou-ch when owls do cry.*

Many of the great poets bring into the middle of the line a vowel to correspond with the end vowel :

And other whiles with amorous delights  
Now making lays of love and lover's pain.

The first two consonants are brought near together, but need not begin the line.

*Fourth.* By short lines :

Burnt Barns  
Fear Fire.

By long lines :

With this ring I thee wed, with my body I thee worship.

When a long line is made, it must be broken by a cesura, or rest.

*Fifth.* Compound meters—

A. Of two marked consonants, as W and TH in the same line :

With this ring I thee Wed, With my body I thee Worship.

B. Of one marked consonant and one marked vowel, as of C and OU in the same line :

There I Couch when owls do Cry.  
Take, oh ! Take those lips away.

C. Of several marked consonants and vowels :

*Lights that do Misl-ead th-e M-orn.*  
H

In old meter, the first half of the line commonly has two marked consonants, and the other half one marked consonant; but short lines are made with two consonants only.

Sometimes the beginning of the line is made with one sound, and the other half with another.

Sometimes the sounds are mixed together.

Sometimes the latter sounds of one line become the key to the next :

Two twinborn sons a Sicil merchant had,  
Menechmus one, and Sosicles the other.

In short compositions the same sounds are often used as a help to the memory. In three lines of the wedding pledge the rhyme letters are W and Th. In the longer one the leading rhyme letters are T and D.

BLANK VERSE is verse without end rhymes, having a fixed number of words in a line, and a varying number of accented syllables.

Without a cesura or rest in the middle line, it is hard to make blank verse; and therefore such verse is mostly in lines of ten or eleven syllables, and little of it is in short lines. It is chiefly used for plays and for epic poems.

The quality of mércy" is not strained;  
It droppeth" ás the géntle" déw from héaven  
Upón the pláce beneath"; it is twice blést,  
It blésseth him" that gives" and him that takes;  
"Tis mightiest" of the mighty"; it becomes  
The thróned mónarch" bétter" thán his crówn.  
His sceptre" shóws" the fórcé" of témporal pów'r,  
The áttíbúte of áwe" and májesty,  
Wherein doth sit" the dréad" and féar of kings.

Thus Shakspeare. Milton begins the *Paradise Lost* as follows :—

Of Mán's first dísobédíence", and the frúit  
Of thát forbidden" trée" whose mórtal táste  
Brought déath" into the wórl'd" and áll our wóe,  
With lóss" of Éden", till one gréater mán  
Restóre us", and regain" the blíssful séat,  
Sing, héav'nly Múse".

Head rhymes are much used by the great masters; so that blank verse can commonly be scanned double, once for the accented syllables, and once for the head rhymes.

Thus, in the foregoing lines :

The quality of mercy is not strain'd;  
It droppeth as the gentle dew from heaven  
Upon the p-lace Beneath ; it is twice B-lest,  
It blesseth him that gives and him that takes ;  
'Tis Mightiest of the Mighty ; it becomes  
The throned Monarch better than his crown.  
His sceptre shows the force of temporal pow'r,  
The attribute of awe and majesty,  
Wherein doth sit the dread and fear of kings.

Milton's lines may be thus scanned :

Of man's first disobedience, and the fruit  
Of that forbidden tree whose mortal taste  
Brought death into the world and all our woe,

With loss of Eden, till *one* greater man  
 Restore us and regain the blissful seat,  
 Sing, heavenly Muse !

Some lines from Byron's *Manfred* may be thus scanned :

*Abbot.* And *why* not live and act *with* other men ?  
*Manfred.* Because my nature was averse from life—  
 And yet not cruel ; for I would not make,  
 But find, a desolation : like the wind,  
 The red hot breath of the most lone simoom,  
 Which d-wells but in the desert and s-woeps o'er  
 The barren sands, which bear no shrubs to blast,  
 And revels o'er their wild and arid waves,  
 And seeketh not, so that it is not sought,  
 But being met is deadly ; such hath been  
 The path of my existence.

Milton uses the power of alliteration with great effect, each line varying in composition. In one we may find the old meter of two consonants at the beginning and one towards the end ; in another line, two consonants towards the end ; in another, two leading consonants mixed together ; sometimes for several lines a leading consonant is carried through, by which they are united in melody. The following passages will throw light on this, and show what various skill is blended in his great work :—

That day I oft remember, when from sleep  
 I first awak'd and found myself repos'd  
 Under a shade, on flowers ; much wondering where  
 And what I was, whence thither brought and how :  
 Not distant far from thence, a murmuring sound  
 Of waters issued from a cave and spread  
 Into a liquid plain, then stood unmov'd,  
 Pure as the expanse of heaven.

So Saying, his proud Step he Scornful turn'd,  
 But with sly circumspection, and Began  
 Through wood, through waste, o'er hill, o'er dale, his roam.

Why sleepest thou, Eve ? now is the pleasant time,  
 The cool, the silent, save where silence yields  
 To the night warbling bird, that now, awake,  
 Tunes sweetest his love labour'd song : now reigns,  
 Full orb'd, the moon, and with more pleasing light  
 Shadowy sets off the face of things—in vain,  
 If none regard ; heaven wakes with all his eyes,  
 Whom to behold but thee, nature's desire !

Best image of myself, and dearer half,  
 The trouble of thy thoughts this night in sleep  
 Affects me equally ; nor can I Lake  
 This uncouth dream—of evil sprung, I fear.

These are thy glorious works, Parent of good !  
 Almighty ! Thine This universal frame,  
 Thus wondrous fair : Thyself how wondrous then !

Fairest of stars, last in the train of night,  
 If better thou belong not to the dawn ;  
 Sure pledge of day, that crownst the smiling morn !



In the *Samson Agonistes*, Milton has tried a mixture of long lines and short lines; but some of the latter have end rhymes. He has, however, greatly used alliteration:

O! *dark, dark, dark*, amid the blaze of noon;  
 Irrecoverably *dark*! total eclipse,  
 Without all hope of day!  
 O! first created beam, and thou great Word,  
 "Let there be *light*, and *light* was over all!"  
 Why am I thus bereav'd thy prime decree?  
 The sun to me is dark  
 And silent as the moon  
 When she deserts the night,  
 Hid in her vacant interlunar cave.  
 Since *light* so necessary is for *life*,  
 And almost *life* itself, if it be true  
 That *light* is in the soul,  
 The *all* in every part, why was this sight  
 To such a tender *ball* as the *eye* confin'd,  
 So obvious and so easy to be quench'd?  
 As in the land of darkness, yet in *light*,  
 To live a *life* half dead, a living death,  
 And buried! but O, yet more miserable!  
 My-self my sepulchre—a moving grave!

END RHYMES are of several classes:—

Single rhymes:

The combat deepens; on, ye *brave*!  
 Who rush to glory or the *grave*!

Double rhymes:

Then shook the hills, with thunder *riv-en*;  
 Then rush'd the steed, to battle *driv-en*.

Rhymes following, as in the above examples.

Rhymes alternate:

Come away, come away, *death*!  
 And in sad cypress let me be *laid*.  
 Fly away, fly away, *breath*!  
 I am slain by a fair cruel *maid*.

End rhymes of themselves, however, make but doggerel. The lines must be of a regular number of syllables, and of accented syllables; and in long lines the cesura must be used.

For melody, alliteration or head rhyming is much used, as already shown.

The root of the rhyme laws of the English tongue is accent. The Greeks and Latins chiefly measured their poetry by the quantity or length of the syllable, calling the syllable long or short, and of combinations of such syllables, making feet. Hence the terms of classic prosody have been brought into English books, and lead to much confusion.

The feet used in poetry have been thus named; the mark ' standing for an accented, and ° for an unaccented, syllable:—

*Two Syllable feet.*

Trochee ' °  
 Iambus ° '  
 Spondee ' '  
 Pyrrhic ° °

*Three Syllable feet.*

Dactyl ' ° °  
 Amphibrach ° ' °  
 Anapæst ° ° '  
 Tribrach ° ° °

Several of these have no being in English rhyme.  
The Iambic foot is thus:—

The quá | itý | of mér | cy is | not stráin'd.  
The seás | shall wáste, | the skíes | in smóke | decáy.  
Then rúst | ling, cráck | ling, crásh | ing thún | der dówn.

The Trochaic foot is thus:—

Róund us | róars the | témpest | lóuder.

The Anapæstic foot runs thus:—

At the clóse | of the dáy, | when the hám | let is stíll.  
O! ye wóods, | spread your brán | ches apáce.

Besides the several kinds of feet, which are variously mixed to form lines, single syllables are inserted at the beginning or end of lines to affect the measure.

Lines are more commonly distinguished as six, seven, eight, nine, or ten syllable, than by the number of feet.

Long and short lines are likewise mixed together in lyric poetry.

A rest is made at the end of the line, called the end-rest or final pause, and one towards the middle of most lines, called the cesura or break. In the arrangement of the latter, much variety may be produced, and great skill is needed. In long lines there is, likewise, a half cesura sometimes. The following will give examples of the application of the cesura (") break, and the half cesura (').

"With this ring" I thee wed;  
With my body "I thee worship."

"Full fathom five" thy father lies;  
Of his bones "are coral made."

"Take, 'Oh! take" those lips' away,  
That 'so sweetly" were' forsown."

"Ruin seize thee," ruthless king!  
Confusion "on thy banners' wait."

"The isles of Greece," the isles of Greece,  
Where burning Sappho "lov'd' and sang,  
Where grew 'the arts of war' and peace,  
Where Delos rose" and Phoebus sprang."

In the extracts from Shakspeare and Milton, under the head of blank verse, the cesura is marked.

The meters are very various. Among them may be named—

*Heroic verse*: blank or with end rhymes, ten syllables in Iambics. The rhymes in couplets, that is, two lines and two lines.

*Elegiacs*: ten syllables in Iambics, with end rhymes alternate. These are commonly arranged in stanzas, or sets of verses.

"The cúrfew tólls" the knéll' of pártíng dáy;  
The lówing herds' wínd "slówly ó'er the léa;  
The plóughman' hómewards" plóds his wéary' wáy,  
And léaves the wórl'd "to sólitúde' and mé."

*Eight syllable measures* with end rhymes, either with all the lines alternately rhymed, or with the first and third unrhymed.

A great variety of stanzas have been imitated from the Italian. *Ottava rima* consists of eight ten-syllable lines, six of them rhyming two and two, and the last two rhyming together. The *Spenserian stanza* consists of nine

lines, eight of them ten syllables, and the last an Alexandrine of twelve syllables. Onè rhyme is dwelt upon in each stanza.

Poetry may be chiefly distinguished into three classes:—

*Heroic*—including the Drama, the Epic, the Didactic, and the Satiric.

*Narrative*—including Tales and Descriptions, Epics in Stanzas, and the Burlesque.

*Lyric*—including Songs, Odes, the Lyric Drama, and Rhymes.

Poetical license is the leave which poets take to make alterations in words, for the sake of meter. These are—

Leaving out the possessive *s*.

Shortening syllables, as *short'ning*, *lov'st*, *seest*.

Cutting off vowels, as *th'armour* (*syncope*); using shortened words, as *'neath* for beneath; *gainst* for against; *e'en* for even.

Taking the participial for the imperfect, and the imperfect for the participial; as "He drunk, he had drank;" "he has broke."

Using the singular of the imperfect for the plural, and the plural for the singular; as "I sung," "we sang."

Adding a syllable, as *deary* for dear, *Johnny* for John.

Changing the quantity of syllables, as *wind* for wind.

Shifting the accent.

Taking words from the dialects, mostly from the Northumbrian and Lowland. Words from the impure mixed dialects, Welsh, Irish, or Negro, cannot be so taken, unless for burlesque.

Spelling or dividing syllables differently, as suits the meter; verbal endings given full or short; as *stopped*, *stopt*, *stoppest*, *stopst*, *stoppeth*, *stopth*, *stops*, *stoppest*, *stoppedst*.

Many of these licenses are used by the speaker as well as the poet.

#### FIGURES OF SPEECH AND THOUGHT.

Instead of the simple description of an object, we sometimes put it in such a light as to heighten the particular view we wish to give, by speaking more strongly to the imagination of the hearer. Instead of saying "He is a strong man," or "He is a weak man," we say "He is a Hercules," "He is as weak as a shadow," "He is like a shadow," "He is a shadow."

These figures are of several kinds:—

A Likeness, *Comparison* or *Simile*, makes a likeness between two things, and carries it out in details. Here is a likeness made between wax and water and the mind: "As wax would not be adequate to the purposes of signature if it had not the power to retain, as well as to receive, the impression: the same holds of the soul, with respect to sense and imagination. Had it sense without imagination, it would not be as wax, but as water, where, though all impressions are instantly made, yet, as soon as they are made, they are instantly lost."

"Man, like the generous vine, supported lives;

The strength he gains is from th' embrace he gives.

Plants rais'd with tenderness are seldom strong;

Man's coltish disposition asks the thong;

And, without discipline, the fav'rite child,

Like a neglected forester, runs wild."

Likeness brings together those things which are alike; Antithesis sets against each other those which are unlike. Thus, "If you wish to enrich a person, study not to increase his stores, but to diminish his desires."

"Though deep, yet clear; though gentle, yet not dull;

Strong without rage; without o'erflowing, full."

"Contrasted faults through all his manners reign;  
 Though poor, *luxurious*; though submissive, *vain*;  
 Though grave, yet *trifling*; zealous, though *untrue*;  
 And e'en in penance *planning sins anew*."

A Metaphor is when, instead of saying one thing is like another, we give it at once the properties of another: "He is the pillar of the State—the father of his country."

"In the *twilight of my day*  
 I am hastening to the *west*;  
 There my weary limbs to rest,  
 Where the sun *retires to rest*."

ALLEGORY is a metaphor long drawn out. Such are short fables, and such are some long books; as the "Pilgrim's Progress," where, in the name of a man, a Christian soul goes through a course of adventures. Such is the greater part of "Gulliver's Travels," and such, according to some, is the "Song of Solomon." The imagery of this amatory poem is held to show Jesus Christ's love for his church.

A symbol or emblem is where a thing is made known by some sign of it; as "The crown;" "The English lion;" for the English empire or power of the English people; or "the stars and stripes" for that of the United States; "the eagle," or "the cock," or, in lower language "the frog," for France.

This symbolism is carried out in drawing, a signboard is a symbol which tells us the owner's trade. We look for the Red Lion to be a public house, the arms of Lombardy to show a pawnbroker's, a pole or basin as marking a shaver's shop, a broad arrow for the Board of Ordnance. Coats of arms with crests, brandmarks, and initial letters, answer the same end in showing ownership. These emblems again, as words, come back into language. We speak of the broad arrow, the lion and unicorn, the American eagle, the fleur-de-lis, the blue jackets, the smock frocks, the blouses.

The moral paintings of Hogarth are allegory in drawing, and so are caricatures.

As one word cannot show anything fully, it becomes more or less a symbol or metaphor, as indeed all speech is.

*Metonymy* is a shifting of names, or putting one part or circumstance of a thing for the whole; as "The kettle boils" for "The water in the kettle boils;" "He knows Shakspeare well" for "Shakspeare's works;" "Blue water" for "The sea."

"Their *furrow* oft the stubborn glebe has broke."

When a part is put for the whole, or the whole for a part, this is more especially called *Synecdoche* or *Comprehension*, as when we speak of "the waves" for "the sea;" "This roof protects you;" "A sail passed in the offing."

"'Twas then his *threshold* first received a guest."

*Personification* or *Prosopopeia* is the figure by which we give life and movement to things without life; as when we say "The ground *thirsts* for rain."

"Thou sun, said I, fair light!  
 And thou enlighten'd earth, so fresh and gay!  
 Ye hills and dales, ye rivers, woods, and plains,  
 And ye that live and move, fair creatures, tell,  
 Tell, if you saw, how came I thus, how here!"

"The worm, aware of his intent,  
Harang'd him thus, right eloquent."

"Flow on, thou shining river ;  
But, ere thou reach the sea,  
Seek Ella's bower, and give her  
The wreaths I fling o'er thee."

Seeing or *Vision* is when the speaker brings before himself and hearers, as before their eyes, something that is past or distant.

*Apostrophe* is turning off from the even course of speech to address some being or thing.

*Heightening, Exaggeration, or Hyperbole* is when anything is made greater than it is :

"Yet one relief this glance of former years  
Brought, mingled with its pain—tears, floods of tears."

"At which the universal host up sent  
A shout, that tore Hell's concave, and beyond  
Frighted the reign of Chaos and old Night."

Fullness, *Amplification, or Climax*, is a heightening of each step of an action.

Asking, or *Interrogation*, shows its own meaning: "He that hath planted the ear, shall He not hear? He that made the eye, shall He not see?"

Andromache! my soul's far better part,  
Why with untimely sorrows heaves thy heart?

Calling, or *Exclamation*, expresses the effect of wonder, sorrow, glee :

Lo! steelclad War his gorgeous standard rears.

Gibing, or *Irony*, is saying a thing otherwise than it is, to throw a stronger meaning upon it, by setting it in another light: "In the name of common sense, why should the Duke of Bedford think that none but the house of Russell are entitled to the favour of the crown? Why should he imagine that no king of England has been capable of judging of merit but King Henry the Eighth? It is little to be doubted that several of his forefathers, in that long series, have degenerated into honour and virtue."

"They must esteem learning *very much*, when they see its professors used with such little ceremony."

"Some lead' a life' unblamable' and just,  
Their own dear virtue' their unshaken trust ;  
They never sin', or if'—as all' offend—  
Some trivial slips" their daily walk attend,  
The poor' are near at hand", the charge' is small,  
A slight' gratuity" atones' for all."

# Rudimentary Scientific Works.

## MR. WEALE'S SERIES OF RUDIMENTARY WORKS FOR THE USE OF BEGINNERS.

### NEW LIST FOR 1852.

THE whole Series, comprising 105 volumes, will be succeeded by other interesting and useful works more especially intended for Public Instruction, written by learned and efficient masters in the several branches of Education.

1. Rudimentary Chemistry, by Professor Fownes, F.R.S., &c. 3rd edition,  
and on Agricultural Chemistry, for the use of Farmers . . . 1s.
2. ——— Natural Philosophy, by Charles Tomlinson, 2nd edition . . . 1s.
3. ——— Geology, by Lieut.-Col. Portlock, F.R.S., F.G.S., &c. 2nd edit. 1s. 6d.
4. ——— Mineralogy, by D. Varley, vol. i. 2nd edition . . . 1s.
5. ——— vol. ii. „ . . . 1s.
6. ——— Mechanics, by Charles Tomlinson, 2nd edition . . . 1s.
7. ——— Electricity, by Sir William Snow Harris, F.R.S., &c. 2nd edit.,  
with the important addition of the Cavendish Papers . . . 1s. 6d.
8. ——— Magnetism: an Exposition of the General Principles of  
Magnetical Science, by Sir W. Snow Harris, vol. i. . . 1s.
9. ——— vol. ii. . . 1s.
10. ——— vol. iii. . . 1s. 6d.
11. ——— History, Progress, and Present State of the Electric Telegraph  
in its several applications, by Edward Highton, C.E. . . 1s.
12. ——— Pneumatics, by Charles Tomlinson, 2nd edition . . . 1s.
13. ——— Civil Engineering, by Henry Law, C.E., vol. i. 2nd edition . . 1s.
14. ——— vol. ii. . . 1s.
15. ——— vol. iii. . . 1s.
16. ——— Architecture (Orders), by W. H. Leeds, 2nd edition . . . 1s.
17. ——— Ditto, (Styles—their several examples,) by T. Bury, Architect . 1s.
18. ——— Principles of Design in Architecture, by E. L. Garbett, Arc't. v. i. . 1s.
19. ——— vol. ii. . . 1s.
20. ——— Perspective, by G. Pyne, Artist, vol. i. 3rd edition . . . 1s.
21. ——— vol. ii. „ . . . 1s.
22. ——— Art of Building, by E. Dobson, C.E., Assoc. Inst. C.E. . . 1s.
23. ——— Brick-making, Tile-making, by the same, vol. i. . . 1s.
24. ——— vol. ii. . . 1s.
25. ——— Masonry and Stone-cutting, by the same . . . 1s.
26. ——— Illustrations of the preceding, in 16 4to atlas plates . . . 1s.
27. ——— Art of Painting, or a Grammar of Colouring, by George  
Field, Esq., vol. i. . . . . 1s.
28. ——— vol. ii. . . . . 1s.
29. ——— Draining Districts and Lands, by G. D. Dempsey, C.E. . . 1s.
30. ——— Draining and Sewage of Towns and Buildings, by  
the same . . . . . 1s.
31. ——— Well-sinking and Boring, by J. G. Swindell, Archi-  
tect, 2nd edition, revised by G. R. Burnell, C.E. . . 1s.

- |     |   |     |
|-----|---|-----|
| 32. | Rudimentary Art of Use of Instruments (generally), by J. F. Heather, M.A., of the Royal Mil. Acad., Woolwich, 2nd edit. . .   | 1s. |
| 33. | Constructing Cranes for the Erection of Buildings and for Hoisting Goods, by J. Glynn, F.R.S., C.E. . .   | 1s. |
| 34. | Treatise on the Steam Engine, by Dr. Lardner. ( <i>Written specially for this Rudimentary Series.</i> ) . . .   | 1s. |
| 35. | Art of Blasting Rocks and Quarrying, and on Stone, by Lieut.-Gen. Sir John Burgoyne, K.C.B., R.E., &c. &c. . .  | 1s. |
| 36. | Dictionary of Terms used by Architects, Builders, Civil and Mechanical Engineers, Surveyors, Artists, Ship-builders, &c. vol. i. . . . .  | 1s. |
| 37. | vol. ii. . . . .  | 1s. |
| 38. | vol. iii. . . . .   | 1s. |
| 39. | vol. iv. . . . .  | 1s. |
| 40. | Art of Painting on Glass, or Glass-Staining, by Dr. M. A. Geassert, with an Appendix on the Art of Enamelling, &c. . .  | 1s. |
| 41. | Essay on the Art of Painting on Glass, by E. O. Fromberg . .  | 1s. |
| 42. | Treatise on Cottage Building; and some new Hints for Improving Dwellings, by C. B. Allen, Architect . . .   | 1s. |
| 43. | Tubular, Girder Bridges, and others, more particularly describing the Britannia and Conway Bridges, with the Experiments made to determine their form, strength, and efficiency, by G. D. Dempsey, C.E. . .   | 1s. |
| 44. | Foundations and Concrete Works, by E. Dobson, C.E. . . . .  | 1s. |
| 45. | Limes, Cements, Mortars, Concrete, Mastics, Plastering, &c., by Geo. R. Burnell, C.E. . . . .   | 1s. |
| 46. | the Art of Constructing and Repairing Common Roads, by H. Law, C.E. . . . .   | 1s. |
| 47. | the History, Construction, and Illumination of Lighthouses, by Alan Stevenson, LL.B., F.R.S.E., M. Inst. C.E. . . . . vol. i.   | 1s. |
| 48. | Ditto, Continuation of the same subject, vol. ii. . .   | 1s. |
| 49. | vol. iii. . . . .   | 1s. |
| 50. | the Law of Contracts for Works and Services, by David Gibbons, Esq. . . . .   | 1s. |
| 51. | Naval Architecture, the Elementary Principles of the Science, by J. Peake, H. M. Naval Architect . . .  | 1s. |
| 52. | the Practical Principles of Ditto, forming a 2nd and a 3rd volume, to complete the work, vol. i. . .  | 1s. |
| 53. | vol. ii. . . . .  | 1s. |
| 54. | Masting, Mast-making, and Rigging of Ships . .  | 1s. |
| 55. | Navigation: the Sailor's Sea-Book; in two Parts: i. How to keep the log and work it off. ii. On finding the latitude and longitude. By James Greenwood, Esq., B.A.—With Directions for Great Circle Sailing; an Essay on the Law of Storms and Variable Winds; and an Explanation of Terms used in Ship-Building, with coloured illustrations of Flags, vol. i. . . | 1s. |

56.	Rudimentary Treatise on Navigation, &c., vol. ii. . . . .	1s.
57.	the Principles of the Art of Warming and Ventilating Domestic and Public Buildings, Mines, Light-houses, Ships, &c., by Chas. Tomlinson, vol. i. . . . .	1s.
58.	vol. ii. . . . .	1s.
59.	Steam Boilers, their Construction and Practical Management, by Robert Armstrong, C.E. . . . .	1s.
60.	Land and Engineering Surveying, for the use of Schools and Private Students; for Practical Land Surveyors, and Engineers, by T. Baker, C.E., vol. i. . . . .	1s.
61.	vol. ii. . . . .	1s.
62.	Introductory Sketches of Railway Details, by R. M. Stephenson, C.E. . . . .	1s.
63.	Treatise on the Construction of Agricultural Buildings of every description, by G. H. Andrews, Agricultural Engineer . . . . .	1s.
64.	on Motive Powers, and the Machinery of the Steading, by G. H. Andrews, A.E. . . . .	1s.
65.	on Agricultural Field Engines, Machines, and Implements, by the same . . . . .	1s.
66.	on Clay Lands and Loamy Soils, and the Value of different Lands, by Prof. Donaldson, Government Land Drainage Surveyor . . . . .	1s.
67.	on Clock and Watch-making, and on Church Clocks, with illustrations, by E. B. Denison, M.A., vol. i. . . . .	1s.
68.	vol. ii. . . . .	1s.
69.	and Practical Treatise on Music, with plates of examples, by C. C. Spencer, Professor of Music, vol. i. . . . .	1s.
70.	vol. ii. . . . .	1s.
71.	Instruction for Playing the Piano-Forte, by the same . . . . .	1s.
72.	Treatise (A Manual of the Mollusca) on Recent Fossil Shells, by S. P. Woodward, Assoc. of the Linnæan Soc. . . . .	1s.
73.	Illustrations to Do. . . . .	1s.
74.	vol. ii. of the same . . . . .	1s.
75.	Illustrations . . . . .	1s.
	* * Coloured after nature, price 10s. 6d. each series.	
76.	Treatise on Descriptive Geometry, with the Theory of Shadows and of Perspective, from the French of G. Monge, by J. F. Heather, M.A. . . . .	1s.
77.	Descriptive Geometry: Illustrations to the same, in 14 plates, atlas 4to . . . . .	1s.
78.	Steam as applied to General Purposes and Locomotive Engines, by J. Sewell, C.E. . . . .	1s.
79.	Locomotive Engines only, by the same, vol. ii. . . . .	1s.
79*.	Supplementary volume to the above, illustrative of the Origin, Growth, and rapid Developments of the Locomotive Engine . . . . .	1s.
80.	Marine Engines, particularly in reference to H.M. Steam Navy, by R. Murray, C.E. . . . .	1s.
81.	Ditto, and on the Screw, &c., by the same, vol. ii. . . . .	1s.



82. Rudimentary Treatise on the Power of Water, as applied to drive Flour-Mills, and to give Motion to Turbines and other Hydrostatic Engines, by Jos. Glynn, F.R.S., C.E. . . . .
83. ——— Book-Keeping and Commercial Phraseology, by James Haddon, M. A., King's College, London . . . . .

# MATHEMATICAL SERIES.

84. ——— and Elementary Treatise on Arithmetic, with a full Explanation of the Theory, and numerous Examples for Practice and for Self-Examination, by J. R. Young, late Prof. of Mathematics, Belfast Coll.: with the Answers at the end . . . . .
85. ——— Equational Arithmetic, applied to Questions of Interest, Annuities, and General Commerce: also Formulæ for the Solution of all ordinary Calculations by a simple Equation, by W. Hipsley, of Hull . . . . .
86. ——— Elements of Algebra, for the use of Schools and Self-Instruction, vol. i. by James Haddon, M.A., King's Coll., London . . . . .
87. ——— vol. ii. by the same . . . . .
88. ——— Principles of Geometry; the application of Logic to Geometrical Reasoning, based on the text of Euclid, Books 1, 2, 3. By Henry Law, C.E., vol. i. . . . .
89. ——— vol. ii., by the same; 4th, 5th, 6th, 11th and 12th Books of Euclid, with illustrative Notes, and a practical application of the various Theorems . . . . .
90. ——— Analytical Geometry, by James Hann, Professor, King's Coll. . . . .
91. ——— Treatise on Plane Trigonometry, by the same . . . . .
92. ——— Spherical Trigonometry, by the same . . . . .
93. ——— Elements and Practice of Mensuration and Geodesy, by T. Baker, C.E. . . . .
94. ——— Treatise on Logarithms, vol. i. by Henry Law, C.E. . . . .
95. ——— Tables for facilitating Astronomical, Nautical, Trigonometrical, and Logarithmic Calculations, vol. ii. by the same . . . . .
96. ——— and Elementary Treatise on Popular Astronomy, by the Rev. Robert Main, of Her Majesty's Observatory, Greenwich . . . . .
97. ——— Principles and Practice of Statics and Dynamics, by T. Baker, C.E. . . . .
98. ——— Elements of Mechanism, elucidating the Principles developed by the Science of Mechanics for the elementary and practical Construction of Machines, for the use of Schools and the Student in Mechanical Engineering, by T. Baker, C.E. . . . .
- 98\*. ——— with Practical Machines, by the same . . . . .
99. The Theory and Practice of Nautical Astronomy and Navigation, by H. J. Jeans, Royal Naval College, Portsmouth, vol. i. . . . .
100. ——— vol. ii. . . . .
- These volumes describe the use of the 'Nautical Almanac,' by means of an investigation of the construction of some of the Tables contained therein: they also contain numerous easy Examples.—Rules at length for finding the latitude and longitude and variation of the compass, and also their investigation,—thus rendering it complete, without reference to any other work on the subject.
101. Rudimentary Differential Calculus, in which the Principles are clearly elucidated, by W. S. B. Woolhouse, F.R.A.S. . . . .

102. Rudimentary Integral Calculus, in which the Principles are also clearly elucidated, by Homersham Cox, M. A. of Cambridge . 1s.
103. ——— Collection of Examples of the Integral Calculus, vol. i. by James Hann, Professor, King's College . 1s.
104. ——— the Differential Calculus, vol. ii. by J. Haddon, M. A., King's College . 1s.
105. ——— and First Mnemonical Lessons in Algebra, Geometry, and Trigonometry, by the Rev. Thos. Penyngton Kirkman, M.A., Rector of Croft-with-Southworth, Lancashire . 1s.6d.

This volume, which contains more than the usual number of pages, is an excellent accompaniment to the 21 preceding works.

## NEW SERIES OF 'LONDON.'

A new Series at 1s. each, developing in Ten Sectional Divisions, for the convenience of the Industrial Classes,

### THE METROPOLIS OF THE BRITISH EMPIRE AND ITS NEIGHBOURHOOD,

Described and elucidated by an Exposition of its History and Antiquities:

#### INCLUDING

The History of the Corporation of the ancient City of London—its Arts, Trade, and Commerce—its Architecture, Club-Houses, Docks, Picture Galleries, Scientific Institutions and Public Libraries, Astronomical Observatories in and near London, and other interesting and useful information, amply described and illustrated.

The following opinion of the whole combined as a volume has been expressed by a periodical of the highest standard, devoted to literature and the arts:

"A volume of nearly a thousand closely printed pages descriptive of everything that can interest the stranger or the resident, profusely embellished with more than two hundred carefully executed wood-cuts of the principal points of interest in its thoroughfares, and a newly constructed Map by Mr. Lowry, cannot be otherwise than acceptable to the mass of visitors to the Metropolis at the present time. When we add that all this is produced at an exceedingly moderate cost, we cannot but feel that Mr. Weale's work was suggested by higher than mere trade notions,—by a wish, in fact, to be serviceable to all who wanted such services. Throughout we trace a careful desire to be accurate and a freedom from a mere common-place laudation of certain pet places which are stereotyped for praise, such as the view from Richmond Hill and other localities. With such a book as this none but the hypercritical could be dissatisfied. In going over so large a field, and the vast amount of pains taken, the insignificance of a few slips of the pen render them venial. We cannot but feel the superiority of a work of this kind to some more ambitious hand-books, which are made up by a paste-and-scissors process, with an abundance of quotations from old books, containing mere nominal allusions to places and things, void of all interest but that which the philosophical inquirer may need in noting the misdirected ingenuity of the compiler. Mr. Weale's book takes a higher position than these, and he is justly entitled to higher reward. His volume is a sensible and useful guide."—*Art-Union Journal*, Sept. 1831.

1. LONDON.—Section I. The Physical Geography of the Basin of the Thames  
—II. Climate—III. Geology—IV. Natural History—V. Statistics—  
Spirit of the Public Journals—'Times' Printing-press—VI. Legislation  
and Government, Municipal Arrangements, Police, Postal Arrangements—  
Banking—Assurance Offices—Export and Import Duties.  
*Wood-cuts of 'Times' Machine.* . 1s.
2. ——— Architecture—Remarks on its History—the Tower—Temple

- Church—Westminster Abbey—St. Stephen's Chapel—St. Paul's—Churches, including those by Sir C. Wren, Inigo Jones, Sir W. Chambers, &c. 30 *wood-cuts*, interior and exterior of Churches . . . 1s.
3. LONDON.—Somerset House—St. Paul's before the fire—Almshouses—Arts, Manufactures, and Trades—Tables of Life Assurance Companies, with the Rates of Premiums—Asylums—the Bank of England—Baths and Washhouses—Buildings for the Labouring Classes—Breweries—Bridges—Canals—Cemetery Companies—Club-Houses. 27 *wood-cuts* . . . 1s.
4. ——— Club-Houses—Churches—Colleges—an elaborate account of the Privileges and Constitution of the City of London, a special article—Customs, Custom House, Docks, and Port of London—Royal Dockyards, with plans—Ducal Residences—the Electric Telegraph—Education—Engineering Workshops—the Royal Exchanges, Coal and Corn Exchanges—Coffee Houses, &c. 30 *wood-cuts* of Club Houses, the Docks, and the three Royal Exchanges, plans and elevations . . . 1s.
5. ——— Galleries of Pictures.—Succinct account of all the Pictures, with the names of the Masters, in the Galleries and Collections of Lord Ashburton—Barbers' Hall, City—Bridewell Hospital—Thomas Baring, Esq., M.P.—the Society of British Artists—British Institution—British Museum—the Duke of Buccleuch—Chelsea Hospital—the Duke of Devonshire—G. Tomline, Esq., M.P.—Dulwich College—the Earl of Ellesmere—the Foundling Hospital—School of Design—Greenwich Hospital—Vernon Gallery—Grosvenor Gallery—Guildhall—Hampton Court—T. Holford, Esq.—H. T. Hope, Esq., M.P.—St. James's Palace—H. A. J. Munro, Esq.—Kensington Palace—the Marquis of Lansdowne—the National Gallery—National Institution—the Duke of Northumberland—Lord Overstone—Mr. Sheepshanks—Lord Garvagh—Earl de Grey—Lord Normanton—Sir Robert Peel—the Queen's Gallery, Buckingham Palace—Samuel Rogers, Esq.—Royal Academy—Society of Arts—the Duke of Sutherland—Lord Ward—the Marquis of Hertford—the Duke of Wellington—Whitehall Chapel—Windsoor Castle, &c. 13 *wood-cuts* . . . 1s.
6. ——— Gas Works and Gas-lighting in London—Gardens, Conservatories, Parks, &c. around London, with an account of their formation and contents. 21 *wood-cuts* of the principal Conservatories, Gardens, &c. . . . 1s.
7. ——— Halls, Hospitals, Inns of Court—Jewish Synagogues—Schools, Learned Societies, Museums, and Public Libraries—Lunatic Asylums—Markets—Mercantile Marine—the Mint—Music, Opera, Oratorio—Musical Societies, &c. 17 *wood-cuts* . . . 1s.
8. ——— Observatories in London and its Vicinity—Observatories and Astronomical Instruments in use at Cambridge and Oxford, with 20 *wood-cuts* of interior and exterior of Observatories, and of Astronomical Instruments . . . 1s.
9. ——— Patent Inventions in England—Public and Private Buildings of London, criticisms on the taste and construction of them—Houses of Parliament—Prisons, &c. 16 *wood-cuts* . . . 1s.
10. ——— Railway Stations in London—Sewers—Statuary—Steam Navigation on the Thames—The Works of the Thames Tunnel—Water-

Supply to the Metropolis—Excursion to Windsor, with views and plans; plans of the Stables, &c.—The Two Universities of Cambridge and Oxford, with views and plans of the Colleges; and an Index and Directory. 25 wood-cuts . . . . . 1s.

\* \* The following gentlemen were contributors to the preceding :

P. P. Baly, Esq. C.E.	George Hatcher, Esq. C.E.	William Pole, Esq.
G. R. Burnell, Esq. C.E.	Edward Kemp, Esq.	George Pyne, Esq.
M. H. Broulau, Esq.	Henry Law, Esq. C.E.	Charles Tomlinson, Esq.
Hyde Clarke, Esq. C.E.	W. H. Leeds, Esq.	W. S. B. Woolhouse, Esq.
E. L. Garbett, Esq. Architect.	Rev. Robert Main, LL.D.	Actuary.
J. Harris, Esq. C.E.	H. Mogford, Esq.	

## NEW SERIES OF EDUCATIONAL WORKS;

OR

Volumes intended for Public Instruction and for Reference :

*To be published in the course of 1852.*

THE public favour with which the Rudimentary Works on scientific subjects have been received induces the Publisher to commence a New Series, somewhat different in character, but which, it is hoped, may be found equally serviceable. The DICTIONARIES of the MODERN LANGUAGES are arranged for facility of reference, so that the English traveller on the Continent and the Foreigner in England may find in them an easy means of communication, although possessing but a slight acquaintance with the respective languages. They will also be found of essential service for the desk in the merchant's office and the counting-house, and more particularly to a numerous class who are anxious to acquire a knowledge of languages so generally used in mercantile and commercial transactions.

The want of small and concise GREEK and LATIN DICTIONARIES has long been felt by the younger students in schools, and by the classical scholar who requires a book that may be carried in the pocket; and it is believed that the present is the first attempt which has been made to offer a complete Lexicon of the Greek Language in so small a compass.

In the volumes on ENGLAND, GREECE and ROME, it is intended to treat of History as a Science, and to present in a connected view an analysis of the large and expensive works of the most highly valued historical writers. The extensive circulation of the preceding Series on the pure and applied Sciences amongst students, practical mechanics, and others, affords conclusive evidence of the desire of our industrious classes to acquire substantial knowledge when placed within their reach; and this has induced the hope that the volumes on History will be found profitable not only in an intellectual point of view, but, which is of still higher importance, in the social improvement of the people; for without a knowledge of the principles of the English constitution, and of those events which have more especially tended to promote our commercial prosperity and political freedom, it is impossible that a correct judgment can be formed by the mass of the people of the measures best calculated to increase the national welfare, or of the character of men best qualified to represent them in Parliament; and this knowledge becomes indispensable in exact proportion as the elective franchise may be extended and the system of government become more under the influence of public opinion.

The scholastic application of these volumes has not been overlooked, and a

comparison of the text with the examinations for degrees, given at the end of the second volume of the History, will show their applicability to the course of historic study pursued in the Universities of Cambridge and London.

1. Outlines of the HISTORY OF ENGLAND, with special reference to the origin and progress of the English Constitution, by Wm. Douglas Hamilton, of University College, with illustrations . . . 1s
  2. ———, Continuation, bringing the History down to a recent period . . . 1s
- \*.\* This history is designed to communicate, in an accessible form, a knowledge of the most essential portions of the great works on the English Constitution, and to form a text-book for the use of Colleges and the higher classes in Schools.
3. View of the HISTORY OF GREECE, in connection with the rise of the arts and civilization in Europe, by W. D. Hamilton, of University College . 1s  
 "To Greece we owe the Arts and Sciences, but to Rome our knowledge of them."
  4. HISTORY OF ROME, considered in relation to its social and political changes, and their influence on the civilization of Modern Europe, designed for the use of Colleges and Schools, by the same . . . 1s
  5. A Chronology of Civil and Ecclesiastical History, Literature, Science, and Art, from the earliest time to 1850, by Edward Law, vol. i. . . 1s
  6. ——— vol. ii. . . 1s
  7. Grammar of the English Language, for use in Schools and for Private Instruction . . . 1s
  8. Dictionary of the English Language, comprehensive and concise . . 1s
  9. Grammar of the Greek Language, by H. C. Hamilton . . . 1s
  10. Dictionary of the Greek and English Languages, vol. i. by H. R. Hamilton . 1s
  11. ———, vol. ii. by the same . . . 1s
  12. ——— English and Greek Languages, vol. iii. by the same . . 1s
  13. Grammar of the Latin Language, by H. C. Hamilton . . . 1s
  14. Dictionary of the Latin and English Languages, vol. i. by H. R. Hamilton . 1s
  15. ———, vol. ii. by the same . . . 1s
  16. ——— English and Latin Languages, vol. iii. by the same . . 1s
  17. Grammar of the French Language . . . 1s
  18. Dictionary of the French and English Languages, vol. i. by D. Varley . 1s
  19. ——— English and French Languages, vol. ii. by the same . . 1s
  20. Grammar of the Italian Language, by Alfred Elwes, Professor of Languages . 1s
  21. Dictionary of the Italian, English, and French Languages, v. i. by the same . 1s
  22. ——— English, Italian, and French Languages, v. ii. by the same . 1s
  23. ——— French, Italian, and English Languages, v. iii. by the same . 1s
  24. Grammar of the Spanish Language, by the same . . . 1s
  25. Dictionary of the Spanish and English Languages, vol. i. by the same . 1s
  26. ——— English and Spanish Languages, vol. ii. by the same . 1s
  27. Grammar of the German Language, by G. L. Strausz, (Ph. Dr.) . . 1s
  28. Dictionary of the English, German, and French Languages, vol. i. by Nicolas Esterhazy S. A. Hamilton . . . 1s
  29. ——— German, English, and French Languages, vol. ii. by the same . . . 1s
  30. ——— French, English, and German Languages, vol. iii. by the same . . . 1s

*In one Volume large 8vo, with 13 Plates, Price One Guinea,  
in half-morocco binding,*

# MATHEMATICS

FOR

PRACTICAL MEN:

BEING

A COMMON-PLACE BOOK

OF

PURE AND MIXED MATHEMATICS,

DESIGNED CHIEFLY FOR THE USE OF

CIVIL ENGINEERS, ARCHITECTS, AND SURVEYORS.

---

BY OLINTHUS GREGORY, LL.D., F.R.A.S.

---

THIRD EDITION, REVISED AND ENLARGED.

BY HENRY LAW,

CIVIL ENGINEER.

# CONTENTS.

## PART I.—PURE MATHEMATICS.

### CHAPTER I.—ARITHMETIC.

Sect.

1. Definitions and Notation.
2. Addition of Whole Numbers.
3. Subtraction of Whole Numbers.
4. Multiplication of Whole Numbers.
5. Division of Whole Numbers.—Proof of the first Four Rules of Arithmetic.
6. Vulgar Fractions.—Reduction of Vulgar Fractions.—Addition and Subtraction of Vulgar Fractions.—Multiplication and Division of Vulgar Fractions.
7. Decimal Fractions.—Reduction of Decimals.—Addition and Subtraction of Decimals.—Multiplication and Division of Decimals.
8. Complex Fractions used in the Arts and Commerce.—Reduction.—Addition.—Subtraction and Multiplication.—Division.—Duodecimals.
9. Powers and Roots.—Evolution.
10. Proportion.—Rule of Three.—Determination of Ratios.
11. Logarithmic Arithmetic.—Use of the Tables.—Multiplication and Division by Logarithms.—Proportion, or the Rule of Three, by Logarithms.—Evolution and Involution by Logarithms.
12. Properties of Numbers.

### CHAPTER II.—ALGEBRA.

1. Definitions and Notation.
2. Addition and Subtraction.
3. Multiplication.
4. Division.
5. Involution.
6. Evolution.
7. Surds.—Reduction.—Addition, Subtraction, and Multiplication.—Division, Involution, and Evolution.
8. Simple Equations.—Extermination.—Solution of General Problems.

Sect.

9. Quadratic Equations.
10. Equations in General.
11. Progression.—Arithmetical Progression.—Geometrical Progression.
12. Fractional and Negative Exponents.
13. Logarithms.
14. Computation of Formulae.

### CHAPTER III.—GEOMETRY.

1. Definitions.
2. Of Angles, and Right Lines, and their Rectangles.
3. Of Triangles.
4. Of Quadrilaterals and Polygons.
5. Of the Circle, and Inscribed and Circumscribed Figures.
6. Of Planes and Solids.
7. Practical Geometry.

### CHAPTER IV.—MENSURATION.

1. Weights and Measures.—1. Measures of Length.—2. Measures of Surface.—3. Measures of Solidity and Capacity.—4. Measures of Weight.—5. Angular Measure.—6. Measure of Time.—Comparison of English and French Weights and Measures.
2. Mensuration of Superficies.
3. Mensuration of Solids.

### CHAPTER V.—TRIGONOMETRY.

1. Definitions and Trigonometrical Formulae.
2. Trigonometrical Tables.
3. General Propositions.
4. Solution of the Cases of Plane Triangles.—Right-angled Plane Triangles.
5. On the application of Trigonometry to Measuring Heights and Distances.—Determination of Heights and Distances by Approximate Mechanical Methods.

CHAPTER VI.—CONIC SECTIONS.

SECT.

- 1. Definitions.
- 2. Properties of the Ellipse.—Problems relating to the Ellipse.
- 3. Properties of the Hyperbola.—Problems relating to the Hyperbola.
- 4. Properties of the Parabola.—Problems relating to the Parabola.

CHAPTER VII.—PROPERTIES OF CURVES.

SECT.

- 1. Definitions.
- 2. The Conchoid.
- 3. The Cissoid.
- 4. The Cycloid and Epicycloid.
- 5. The Quadratrix.
- 6. The Catenary.—Tables of Relations of Catenarian Curves.

PART II.—MIXED MATHEMATICS.

CHAPTER I.—MECHANICS IN GENERAL.

CHAPTER II.—STATICS.

- 1. Statical Equilibrium.
- 2. Center of Gravity.
- 3. General application of the Principles of Statics to the Equilibrium of Structures.—Equilibrium of Piers or Abutments.—Pressure of Earth against Walls.—Thickness of Walls.—Equilibrium of Polygons.—Stability of Arches.—Equilibrium of Suspension Bridges.

CHAPTER III.—DYNAMICS.

- 1. General Definitions.
- 2. On the General Laws of Uniform and Variable Motion.—Motion uniformly Accelerated.—Motion of Bodies under the Action of Gravity.—Motion over a fixed Pulley.—Motion on Inclined Planes.
- 3. Motions about a fixed Center, or Axis.—Centers of Oscillation and Percussion.—Simple and Compound Pendulums.—Center of Gyration, and the Principles of Rotation.—Central Forces.—Inquiries connected with Rotation and Central Forces.
- 4. Percussion or Collision of Bodies in Motion.
- 5. On the Mechanical Powers.—Levers.—Wheel and Axle.—Pulley.—Inclined Plane.—Wedge and Screw.

CHAPTER IV.—HYDROSTATICS.

- 1. General Definitions.
- 2. Pressure and Equilibrium of Non-elastic Fluids.
- 3. Floating Bodies.
- 4. Specific Gravities.
- 5. On Capillary Attraction.

CHAPTER V.—HYDRODYNAMICS.

- 1. Motion and Effluence of Liquids.
- 2. Motion of Water in Conduit Pipes and Open Canals, over Weirs, &c.—Velocities of Rivers.
- 3. Contrivances to Measure the Velocity of Running Waters.

CHAPTER VI.—PNEUMATICS.

- 1. Weight and Equilibrium of Air and Elastic Fluids.
- 2. Machines for Raising Water by the Pressure of the Atmosphere.
- 3. Force of the Wind.

CHAPTER VII.—MECHANICAL AGENTS.

- 1. Water as a Mechanical Agent.
- 2. Air as a Mechanical Agent.—Coulomb's Experiments.
- 3. Mechanical Agents depending upon Heat. The Steam Engine.—Table of Pressure and Temperature of Steam.—General Description of the Mode of Action of the Steam Engine.—Theory of the Steam Engine.—Description of the various kinds of



## SECT.

Engines, and the Formulæ for calculating their Power.—Practical application of the foregoing Formulæ.

## 4. Animal Strength as a Mechanical Agent.

## CHAPTER VIII.—STRENGTH OF MATERIALS.

1. Results of Experiments, and Principles upon which they should be practically applied.
2. Strength of Materials to Resist Tensile and Crushing Strains.—Strength of Columns.

## SECT.

3. Elasticity and Elongation of Bodies subjected to a Crushing or Tensile Strain.

4. On the Strength of Materials subjected to a Transverse Strain.—Longitudinal form of Beam of uniform Strength.—Transverse Strength of other Materials than Cast Iron.—The Strength of Beams according to the manner in which the Load is distributed.

5. Elasticity of Bodies subjected to a Transverse Strain.

6. Strength of Materials to resist Torsion.

## APPENDIX

- I. Table of Logarithmic Differences.
- II. Table of Logarithms of Numbers, from 1 to 100.
- III. Table of Logarithms of Numbers, from 100 to 10,000.
- IV. Table of Logarithmic Sines, Tangents, Secants, &c.
- V. Table of Useful Factors, extending to several places of Decimals.
- VI. Table of various Useful Numbers, with their Logarithms.
- VII. A Table of the Diameters, Areas, and Circumferences of Circles and also the sides of Equal Squares.
- VIII. Table of the Relations of the Arc, Abscissa, Ordinate and Subnormal, in the Catenary.
- IX. Tables of the Lengths and Vibrations of Pendulums.
- X. Table of Specific Gravities.
- XI. Table of Weight of Materials frequently employed in Construction.
- XII. Principles of Chronometers.
- XIII. Select Mechanical Expedients.
- XIV. Observations on the Effect of Old London Bridge on the Tides, &c.
- XV. Professor Farish on Isometrical Perspective.

---



---

### Supplementary to the Rudimentary Series of 105 Volumes.

MR. WEALE has to announce a very important addition to his useful and practical series of volumes; viz., "THE PRACTICE OF EMBANKING LANDS FROM THE SEA, treated as a means of profitable Employment of Capital; with Examples and Particulars of actual Embankments, and also practical Remarks on the Repair of Old Sea Walls," by JOHN WIGGINS, F.G.S.—Double Volume, Price 2s.

JOHN WEALE, 59, HIGH HOLBORN.







